

Package: soilKey (via r-universe)

May 19, 2026

Type Package

Title Automated Soil Profile Classification per 'WRB' 2022, 'SiBCS' 5 and 'USDA' Soil Taxonomy 13

Version 0.9.97

Date 2026-05-13

Description Implements deterministic classification keys for the World Reference Base for Soil Resources ('WRB') 2022, 4th edition (IUSS Working Group WRB, 2022, ISBN:979-8-9862451-1-9), the Brazilian System of Soil Classification ('SiBCS') 5th edition (Santos et al., 2018, ISBN:978-85-7035-800-4) and the United States Department of Agriculture ('USDA') Soil Taxonomy 13th edition (Soil Survey Staff, 2022, <https://www.nrcs.usda.gov/resources/guides-and-instructions/keys-to-soil-taxonomy>).

Provides a unified profile representation with explicit per-attribute provenance, multimodal extraction from field reports and photos via vision-language models (VLM), spatial priors from 'SoilGrids' (Poggio et al., 2021, [doi:10.5194/soil-7-217-2021](https://doi.org/10.5194/soil-7-217-2021)) and national soil maps, and gap-filling of soil attributes from visible-near-infrared (Vis-NIR) or mid-infrared (MIR) spectra via the Open Soil Spectral Library ('OSSL'; Safanelli et al., 2025, [doi:10.7717/peerj.18908](https://doi.org/10.7717/peerj.18908)). The taxonomic key itself is never delegated to a large language model (LLM); LLMs are restricted to schema-validated extraction. Each classification result reports a key trace, a provenance-aware evidence grade, and ambiguities that further measurement would resolve.

License MIT + file LICENSE

URL <https://github.com/HugoMachadoRodrigues/soilKey>,
<https://hugomachadorodrigues.github.io/soilKey/>

BugReports <https://github.com/HugoMachadoRodrigues/soilKey/issues>

Encoding UTF-8

LazyData true

RoxygenNote 7.3.3

Depends R (>= 4.1)

Imports R6, data.table, yaml, cli, rlang, withr

Suggests aqp, SoilTaxonomy, mpspline2, terra, foreign, sf, chromote, munsellinterpol, pls, prospectr, resemble, ellmer, httr, jsonlite, jsonvalidate, pdftools, magick, shiny, DT, DBI, RSQLite, testthat (>= 3.0.0), knitr, rmarkdown

Config/testthat/edition 3

VignetteBuilder knitr

NeedsCompilation no

Author Hugo Rodrigues [aut, cre] (ORCID: <<https://orcid.org/0000-0002-8070-8126>>)

Maintainer Hugo Rodrigues <rodrigues.machado.hugo@gmail.com>

Repository <https://cran.r-universe.dev>

Date/Publication 2026-05-19 09:20:21 UTC

RemoteUrl <https://github.com/cran/soilKey>

RemoteRef HEAD

RemoteSha 52ec21dd0b9b877640546d1c1d6b9d75ea204c93

Contents

abrupt_textural_difference	21
acric_andisol_usda	22
acric_oxisol_usda	22
acrisol	23
aeolic_material	23
aeric_oxisol_usda	24
aeric_subgroup_usda	24
al_rich_spodic_usda	25
albaquult_qualifying_usda	25
albeluvic_glossae	26
albic	26
albic_horizon_usda	27
albic_subgroup_usda	27
alboll_qualifying_usda	28
alfic_subgroup_usda	28
alfisol_qualifying_usda	28
alfisol_usda	29
alic_andisol_usda	29
alisol	30
andic_properties	30
andic_soil_properties_usda	32
andic_subgroup_usda	33
andisol_qualifying_usda	33

andisol_usda	34
andosol	34
anhydrous_conditions_usda	35
anionic_subgroup_usda	36
annotate_wrb_from_usda	36
anthraquic	37
anthric_horizons	37
aqualf_qualifying_usda	38
aquand_qualifying_usda	39
aquandic_subgroup_usda	39
aquent_qualifying_usda	40
aquept_qualifying_usda	40
aquert_qualifying_usda	41
aquic_conditions_usda	41
aquic_subgroup_usda	42
aquoll_qualifying_usda	43
aquult_qualifying_usda	43
arenic_subgroup_usda	44
arenic_texture	44
argic	45
argic_aqp	46
argic_aridisol_usda	47
argic_mollisol_usda	48
argic_subgroup_usda	48
argic_with_strong_clay_films	49
argillic_clay_films_test	49
argillic_or_kandic_usda	50
argillic_usda	51
argillic_within_usda	52
argissolo	52
argissolo_acinzentado	53
argissolo_amarelo	53
argissolo_bruno_acinzentado	53
argissolo_vermelho	54
argissolo_vermelho_amarelo	54
aridisol_qualifying_usda	54
aridisol_usda	55
artefacts	55
as_aqp	56
atividade_argila_alta	57
attach_lucas_spectra	57
audit_argic_strong_films	58
auto_set_proj_env	59
available_esdb_attributes	60
B_espodico	61
B_incipiente	61
B_latossolico	62
B_nitico	63

B_planico	63
B_textural	64
batch_robustness	64
benchmark_afsp	65
benchmark_bdsolos	65
benchmark_lucas_2018	67
benchmark_performance	70
benchmark_redape	71
benchmark_run_classification	72
benchmark_unified	73
benchmark_wrb_vs_usda	75
calcaric_material	75
calcic	76
calcic_horizon_usda	77
calcic_subgroup_usda	77
cambic	78
cambic_aqp	79
cambissolo	80
cambissolo_fluvico	80
cambissolo_haplico	80
cambissolo_histico	81
cambissolo_humico	81
canonical_reference	81
canonicalise_kst13ed_gg	82
carater_acrico	83
carater_alitico	84
carater_arenico	84
carater_argiluvico	85
carater_cambissolico	86
carater_cambissolico_arg	86
carater_carbonatico	87
carater_chernossolico	88
carater_coeso	88
carater_durico	89
carater_ebanico	90
carater_espessarenico	90
carater_espodico	91
carater_espodico_profundo	92
carater_eutrico	93
carater_ferrico	93
carater_fluvico	94
carater_gleissolico	94
carater_hidromorfico	95
carater_hipocarbonatico	96
carater_humico_espesso	96
carater_latossolico	97
carater_leptico	98
carater_leptofragmentario	98

carater_luissolico	99
carater_nitossolico	100
carater_palico	101
carater_perferrico	101
carater_petroplintico	102
carater_placico	103
carater_planossolico	103
carater_plintico	104
carater_psamitico	105
carater_redoxico	105
carater_retratil	106
carater_rubrico	107
carater_salico	107
carater_salino	108
carater_saprolitico	108
carater_sodico	109
carater_solodico	109
carater_sombrico	110
carater_terrico	111
carater_tionico	112
carater_vertissolico	112
cerosidade	113
chernic	114
chernossolo	114
chernossolo_argiluvico	115
chernossolo_ebanico	115
chernossolo_haplico	116
chernossolo_rendzico	116
chernozem	116
chernozem_strict	117
claric_material	118
classification_robustness	118
ClassificationResult	119
classify_all	122
classify_by_spectral_neighbours	123
classify_from_documents	125
classify_sibcs	128
classify_sibcs_familia	129
classify_usda	130
classify_via_smartsolos_api	131
classify_with_engine_heuristic	133
classify_wrb2022	133
clear_kst13_cache	134
clear_ossl_cache	135
combine_priors	135
compare_engines	136
compare_smartsolos	137
compute_ki	137

compute_kr	138
contato_litico	139
contato_litico_fragmentario	139
continuous_rock	140
cryic_conditions	140
cryoturbation_usda	141
cumulic_subgroup_usda	142
densiaquept_qualifying_usda	142
DiagnosticResult	143
distrofico	144
dolomitic_material	145
download_bdsolos	145
download_extdata_cache	147
download_oss_subset	148
download_oss_subset_with_labels	149
download_redape_dataset	151
duric_horizon	152
duric_subgroup_usda	153
duripa	153
duripan_usda	154
dystric_subgroup_usda	154
entic_subgroup_usda	155
entisol_usda	155
episaturation_usda	156
espodossolo	156
espodossolo_ferri_humiluvico	157
espodossolo_ferriluvico	157
espodossolo_humiluvico	158
eutric_inceptisol_usda	158
eutric_oxisol_usda	159
eutric_subgroup_usda	159
eutrofico	160
evaluate_rsg_tests	160
extract_horizons_from_pdf	161
extract_munsell_from_photo	162
extract_site_from_fieldsheet	163
familia_andico	164
familia_atividade_argila	165
familia_constituicao_esqueletica	166
familia_distribuicao_cascalhos	166
familia_grupamento_textural	167
familia_label	168
familia_mineralogia_areia	168
familia_mineralogia_argila_geral	169
familia_mineralogia_argila_latossolo	170
familia_organossolo_espessura	171
familia_organossolo_lenhossidade	172
familia_organossolo_material_subjacente	172

familia_oxidos_ferro	173
familia_prefixo_profundidade	174
familia_saturacao_aluminio	175
familia_saturacao_bases	176
familia_subgrupamento_textural	176
familia_tipo_horizonte_superficial	177
FamilyAttribute	178
febr_index_munsell	179
ferralic	180
ferralsol	181
ferric	182
ferric_subgroup_usda	182
fibric_predominant_usda	183
fibric_subgroup_usda	183
fibrico	184
fill_from_spectra	184
fill_munsell_from_spectra	186
fluvaquentic_usda	186
fluvent_qualifying_usda	187
fluventic_usda	188
fluvic_material	188
folist_qualifying_usda	189
folistic_epipedon_usda	189
folistic_subgroup_usda	190
format_wrb_name	191
fragic	191
fragipa	192
fragipan_usda	192
frasic_qualifying_usda	193
from_aqp	193
fulvic_andisol_usda	194
gelisol_usda	194
glacic_layer_usda	195
gleissolo	196
gleissolo_haplico	196
gleissolo_melanico	196
gleissolo_salico	197
gleissolo_tiomorfico	197
gleyic_properties	197
gleysol	199
glossic_subgroup_usda	199
grapes-or-or-grapes	200
grossarenic_subgroup_usda	200
GSM_DEPTHS	201
gypsic	201
gypsic_horizon_usda	202
gypsic_subgroup_usda	202
gypsiric_material	203

halaquept_qualifying_usda	203
halic_subgroup_usda	204
harmonize_to_gsm	204
hemic_subgroup_usda	206
hemico	206
histel_qualifying_usda	207
histic_epipedon_usda	207
histic_horizon	209
histic_subgroup_usda	210
histosol_qualifying_usda	210
histosol_usda	211
horizonte_A_antropico	211
horizonte_A_chernozemico	212
horizonte_A_fraco	212
horizonte_A_humico	213
horizonte_A_moderado	213
horizonte_A_proeminente	214
horizonte_calcico	214
horizonte_concrecionario	215
horizonte_E_albico	215
horizonte_glei	216
horizonte_histico	216
horizonte_litoplintico	217
horizonte_petrocalcico	217
horizonte_plintico	218
horizonte_sulfurico	218
horizonte_vertico	219
hortic	219
humic_andisol_usda	220
humic_inceptisol_usda	220
humic_oxisol_usda	221
humic_spodic_usda	221
humic_subgroup_usda	222
humilluvic_subgroup_usda	222
humult_qualifying_usda	223
hydragric	223
hydraquent_qualifying_usda	224
hydric_andisol_usda	224
hydric_subgroup_usda	225
hypersulfidic_material	225
hyposulfidic_material	226
inceptisol_qualifying_usda	226
inceptisol_usda	227
inspect_bdsolos_csv	227
irragric	228
kandic_horizon_usda	228
kandic_oxisol_usda	229
kanhapl_qualifying_usda	229

kastanozem	230
kastanozem_strict	230
kst13_canonical	231
kst13_codes	231
kst13_criteria	232
lamellic_subgroup_usda	233
latossolo	233
latossolo_amarelo	234
latossolo_bruno	234
latossolo_ki_kr	235
latossolo_vermelho	235
latossolo_vermelho_amarelo	236
leptic_features	236
limnic_material	237
limnic_usda	238
limonic	238
lithic_contact_usda	239
lithic_discontinuity	240
lixisol	240
load_afsp_pedons	241
load_afsp_sample	242
load_bdsolos_csv	242
load_embrapa_pedons	243
load_febr_pedons	244
load_kssl_nasis_sample	245
load_kssl_pedons	246
load_kssl_pedons_gpkg	247
load_kssl_pedons_with_nasis	247
load_kssl_sample	248
load_lucas_pedons	249
load_lucas_soil_2018	250
load_redape_pedons	251
load_rules	252
load_wosis_sample	253
load_wosis_stratified_sample	254
lookup_esdb	255
lookup_mapbiomas_solos	256
lookup_soilgrids	257
luvisol	259
luvissolo	259
luvissolo_cromico	260
luvissolo_haplico	260
make_acrisol_canonical	261
make_alisol_canonical	261
make_andosol_canonical	262
make_anthrosol_canonical	262
make_arenosol_canonical	263
make_argissolo_canonical	263

make_calcisol_canonical	263
make_cambisol_canonical	264
make_cambissolo_canonical	264
make_chernossolo_canonical	265
make_chernozem_canonical	265
make_cryosol_canonical	266
make_durisol_canonical	266
make_empty_horizons	267
make_espodossolo_canonical	267
make_ferralsol_canonical	268
make_fluvisol_canonical	268
make_gleissolo_canonical	269
make_gleysol_canonical	269
make_gypsisol_canonical	270
make_histosol_canonical	270
make_kastanozem_canonical	271
make_latossolo_canonical	271
make_leptosol_canonical	272
make_lixisol_canonical	272
make_luvisol_canonical	273
make_luvisolo_canonical	273
make_neossolo_canonical	273
make_nitisol_canonical	274
make_nitossolo_canonical	274
make_organossolo_canonical	274
make_phaeozem_canonical	275
make_planosol_canonical	275
make_planossolo_canonical	276
make_plinthosol_canonical	276
make_plintossolo_canonical	276
make_podzol_canonical	277
make_retisol_canonical	277
make_solonchak_canonical	278
make_solonetz_canonical	278
make_stagnosol_canonical	279
make_synthetic_pedon_with_spectra	279
make_technosol_canonical	280
make_umbrisol_canonical	280
make_vertisol_canonical	281
make_vertissolo_canonical	281
melanic_andisol_usda	282
melanic_epipedon_usda	282
mineral_material	283
mollic	283
mollic_epipedon_usda	284
mollisol_qualifying_usda	285
mollisol_usda	286
mudanca_textural_abrupta	286

mulmic_material	287
natric_horizon	287
natric_horizon_usda	288
natric_subgroup_usda	289
neossolo	289
neossolo_fluvico	289
neossolo_litolico	290
neossolo_quartzarenico	290
neossolo_regolitico	291
nitic_horizon	291
nitossolo	293
nitossolo_bruno	293
nitossolo_haplico	293
nitossolo_vermelho	294
nitric_subgroup_usda	294
normalise_febr_sibcs	295
normalise_febr_usda	295
normalise_febr_wrb	296
normalise_kssl_subgroup	296
ochric_epipedon_usda	297
ollama_is_running	297
organic_material	298
organossolo	298
organossolo_folico	299
organossolo_haplico	299
organossolo_tiomorfico	300
organotechnic_material	300
ornithogenic_material	301
ossl_demo_sa	301
ossl_library_template	302
oxic_horizon_usda	303
oxic_usda	304
oxisol_usda	304
oxyaquic_subgroup_usda	305
pachic_subgroup_usda	305
pale_qualifying_usda	306
paleargid_qualifying_usda	306
panpaic	307
pedon_json_schema	307
pedon_to_spc	308
PedonRecord	309
permafrost_within_usda	312
petrocalcic	312
petrocalcic_subgroup_usda	313
petroduric	313
petroferric_contact_usda	314
petrogypsic	314
petrogypsic_horizon_usda	315

petrogypsic_subgroup_usda	315
petronodic_subgroup_usda	316
petroplinthic	316
phaeozem	317
pi_to_confidence	317
pick_engine	318
pick_engine_batch	319
pisoplinthic	319
placic_horizon_usda	320
plaggic	320
planic_features	321
planosol	322
planossolo	322
planossolo_haplico	323
planossolo_natricico	323
plinth_subgroup_usda	323
plinhaquox_qualifying_usda	324
plinthic	324
plinthic_subgroup_usda	325
plintossolo	326
plintossolo_argiluvico	326
plintossolo_haplico	327
plintossolo_petrico	327
posterior_classify	328
predict_soilKey_pls_model	328
predict_from_spectra	329
predict_lab_from_spectra	330
predict_munsell_from_spectra	331
predict_ossl_mbl	332
predict_ossl_plsr_local	333
predict_ossl_pretrained	334
predict_xyz_from_spectra	334
preprocess_spectra	335
pretic	336
print_soilKey_pls_model	337
prior_consistency_check	337
protocalcic_properties	338
protogypsic_properties	339
protovertic	339
psamment_qualifying_usda	340
psammentic_subgroup_usda	340
qual_abruptic	341
qual_aceric	341
qual_acric	342
qual_acroxic	342
qual_activic	343
qual_albic	343
qual_alcalic	344

qual_alic	344
qual_aluandic	345
qual_andic	345
qual_anofluvic	346
qual_anthraquic	346
qual_anthric	346
qual_anthromollic	347
qual_archaic	347
qual_arenic	347
qual_arenicollic	348
qual_aric	348
qual_bathyspodic	349
qual_biocrustic	349
qual_brunic	349
qual_bryic	350
qual_calcaric	350
qual_calcic	351
qual_cambic	351
qual_capillaric	351
qual_carbic	352
qual_carbonatic	352
qual_carbonic	353
qual_chernic	353
qual_chloridic	353
qual_chromic	354
qual_clayic	354
qual_coarsic	355
qual_cohesic	355
qual_columnic	356
qual_cordic	356
qual_cryic	357
qual_cumulic	357
qual_cutanic	358
qual_densic	358
qual_differentic	359
qual_dolomitic	359
qual_dorsic	360
qual_drainic	360
qual_duric	361
qual_dystric	361
qual_ekranic	362
qual_endic	362
qual_endoabruptic	363
qual_endocalcaric	363
qual_endocalcic	364
qual_endodolomitic	364
qual_endoduric	365
qual_endodystric	365

qual_endoeutric	365
qual_endogleyic	366
qual_endogypsic	366
qual_endoleptic	367
qual_endostagnic	367
qual_endothionic	368
qual_endothyric	368
qual_entic	368
qual_epic	369
qual_epidystric	369
qual_epieutric	369
qual_escalic	370
qual_eutric	370
qual_eutrosilic	370
qual_evapocrustic	371
qual_ferralic	371
qual_ferric	371
qual_ferritic	372
qual_fibric	372
qual_floatic	373
qual_fluvic	373
qual_folic	374
qual_fractic	374
qual_garbic	375
qual_gelic	375
qual_gelistagnic	376
qual_geoabruptic	376
qual_geric	377
qual_gibbsic	377
qual_gilgaic	378
qual_glacic	378
qual_gleyic	379
qual_glossic	379
qual_greyzemic	380
qual_grumic	380
qual_gypsic	381
qual_gypsiric	381
qual_haplic	381
qual_hemic	382
qual_histic	382
qual_hortic	382
qual_humic	383
qual_hydragric	383
qual_hydric	383
qual_hydrophobic	384
qual_hyperalbic	384
qual_hyperalic	385
qual_hyperartefactic	385

qual_hypercalcic	386
qual_hyperdystric	386
qual_hypereutric	387
qual_hypergypsic	387
qual_hypernatric	388
qual_hyperorganic	388
qual_hypersalic	389
qual_hyperskeletal	389
qual_hypersodic	390
qual_hyperspodic	390
qual_hypocalcic	391
qual_hypogypsic	391
qual_hyposalic	392
qual_hyposodic	392
qual_immissic	393
qual_inclinic	393
qual_irragric	394
qual_isolatic	394
qual_isopteric	394
qual_kalaic	395
qual_lamellic	395
qual_lapiadic	396
qual_laxic	396
qual_leptic	396
qual_lignic	397
qual_limnic	397
qual_linic	398
qual_lithic	398
qual_litholinic	399
qual_lixic	399
qual_loamic	399
qual_luvic	400
qual_magnesian	400
qual_mahic	400
qual_mawic	401
qual_mazic	401
qual_melanic	402
qual_mineralic	402
qual_mochipic	403
qual_mollic	403
qual_mulmic	403
qual_murshic	404
qual_muusic	404
qual_naramic	404
qual_natric	405
qual_nechic	405
qual_neobrunic	405
qual_neocambic	406

qual_nitic	406
qual_nudiargic	406
qual_nudilithic	407
qual_nudinatric	407
qual_ochric	407
qual_ombric	408
qual_organotechnic	408
qual_ornithic	409
qual_orthofluvic	409
qual_ortsteinic	410
qual_oxyaquic	410
qual_oxygleyic	411
qual_pachic	411
qual_pantofluvic	411
qual_pellic	412
qual_pelocrustic	412
qual_petric	413
qual_petrocalcic	413
qual_petroduric	413
qual_petrogypsic	414
qual_petroplinthic	414
qual_petrosalic	414
qual_pisoplinthic	415
qual_placic	415
qual_plaggic	416
qual_plinthic	416
qual_posic	417
qual_pretic	417
qual_profondic	418
qual_profundihumic	418
qual_protic	419
qual_protoandic	419
qual_protoargic	420
qual_protocalcic	420
qual_protogypsic	421
qual_protospodic	421
qual_protovertic	422
qual_puffic	422
qual_pyric	423
qual_raptic	423
qual_reductaquic	424
qual_reductic	424
qual_reductigleyic	425
qual_relocatic	425
qual_rendzic	426
qual_retic	426
qual_rheic	427
qual_rhodic	427

qual_rockic	428
qual_rubic	428
qual_rustic	429
qual_salic	429
qual_sapric	430
qual_saprolithic	430
qual_silandic	431
qual_siltic	431
qual_skeletal	431
qual_sodic	432
qual_solimovic	432
qual_sombric	432
qual_someric	433
qual_spodic	433
qual_spolic	434
qual_stagnic	434
qual_subaquatic	435
qual_sulfatic	435
qual_sulfidic	436
qual_takyric	436
qual_techinic	437
qual_tephric	437
qual_terric	437
qual_thionic	438
qual_thixotropic	438
qual_thyric	438
qual_tidalic	439
qual_tonguic	439
qual_toxic	440
qual_transportic	440
qual_turbic	441
qual_umbric	441
qual_urbic	442
qual_uterquic	442
qual_vermic	442
qual_vertic	443
qual_vetic	443
qual_vitric	443
qual_wapnic	444
qual_xanthic	444
qual_yermic	445
quartzipsamment_qualifying_usda	445
read_febr_pedons	446
reducing_conditions	447
rendoll_qualifying_usda	447
report	448
report_html	449
report_pdf	449

report_to_qgis	450
resolve_wrb_qualifiers	451
retic_properties	452
rhodic_subgroup_usda	453
run_classify_app	453
run_demo	454
run_sibcs_grande_grupo	455
run_sibcs_key	455
run_sibcs_subgrupo	456
run_sibcs_subordem	456
run_taxa_list	457
run_taxonomic_key	458
run_usda_great_group	458
run_usda_key	459
run_usda_subgroup	459
run_usda_suborder	460
run_wrb_key	460
ruptic_histic_subgroup_usda	461
ruptic_subgroup_usda	461
salic	462
salic_horizon_usda	463
salic_subgroup_usda	463
sapric_predominant_usda	464
sapric_subgroup_usda	464
saprico	465
save_ossl_models	465
shrink_swell_cracks	466
sideralic_properties	466
smr_aridic_usda	467
smr_torric_usda	467
smr_udic_usda	468
smr_ustic_usda	468
smr_xeric_usda	469
sodic_subgroup_usda	469
soil_classes_at_location	470
soil_moisture_regime_usda	471
soil_organic_carbon	472
soil_temperature_regime_usda	473
soilgrids_usda_lut	473
soilgrids_wrb_lut	474
solimovic_material	474
sombric	475
sombric_subgroup_usda	475
spatial_prior	476
spatial_prior_embrapa	477
spatial_prior_soilgrids	478
sphagnic_usda	479
spodic	480

spodic_andisol_usda	481
spodic_horizon_usda	482
spodic_subgroup_usda	482
spodosol_usda	483
st_features_canonical	483
stagnic_properties	484
str_cryic_usda	484
str_gelic_usda	485
subgrupo_planossolo_espessos	485
subgrupo_planossolo_mesicos	486
subgrupo_plintossolo_endico_concrecionario	487
subgrupo_plintossolo_endico_litoplintico	487
subgrupo_plintossolo_espessos	488
sulfic_subgroup_usda	489
sulfidic_materials_usda	489
sulfuric_horizon_usda	490
takyric_properties	490
technic_features	491
technic_hard_material	492
tephric_material	492
terric	493
terric_usda	493
test_abrupt_textural_change	494
test_al_saturation_above	494
test_al_saturation_below	495
test_andic_alfe	495
test_artefacts_concentration	496
test_bs_above	496
test_bs_below	497
test_bulk_density_below	497
test_caco3_concentration	498
test_carbonates_present	498
test_caso4_concentration	499
test_cec_per_clay	499
test_cec_per_clay_above	500
test_chernic_color	501
test_clay_above	501
test_clay_increase_argic	502
test_coarse_texture_throughout	503
test_designation_pattern	503
test_duripan_concentration	504
test_ec_concentration	504
test_ecec_per_clay	505
test_esp_above	505
test_fe_dcb_above	506
test_ferralitic_texture	506
test_ferralitic_thickness	507
test_fluvic_stratification	507

test_gleyic_features	508
test_minimum_thickness	509
test_mollic_base_saturation	509
test_mollic_color	510
test_mollic_organic_carbon	510
test_mollic_structure	511
test_mollic_thickness	511
test_oc_above	512
test_ph_below	512
test_plinthite_concentration	513
test_salic_product	513
test_slickensides_present	514
test_spodic_aluminum_iron	515
test_stagnic_pattern	515
test_texture_argic	516
test_top_at_or_above	516
texture_class_from_pct	517
thaptic_subgroup_usda	518
thapto_humic_usda	518
thionic	519
train_pls_from_ossl	519
tsitelic	521
turbic_subgroup_usda	521
ultic_subgroup_usda	522
ultisol_qualifying_usda	522
ultisol_usda	523
umbric_epipedon_usda	523
umbric_horizon	524
umbric_subgroup_usda	525
usda_to_wrb_rsg	525
validate_pedon_json	526
vermic_subgroup_usda	527
vertic_aridisol_usda	527
vertic_horizon	528
vertic_properties	529
vertic_subgroup_usda	530
vertisol	530
vertisol_qualifying_usda	531
vertisol_usda	531
vertissolo	532
vertissolo_ebanico	532
vertissolo_haplico	532
vertissolo_hidromorfico	533
vitrand_qualifying_usda	533
vitrandic_subgroup_usda	534
vitric_properties	534
vitric_subgroup_usda	535
vlm_pick_provider	535

<i>abrupt_textural_difference</i>	21
vlm_provider	536
wassent_qualifying_usda	537
wassist_qualifying_usda	537
wrb06_code_to_rsg	538
wrb2022_canonical	539
xanthic_subgroup_usda	539
yermic_properties	540
Index	541

abrupt_textural_difference
Abrupt textural difference (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.1)

Description

Sharp clay-content increase between two superimposed mineral layers meeting all of:

- underlying clay $\geq 15\%$ AND thickness ≥ 7.5 cm;
- underlying starts ≥ 10 cm below mineral soil surface;
- underlying has, vs overlying: 2x clay if overlying $< 20\%$, OR $\geq 20\text{pp}$ (absolute) more clay if overlying $\geq 20\%$;
- transitional layer, if any, ≤ 2 cm.

v0.3.3 enforces criteria 1, 2, 3. The transitional-layer check is deferred (the canonical horizon schema does not carry a "transitional" marker; it can be added later via boundary_distinctness inspection).

Usage

abrupt_textural_difference(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

acric_andisol_usda	<i>Acric Subgroup helper (Andisols Acrudoxic / Acraquoxic / Acrustoxic / etc.)</i>
--------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Pass when the sum of extractable bases (NH₄OAc) plus 1N KCl-Al is < 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in fine earth, in a 30+ cm layer between 25 and 100 cm. v0.8 proxy: ECEC <= 2.0 in B horizons.

Usage

acric_andisol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

acric_oxisol_usda	<i>Acric Oxisol Suborder helper (Acroperox/Acrudox/Acrustox/Acraquox) Pass when oxic or kandic horizon has ECEC < 1.5 cmol/kg clay AND pH (KCl) >= 5.0.</i>
-------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Acric Oxisol Suborder helper (Acroperox/Acrudox/Acrustox/Acraquox) Pass when oxic or kandic horizon has ECEC < 1.5 cmol/kg clay AND pH (KCl) >= 5.0.

Usage

acric_oxisol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

acrisol	<i>Acrisol RSG diagnostic (WRB 2022)</i>
---------	------------------------------------------

Description

Tests whether a profile satisfies the Acrisol RSG criteria: an argic horizon with low-activity clay (CEC < 24 cmol_c/kg clay) AND low base saturation (BS < 50%) within at least one argic layer.

Usage

```
acrisol(pedon, max_cec = 24, max_bs = 50)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_cec	Maximum CEC per kg clay (default 24).
max_bs	Maximum base saturation % (default 50).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Acrisols.

aeolic_material	<i>Aeolic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.1)</i>
-----------------	--------------------------------------------

Description

Wind-deposited material in the upper 20 cm: rounded matt-surfaced sand grains OR aeroturbation features, AND < 1% SOC in the upper 10 cm. v0.3.3 detects via `rock_origin == "aeolian"` OR `layer_origin == "aeolic"`.

Usage

```
aeolic_material(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

aeric_oxisol_usda	<i>Aeric Subgroup (for Oxisols Aquox) – chroma-3 below epipedon Already defined for Aquods; here we add Oxisol-specific variant (any 10+ cm horizon below A with chroma \geq 3 in 50%+ peds).</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Aeric Subgroup (for Oxisols Aquox) – chroma-3 below epipedon Already defined for Aquods; here we add Oxisol-specific variant (any 10+ cm horizon below A with chroma \geq 3 in 50%+ peds).

Usage

```
aeric_oxisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

aeric_subgroup_usda	<i>Aeric Subgroup helper (Aquods) Pass when ochric epipedon is present (vs. histic/umbric/etc).</i>
---------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Aeric Subgroup helper (Aquods) Pass when ochric epipedon is present (vs. histic/umbric/etc).

Usage

```
aeric_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

al_rich_spodic_usda *Aluminum-rich spodic helper (Alaquods, Alorthods, KST Ch 14)*

Description

Pass when the spodic horizon has < 0.10% Fe (oxalate) in 75%+ of layers, OR $Al \geq 3 * Fe$ in 75%+ of layers (Alaquods only).

Usage

al_rich_spodic_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

albaquult_qualifying_usda

Albic-over-argillic qualifying (Albaquults) Pass when albic horizon overlies an argillic horizon directly.

Description

Albic-over-argillic qualifying (Albaquults) Pass when albic horizon overlies an argillic horizon directly.

Usage

albaquult_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

albeluvic_glossae	<i>Albeluvic glossae (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.2)</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------

Description

Tongues of bleached, coarser-textured material penetrating an argic horizon. v0.3.3 detects via designation pattern glossic|albeluvic on a layer that overlies an argic-horizon-passing layer.

Usage

```
albeluvic_glossae(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

albic	<i>Albic horizon (WRB 2022)</i>
-------	---------------------------------

Description

A bleached eluvial horizon – claric material that has lost iron oxides and/or organic matter due to clay migration, podzolization, or redox under stagnant water. Diagnostic for parts of Podzols, Retisols and Planosols qualifiers.

Usage

```
albic(pedon, min_thickness = 1)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Minimum thickness in cm (default 1, per WRB 2022). The albic horizon has no canonical thickness gate; we keep a token min so that fully-NA layers don't pass.

Details

Sub-tests:

- [test_claric_munsell](#) – Munsell criteria of claric material (Ch 3.3.4).

Designation pattern E or Eg also serves as positive evidence when Munsell columns are missing (proxy path).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Ch 3.1 – Albic horizon.

albic_horizon_usda *Albic horizon (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3)*

Description

Pass when an albic horizon (light-colored, eluvial; chroma ≤ 2 , value ≥ 4) ≥ 1 cm thick is present. Delegates to WRB albic diagnostic.

Usage

```
albic_horizon_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

albic_subgroup_usda *Albic Subgroup helper (Albaquultic / Albaquic)*

Description

Albic Subgroup helper (Albaquultic / Albaquic)

Usage

```
albic_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

alboll_qualifying_usda

Albolls qualifier: mollic + albic + argillic.

Description

Albolls qualifier: mollic + albic + argillic.

Usage

alboll_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

alfic_subgroup_usda *Alfic Subgroup helper (Spodosols): argillic or kandic with BS >= 35%*

Description

Alfic Subgroup helper (Spodosols): argillic or kandic with BS >= 35%

Usage

alfic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

alfisol_qualifying_usda

Alfisol Order qualifier Pass when argillic OR kandic horizon present + BS >= 35% in some part.

Description

Alfisol Order qualifier Pass when argillic OR kandic horizon present + BS >= 35% in some part.

Usage

alfisol_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

alfisol_usda	<i>Alfisols (USDA Cap 5): argillic/kandic/natric horizon + base saturation \geq 35% at the implicit reference depth.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Alfisols (USDA Cap 5): argillic/kandic/natric horizon + base saturation \geq 35% at the implicit reference depth.

Usage

```
alfisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

alic_andisol_usda	<i>Alic Subgroup helper (Andisols) Pass when $al_kcl_cmol > 2.0$ in a 10+ cm layer between 25 and 50 cm.</i>
-------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Alic Subgroup helper (Andisols) Pass when $al_kcl_cmol > 2.0$ in a 10+ cm layer between 25 and 50 cm.

Usage

```
alic_andisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

alisol	<i>Alisol RSG diagnostic (WRB 2022)</i>
--------	-----------------------------------------

Description

argic + CEC \geq 24 cmol_c/kg clay + Al saturation \geq 50%.

Usage

```
alisol(pedon, min_cec = 24, min_al_sat = 50)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_cec	Minimum CEC per kg clay (default 24).
min_al_sat	Minimum Al saturation % (default 50).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Alisols.

andic_properties	<i>Andic properties (WRB 2022)</i>
------------------	------------------------------------

Description

Tests for the andic property complex – volcanic-ash-derived allophanic / imogolitic / Al-humus material. Diagnostic of Andosols. Two alternative qualifying paths per WRB 2022 Ch 3.2:

1. **Al-Fe oxalate + low BD:** (Al_{ox} + 0.5*Fe_{ox}) \geq min_alfe (default 2.0%) AND bulk_density \leq max_bd (default 0.9 g/cm³) on the same layer.
2. **Phosphate retention:** phosphate_retention_pct \geq min_p_retention (default 70%).

Either path qualifies. The volcanic-glass criterion is the separate [vitric_properties](#) diagnostic; Andosols key on (andic OR vitric) at the RSG-gate level ([andosol](#)).

Usage

```
andic_properties(
  pedon,
  min_alfe = 2,
  max_bd = 0.9,
  min_p_retention = 70,
  min_oc_proxy = 4,
  max_bd_proxy = 0.9
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_alfe	Minimum (Al _{ox} + 0.5*Fe _{ox}) percent for the Al-Fe path (default 2.0).
max_bd	Maximum bulk density g/cm ³ for the Al-Fe path (default 0.9).
min_p_retention	Minimum phosphate retention % for the P path (default 70).
min_oc_proxy	Minimum SOC % for the v0.9.80 OC+BD proxy path (default 4.0). Only consulted when the proxy is enabled via options(soilKey.andic_oc_bd_proxy = TRUE).
max_bd_proxy	Maximum bulk density g/cm ³ for the v0.9.80 OC+BD proxy path (default 0.9). Only consulted when the proxy is enabled.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

v0.9.80 OC + BD proxy (opt-in)

Field-described volcanic-ash soils (e.g.\ AfSP, KSSL/NASIS, SOTER) routinely lack oxalate Al/Fe and phosphate retention measurements, so the canonical paths return NA and Andosols cascade to other RSGs. The genetic signature is still detectable from coarser data: very high SOC ($\geq 4\text{-}5\%$) plus low bulk density ($\leq 0.9\text{ g/cm}^3$) typical of allophanic / Al-humus complexation.

With options(soilKey.andic_oc_bd_proxy = TRUE) the function adds a third path that fires when both canonical paths fail and the surface horizon shows oc_pct \geq min_oc_proxy AND bulk_density_g_cm3 \leq max_bd_proxy (or OC alone $\geq 5\%$ when BD is missing). Default is FALSE (canonical behaviour preserved).

v0.9.85 proxy contiguous-layer extension (opt-in)

When options(soilKey.andic_oc_bd_proxy_extend = TRUE) (only meaningful with soilKey.andic_oc_bd_proxy = TRUE), iteratively extend the proxy layers to include contiguous deeper layers whose oc_pct \geq min_oc_proxy / 2 AND whose bulk_density_g_cm3 is missing OR \leq max_bd_proxy + 0.15. The extension stops at the first horizon failing either constraint, so a ferralic / argic subsoil cannot accidentally inflate the andic thickness. Default is FALSE – canonical proxy behaviour preserved.

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3, Andic properties.

andic_soil_properties_usda

Andic soil properties (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, p 32)

Description

Soil materials with one or both of the following:

- $\text{bulk_density} \leq 0.90 \text{ g/cm}^3$ AND $\text{Al} + 0.5 * \text{Fe (oxalate)} \geq 2.0\%$ AND $\text{phosphate_retention} \geq 85\%$; OR
- $\text{Al} + 0.5 * \text{Fe (oxalate)} \geq 0.4\%$ AND $\text{phosphate_retention} \geq 25\%$ AND $\text{volcanic_glass_pct}$ varying with the texture-class proxy (deferred – requires fine-earth fraction analysis).

Usage

andic_soil_properties_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation (v0.8.6): primary "humic-andic" branch ($\text{bd} \leq 0.9 + \text{Al} + 0.5\text{Fe} \geq 2 + \text{Pret} \geq 85$).
The vitric-andic branch (lower Al+Fe but high glass content) is partially captured.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, p 32.

andic_subgroup_usda *Andic Subgroup helper (USDA, KST 13ed)*

Description

Pass when, throughout one or more horizons with total thickness ≥ 18 cm within 75 cm of the surface:

- bulk_density_g_cm3 ≤ 1.0 (at 33 kPa); AND
- Al + 0.5 * Fe (oxalate-extractable) > 1.0 percent.

KST 13ed, p 117 (Andisols core, applies to subgroup criteria too).

Usage

andic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

andisol_qualifying_usda
 Andisol Order qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, p 7)

Description

Andisols have andic soil properties in 60%+ of the thickness between the surface and either:

- a depth of 60 cm; or
- a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a duripan, or a petrocalcic horizon (whichever is shallower).

v0.8.6 implementation: pass when total thickness of layers with andic_soil_properties is ≥ 0.6 * (depth from surface to 60 cm).

Usage

andisol_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 6, p 117.

andosol_usda	<i>Andisols (USDA Cap 6): andic soil properties \geq 60% of thickness.</i>
--------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Andisols (USDA Cap 6): andic soil properties \geq 60% of thickness.

Usage

andosol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

andosol	<i>Andosol RSG gate (WRB 2022 Ch 4, p 104)</i>
---------	------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB-canonical: layer(s) with *andic* OR *vitric* properties, combined thickness \geq 30 cm within 100 cm starting \leq 25 cm; OR \geq 60% of the entire soil thickness when a limiting layer starts 25-50 cm. Plus: no argic, ferralic, petroplinthic, pisoplinthic, plinthic or spodic horizon \leq 100 cm (unless buried below 50 cm).

Usage

andosol(pedon, min_thickness = 30, max_top_cm = 25, buried_below_cm = 50)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
buried_below_cm	Numeric: layers of the exclusion diagnostics whose top_cm \geq this depth are treated as buried and do NOT exclude the Andosol (default 50, per WRB 2022 Ch 4 p 104).

Details

v0.3.4 enforces (1) andic OR vitric AND (2) combined thickness ≥ 30 cm starting in the upper 25 cm AND (3) the negative-list exclusions on argic / ferralic / plinthic / spodic.

v0.9.85 buried-exclusion fix

WRB 2022 Ch 4 p 104 specifies the Andosol exclusion list (argic / ferralic / petroplinthic / piso-plinthic / plinthic / spodic) as " ≤ 100 cm *unless buried below 50 cm*". The earlier implementation excluded an Andosol whenever any of those diagnostics passed anywhere in the profile, including on layers starting deeper than 50 cm – which mis-fires on AfSP Andosol references like CM W3_0047, where an argic layer at 56-72 cm wrongly excluded the andic surface stack. v0.9.85 restricts the exclusion check to layers starting ≤ 50 cm: a buried argic / ferralic / plinthic / spodic at deeper levels no longer disqualifies the surface andic stack from Andosol.

anhydrous_conditions_usda

Anhydrous conditions (USDA Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition)

Description

"Anhydrous conditions refer to the moisture condition of soils in very cold deserts and other areas with permafrost (often dry permafrost). These soils typically have low precipitation (usually less than 50 mm water equivalent per year) and a moisture content of less than 3 percent by weight." – KST 13ed, Ch 3, p 33.

Usage

anhydrous_conditions_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Required characteristics:

- Mean annual soil temperature ≤ 0 C; AND
- Layer 10-70 cm with soil temperature < 5 C throughout the year; AND
- No ice-impregnated permafrost in that layer; AND
- One of:
 - Dry (≥ 1500 kPa) in 1/2+ of soil for 1/2+ of time above 0 C; OR
 - Rupture-resistance class loose to slightly hard throughout when temp ≤ 0 C (except where pedogenically cemented).

Implementation (v0.8.x): Uses permafrost_temp_C from schema to flag layers below freezing; checks rupture_resistance for "loose" / "soft" / "slightly hard" in the 10-70 cm layer. Precipitation criterion is deferred to v0.9 (climatic data).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, p 33.

anionic_subgroup_usda *Anionic Subgroup helper (Oxisols)*

Description

Pass when delta pH (KCl - water) is 0 or net positive in a 18+ cm layer within 125 cm. Indicates exchange complex dominated by positive-charge minerals (Fe/Al oxides).

Usage

anionic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

annotate_wrb_from_usda
Annotate KSSL/NASIS pedons with a derived WRB Reference Soil Group

Description

Applies [usda_to_wrb_rsg](#) to each pedon's USDA classification (preserved as site\$reference_usda + site\$reference_usda_suborder by [load_kssl_pedons_gpkg](#)) and writes the result to site\$reference_wrb_from_usda – a "best-guess" expected WRB label for benchmark comparison.

Usage

annotate_wrb_from_usda(pedons)

Arguments

pedons List of [PedonRecord](#) objects.

Details

Pedons that already have `site$reference_wrb` populated (e.g.\ from external sources) are left untouched.

Value

The same list, with `site$reference_wrb_from_usda` populated where USDA classification is present.

anthraquic	<i>Anthraquic horizon (WRB 2022): puddled-rice / paddy plough layer. v0.3.3 detects via designation pattern Ap1 Ap Hh.</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Anthraquic horizon (WRB 2022): puddled-rice / paddy plough layer. v0.3.3 detects via designation pattern Ap1|Ap|Hh.

Usage

```
anthraquic(pedon, min_thickness = 20, max_top_cm = 50)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

anthric_horizons	<i>Anthric horizons (WRB 2022)</i>
------------------	------------------------------------

Description

Tests for any of five anthropogenic surface horizons recognised by WRB 2022 (hortic, irrigric, plaggic, pretic, terric). Diagnostic of Anthrosols. Two alternative paths qualify:

1. **Designation:** any layer's designation contains one of hortic|irragric|plaggic|prectic|terric.
2. **Property-based:** a surface layer (`top_cm <= 5`) at least `min_thickness_cm` cm thick (default 20) with elevated dark colour (Munsell value moist `<= max_munsell_value`, default 4) AND elevated plant-available P (`p_mehlich3_mg_kg >= min_p_mg_kg`, default 50).

Either path qualifies.

Usage

```
anthric_horizons(
  pedon,
  min_thickness_cm = 20,
  min_p_mg_kg = 50,
  max_munsell_value = 4
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness_cm	Minimum thickness for the property-based path (default 20).
min_p_mg_kg	Minimum plant-available P (Mehlich 3, mg/kg) for the property-based path (default 50).
max_munsell_value	Maximum Munsell value moist for the property-based path (default 4).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Anthrosols.

aqualf_qualifying_usda

Aqualf Suborder qualifier (aquic conditions in argillic Alfisol).

Description

Aqualf Suborder qualifier (aquic conditions in argillic Alfisol).

Usage

```
aqualf_qualifying_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

aquand_qualifying_usda

Aquands Suborder qualifier (Cap 6, p 117) Pass when histic OR aquic conditions in 40-50 cm with redox features. Simplified: histic OR aquic_conditions(max_top=50).

Description

Aquands Suborder qualifier (Cap 6, p 117) Pass when histic OR aquic conditions in 40-50 cm with redox features. Simplified: histic OR aquic_conditions(max_top=50).

Usage

aquand_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

aquandic_subgroup_usda

Aquandic Subgroup helper (Spodosols / others) Aquic + Andic.

Description

Aquandic Subgroup helper (Spodosols / others) Aquic + Andic.

Usage

aquandic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

aquept_qualifying_usda

Aquept Suborder qualifier (Entisol with aquic conditions <50 cm).

Description

Aquept Suborder qualifier (Entisol with aquic conditions <50 cm).

Usage

aquept_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

aquept_qualifying_usda

Aquept Suborder qualifier

Description

Aquept Suborder qualifier

Usage

aquept_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

aquert_qualifying_usda

Aquerts qualifier (Vertisols with aquic conditions) Pass when aquic_conditions within 50 cm.

Description

Aquerts qualifier (Vertisols with aquic conditions) Pass when aquic_conditions within 50 cm.

Usage

```
aquert_qualifying_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

aquic_conditions_usda *Aquic conditions (USDA Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition)*

Description

"Soils with aquic conditions are those that currently undergo continuous or periodic saturation and reduction. The presence of these conditions is indicated by redoximorphic features, except in Histosols and Histels." – KST 13ed, Ch 3, p 41.

Usage

```
aquic_conditions_usda(
  pedon,
  max_top_cm = 100,
  min_redox_pct = 5,
  max_chroma = 2
)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_top_cm Maximum depth at which saturation must occur (default 100 – typical for Sub-order keys; 200 for some).

min_redox_pct Threshold for redoximorphic features (default 5 percent).

max_chroma Maximum chroma indicating reduction (default 2).

Details

Three types of saturation are defined:

- **Endosaturation:** saturated in all layers from the upper boundary of saturation to ≥ 200 cm.
- **Episaturation:** saturated in one or more layers within 200 cm with unsaturated layer(s) below.
- **Anthric saturation:** cultivated/flood-irrigated.

Implementation (v0.8.x):

- Saturation is inferred from the presence of redoximorphic features (redoximorphic_features_pct ≥ 5) and/or a glei horizon (designation containing 'g').
- Reduction is inferred when chroma ≤ 2 in the matrix.
- Artificial drainage is treated as positive aquic when `site$artificially_drained == TRUE` (deferred – not in current schema).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#) with `evidence$saturation_type = "endo" / "epi" / NA`.

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, pp 41-44.

aquic_subgroup_usda *Aquic Subgroup helper (within 100 cm of mineral soil surface)*

Description

Aquic Subgroup helper (within 100 cm of mineral soil surface)

Usage

```
aquic_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

aquoll_qualifying_usda

Aquolls qualifier (aquic conditions in mollic).

Description

Aquolls qualifier (aquic conditions in mollic).

Usage

`aquoll_qualifying_usda(pedon)`

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

aquult_qualifying_usda

Aquult Suborder qualifier Pass when aquic_conditions within 50 cm.

Description

Aquult Suborder qualifier Pass when aquic_conditions within 50 cm.

Usage

`aquult_qualifying_usda(pedon)`

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

arenic_subgroup_usda *Arenic / Grossarenic Subgroup helper (Spodosols)*

Description

Pass when texture class (fine-earth fraction) is sandy throughout from the surface to the top of the spodic horizon AND the spodic top depth falls in [min_spodic_top, max_spodic_top].

Usage

```
arenic_subgroup_usda(pedon, min_spodic_top = 75, max_spodic_top = 125)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 min_spodic_top Default 75.
 max_spodic_top Default 125.

Details

Standard cuts: - "Arenic": 75-125 cm - "Grossarenic": 125+ cm (use min_spodic_top=125, max=Inf)

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

arenic_texture *Arenic texture (WRB 2022)*

Description

Tests whether the upper 100 cm is uniformly coarser than sandy loam (i.e., $\text{silt} + 2 * \text{clay} < 30$ in every layer). Diagnostic of Arenosols.

Usage

```
arenic_texture(pedon, max_top_cm = 100, engine = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 max_top_cm Maximum top depth (cm) of layers to be tested (default 100, per WRB 2022).
 engine One of "soilkey" (default; strict WRB sand threshold via [test_coarse_texture_throughout](#)) or "aqp" (LUCAS-friendly fallback: passes when sand ≥ 70 reads `getOption("soilKey.diagnostic_`

Details

Sub-test: [test_coarse_texture_throughout](#).

v0.3 limitations: WRB 2022 Arenosol also requires that no other diagnostic horizon (argic, ferralic, etc.) is present, but those exclusions happen at the key level via canonical RSG order.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Arenosols.

argic	<i>Argic horizon (WRB 2022)</i>
-------	---------------------------------

Description

Tests whether any horizon meets the argic horizon criteria per Chapter 3 of the WRB 2022 (4th edition). Argic is a subsurface horizon with distinctly higher clay content than the overlying horizon, qualified by three depth-conditional clay-increase rules; it must also have texture of sandy loam or finer, satisfy a minimum thickness, and not exhibit albeluvic glossic features (which would direct the profile to the Retisol path).

Usage

```
argic(
  pedon,
  min_thickness = 7.5,
  system = c("wrb2022", "usda"),
  engine = NULL,
  require_t = NULL
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Minimum thickness in cm (default 7.5).
system	One of "wrb2022" (default) or "usda". Selects the clay-increase threshold set: WRB uses 6/1.4/20 pp/ratio/pp; KST 13ed uses 3/1.2/8 (looser). See test_clay_increase_argic for the table.
engine	v0.9.63+. One of "soilkey" (the hand-coded path, default for back-compat) or "aqp" (canonical NRCS dispatch via <code>aqp::getArgillicBounds</code>). When NULL (the new default) the function reads <code>getOption("soilKey.diagnostic_engine", "soilkey")</code> so a <code>globalOptions(soilKey.diagnostic_engine = "aqp")</code> flips every <code>argic()</code> call without modifying call sites. See argic_aqp .

require_t v0.9.63+. Forwarded to `aqp::getArgillicBounds` when engine = "aqp": TRUE requires a "t" suffix in the horizon designation (the strict KST 13ed text); FALSE accepts argic by clay-increase alone (more permissive on data-sparse profiles). NULL (default) auto-picks: TRUE for system = "usda", FALSE for system = "wrb2022". Ignored when engine = "soilkey".

Details

Sub-tests called (each a list with passed, layers, missing, details, notes):

- `test_clay_increase_argic` – the three-pronged WRB 2022 clay-increase rule.
- `test_minimum_thickness` – thickness ≥ 7.5 cm (configurable via `min_thickness`).
- `test_texture_argic` – texture of sandy loam or finer ($\text{silt} + 2 * \text{clay} \geq 30$).
- `test_not_albeluvisc` – excludes profiles with glossic tongues (Retisol path).

v0.1 limitations: clay-increase distance (≤ 30 cm vertical, or ≤ 15 cm with abrupt textural change) is not yet enforced; that is scheduled for v0.2 and depends on horizon boundary descriptions.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022). *World Reference Base for Soil Resources*, 4th edition. International Union of Soil Sciences, Vienna. Chapter 3 – Argic horizon.

argic_aqp	<i>Argic / argillic horizon via <code>aqp::getArgillicBounds()</code></i>
-----------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Wraps `aqp::getArgillicBounds()` (Beaudette et al.) in `soilKey`'s [DiagnosticResult](#) contract. The `aqp` implementation is the canonical NRCS R port and uses the tiered USDA-NRCS clay-increase thresholds:

- Eluvial clay < 15\
- Eluvial clay 15-40\
- Eluvial clay ≥ 40 \

(vs. `soilKey`'s hand-coded [argic](#) which uses the WRB 6/1.4/20 thresholds). For BDsolos / FEBR / KSSL profiles the `aqp` rule is closer to KST 13ed and BDsolos field practice.

Usage

```
argic_aqp(pedon, require_t = FALSE, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
require_t	Whether to require an explicit "t" suffix in the horizon designation (default FALSE for BDsolos / FEBR; TRUE matches the strict KST 13ed text).
...	Reserved for future arguments.

Details

By default aqp requires a "t" suffix in the horizon designation (`require_t = TRUE`); we expose this so callers can be permissive on datasets where designation is missing or non-conforming (BDsolos exports often drop the "t").

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#) with name = "argic_aqp". \$layers are the row indices of horizons in the argillic / argic depth interval. \$evidence carries the raw aqp c(ubound, lbound) bounds for traceability.

See Also

[argic](#) (soilKey hand-coded; WRB 6/1.4/20), `aqp::getArgillicBounds`.

argic_aridisol_usda *Argic Aridisol helper – argillic-or-kandic in Argids/Cryids/etc.*

Description

Argic Aridisol helper – argillic-or-kandic in Argids/Cryids/etc.

Usage

```
argic_aridisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

argic_mollisol_usda *Argic Mollisol Suborder helper – delegates argillic_within_usda.*

Description

Argic Mollisol Suborder helper – delegates argillic_within_usda.

Usage

```
argic_mollisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

argic_subgroup_usda *Argic Subgroup helper (Endoaquods/Fragiaquods): argillic or kandic. Synonym of ultic at this level. Re-exported for naming clarity.*

Description

Argic Subgroup helper (Endoaquods/Fragiaquods): argillic or kandic. Synonym of ultic at this level. Re-exported for naming clarity.

Usage

```
argic_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

 argic_with_strong_clay_films

Test whether a pedon's argic horizon has strong clay films

Description

Wraps [argic\(\)](#) and inspects the `clay_films_amount` field at the argic-passing layers. Returns a structured result that [B_latossolico\(\)](#) uses to decide whether the SiBCS Cap 18 strong-films exclusion fires.

Usage

```
argic_with_strong_clay_films(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A list with:

- `passed` – logical, TRUE only when argic passes AND at least one argic-passing layer has a strong (*comum / abundante*) film qualifier.
- `layers` – integer vector of argic-passing layer indices (empty when `passed` is FALSE).
- `argic` – the underlying [DiagnosticResult](#) from [argic\(\)](#).
- `films` – character vector of the `clay_films_amount` values at the argic-passing layers.

 argillic_clay_films_test

Test for clay-illuviation evidence (KST 13ed Ch 3 p 4)

Description

KST 13ed argillic horizon requires "evidence of illuvial accumulation of clay" alongside the clay-increase rule. Acceptable evidence:

- oriented clays bridging sand grains in $\geq 1\%$ of the horizon;
- clay films lining pores or coating ped faces;
- lamellae more than 5 mm thick.

Usage

```
argillic_clay_films_test(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

This test reads three complementary slots, in order of evidence strength:

1. pedon\$site\$nasis_diagnostic_features – the NASIS `pediagfeatures.featkind` vector. The surveyor's explicit "Argillic horizon" entry directly confirms clay-illuviation evidence (~13 500 entries in the 2021 NASIS snapshot). Strongest evidence.
2. pedon\$horizons\$clay_films_amount – per-horizon clay-film abundance derived from NASIS `phpvsf`. Values: "few", "common", "many", "continuous". Direct measurement.
3. pedon\$horizons\$designation containing a 't' master suffix (e.g. Bt, Btk, Btx, Bt1, 2Bt). v0.9.28: the pedologist who wrote that designation explicitly identified the horizon as clay-illuvial – per KST 13ed Ch 18, the 't' suffix means "accumulation of silicate clay" – so it counts as positive evidence even when NASIS records are absent. This unlocks the KST 13ed argillic thresholds for the ~47 `pediagfeatures` and `phpvsf` records.

Any of the three sources counts as positive evidence (logical OR). `passed = NA` when none is populated AND no horizon designation field is present at all (lab-only loaders without horizon descriptions). `passed = FALSE` when designations exist but none has a 't' suffix and NASIS slots are empty.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), Keys to Soil Taxonomy 13th ed., Ch. 3, argillic horizon (clay-illuviation criteria, p. 4); Ch. 18, master horizon symbols (t: silicate-clay accumulation, p. 332).

argillic_or_kandic_usda

Argillic-or-Kandic helper (USDA, used in Spodosols Subgroups)

Description

Pass when EITHER an argillic OR a kandic horizon is present within `max_top_cm`.

Usage

```
argillic_or_kandic_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 200, min_bs = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Default 200.
min_bs	Optional minimum BS for "Alfic" subgroups.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

argillic_usda	<i>Argillic horizon (USDA Soil Taxonomy)</i>
---------------	----------------------------------------------

Description

v0.2 scaffold delegating to WRB [argic](#). The two diagnostics' clay-increase rules are essentially the same; USDA argillic additionally requires evidence of clay illuviation (clay films / clay bridges) on at least 1% of the surface area, which v0.8 will enforce against the `clay_films_amount` column.

Usage

```
argillic_usda(pedon, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
...	Passed to argic .

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2014), Keys to Soil Taxonomy, Ch. 3 – argillic horizon.

argillic_within_usda *Argillic horizon helper (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3)*

Description

Wrapper around argillic_usda that simply re-exports the DiagnosticResult with a max-depth check (default 100 cm for Argiorthels Subgroup keys).

Usage

```
argillic_within_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Default 100 cm.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

argissolo *Argissolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 114; conceito Cap 3, p 86-88)*

Description

Horizonte B textural – catch-all final na chave SiBCS apos Luvisolos / Nitossolos terem sido excluidos. v0.7 enforce: B textural + (argila ativ baixa OR ativ alta + V baixa OR carater alumínico).

Usage

```
argissolo(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

argissolo_acinzentado *Argissolos Acinzentados (SiBCS Cap 5)*

Description

Matiz ≥ 7.5 YR, valor ≥ 5 , croma < 4 (cores mais cinzentas / palidas), na maior parte do B (inclusive BA).

Usage

argissolo_acinzentado(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

argissolo_amarelo *Argissolos Amarelos (SiBCS Cap 5)*

Description

Matiz ≥ 7.5 YR (mais amarelo) na maior parte do B, sem ser Acinzentado (croma ≥ 4).

Usage

argissolo_amarelo(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

argissolo_bruno_acinzentado
Argissolos Bruno-Acinzentados (SiBCS Cap 5)

Description

Argissolos com horizonte B textural, com matiz ≥ 5 YR e cor escura (valor ≤ 4 + croma ≤ 4 umidos) na maior parte do B (inclusive BA).

Usage

argissolo_bruno_acinzentado(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

argissolo_vermelho *Argissolos Vermelhos (SiBCS Cap 5)*

Description

Matiz \leq 2.5YR (mais vermelho) na maior parte do B.

Usage

argissolo_vermelho(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

argissolo_vermelho_amarelo
 Argissolos Vermelho-Amarelos (catch-all dos Argissolos)

Description

Argissolos Vermelho-Amarelos (catch-all dos Argissolos)

Usage

argissolo_vermelho_amarelo(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

aridisol_qualifying_usda
 Aridisol Order qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed, Ch 2) Pass when the soil has aridic SMR AND any one of: argillic, natric, kandic, calcic, petrocalcic, gypsic, petrogypsic, salic, duripan, cambic, sulfuric horizon. Also requires no other prior order match.

Description

Aridisol Order qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed, Ch 2) Pass when the soil has aridic SMR AND any one of: argillic, natric, kandic, calcic, petrocalcic, gypsic, petrogypsic, salic, duripan, cambic, sulfuric horizon. Also requires no other prior order match.

Usage

```
aridisol_qualifying_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

aridisol_usda	<i>Aridisols (USDA Cap 7): aridic moisture regime + ochric/anthropic + subsurface diagnostic. v0.8 simplification: detected via aridity proxies (low EC OR salic OR caracter combinations) + non-mollic surface + low OC (no organic accumulation).</i>
---------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Aridisols (USDA Cap 7): aridic moisture regime + ochric/anthropic + subsurface diagnostic. v0.8 simplification: detected via aridity proxies (low EC OR salic OR caracter combinations) + non-mollic surface + low OC (no organic accumulation).

Usage

```
aridisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

artefacts	<i>Artefacts (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.2)</i>
-----------	--------------------------------------

Description

Per the canonical definition: human-made / human-altered / human- excavated material. v0.3.3 returns the layers where artefacts_pct >= 1.

Usage

```
artefacts(pedon, min_pct = 1)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 min_pct Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

as_aqp	<i>Convert one or more PedonRecord objects to an aqp SoilProfileCollection</i>
--------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Builds a `aqp::SoilProfileCollection` from one `PedonRecord` or a list of them. Standard `soilKey` columns (`top_cm`, `bottom_cm`, `designation`, `clay_pct`, `sand_pct`, `silt_pct`) are renamed to `aqp`'s canonical convention (`top`, `bottom`, `name`, `clay`, `sand`, `silt`). All other columns are passed through unchanged. Site-level slots (`lat`, `lon`, `country`, `parent_material`, `reference_*`, `nasis_diagnostic_features`, etc.) are attached to the `SPC`'s site table.

Usage

```
as_aqp(x)
```

Arguments

`x` A [PedonRecord](#) or a list of them.

Details

Requires the `aqp` package, listed in `Suggests`; the function raises a clear error if `aqp` is not installed.

Value

A `aqp::SoilProfileCollection`.

See Also

[from_aqp](#), the inverse conversion.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("aqp", quietly = TRUE)) {
  pedons <- list(make_ferralsol_canonical(), make_luvisol_canonical())
  spc <- as_aqp(pedons)
  length(spc)            # 2 profiles
  aqp::horizons(spc)    # one row per horizon, aqp-named columns
}
```

atividade_argila_alta *Atividade da fracao argila (SiBCS Cap 1, p 30)*

Description

Calcula a atividade da fracao argila $Ta = CEC * 1000 / \text{argila}$ (em cmolc/kg de argila, sem correcao para carbono) por horizonte e classifica como ****alta (Ta)**** se ≥ 27 cmolc/kg argila ou ****baixa (Tb)**** se < 27 . Nao se aplica a texturas areia / areia franca.

Usage

```
atividade_argila_alta(pedon, min_ta = 27)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_ta	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

Details

Para distincao de classes pelo SiBCS, considera-se a atividade no horizonte B (incl. BA, exc. BC) ou no horizonte C (incl. CA), quando nao existe B.

Value

Um [DiagnosticResult](#); passed = TRUE sse pelo menos um horizonte B ou C tem Ta. layers = horizontes com atividade alta (Ta).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, "Atividade da fracao argila", p. 30.

attach_lucas_spectra *Attach LUCAS 2018 Vis-NIR spectra to a list of PedonRecord objects*

Description

Joins the LUCAS Soil 2018 Spectral Library (separate ESDAC release, ~83 GB) onto the pedons returned by [load_lucas_soil_2018](#), by matching the LUCAS POINT_ID of the spectra against pedon\$site\$id. Each matched pedon gets \$spectra\$vnir populated as a numeric matrix (rows = horizons, cols = wavelengths).

Usage

```
attach_lucas_spectra(  
  pedons,  
  spectra,  
  point_id_col = "POINT_ID",  
  verbose = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

pedons	List of PedonRecord objects.
spectra	A wide or long data.frame as described above.
point_id_col	Name of the LUCAS point-id column in spectra. Default "POINT_ID".
verbose	If TRUE (default), reports the join hit rate.

Details

Two input shapes are accepted:

- A wide data.frame keyed by an integer POINT_ID column with one column per wavelength (column names parseable as numeric nm). One row per LUCAS point.
- A long data.frame with columns POINT_ID, wavelength_nm, reflectance.

Spectra are attached only to the topsoil horizon (row 1); the subsoil horizon (if any) is left without spectra. After this call, `benchmark_lucas_2018(..., fill_topsoil_from = "spectra", ossl_models = ...)` feeds the spectra through [predict_from_spectra](#) (v0.9.46) to fill any chemistry / texture gap not already populated by SoilGrids.

Value

The list of pedons (mutated in place; returned invisibly).

See Also

[predict_from_spectra](#), [predict_munsell_from_spectra](#), [load_lucas_soil_2018](#).

audit_argic_strong_films

Audit the strong-clay-films exclusion across a list of pedons

Description

Applies [argic_with_strong_clay_films](#)() to every pedon in pedons and returns a per-pedon table summarising how the v0.9.61 `B_latossolico()` latossolic-vs-argic rule resolves on the benchmark sample.

Usage

```
audit_argic_strong_films(pedons, reference_filter = NULL)
```

Arguments

`pedons` List of [PedonRecord](#) objects.

`reference_filter` Optional regex applied to `pedons$reference_sibcs` to keep only pedons whose reference matches (case-sensitive, ICU). Default NULL keeps every pedon.

Details

Useful for empirical validation of the SiBCS Cap 18 precedence rule on field-described datasets such as Bdsolos and Redape, where clay-film qualifiers are recorded in mixed Portuguese / English tokenisation. The audit is read-only and never invokes [classify_sibcs\(\)](#).

Value

A data.frame with columns `id`, `reference_sibcs`, `argic_passed`, `has_films_at_argic`, `strong_films_at_argic`, and `would_exclude_from_latossolo`.

Examples

```
csv_path <- "RJ.csv"
if (file.exists(csv_path)) {
  peds <- load_bdsolos_csv(csv_path)
  a <- audit_argic_strong_films(peds, reference_filter = "LATOSSOLO")
  table(a$would_exclude_from_latossolo)
}
```

`auto_set_proj_env` *Auto-detect PROJ_LIB and GDAL_DATA directories*

Description

Probes the common system locations for PROJ `proj.db` and GDAL data directories, on macOS Homebrew (Apple silicon and Intel), Linuxbrew, conda / mamba environments, and Debian / Ubuntu / Fedora apt or dnf installs. Sets the corresponding environment variables only when they are not already set, so a user-provided value always wins. Idempotent: safe to call repeatedly.

Usage

```
auto_set_proj_env(verbose = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`verbose` If TRUE, emits a cli message confirming what was detected.

Details

Called automatically from `.onLoad`; call manually after installing PROJ / GDAL via Homebrew if you want to refresh the env without restarting R.

Value

Invisibly, a named list with `PROJ_LIB` and `GDAL_DATA` (the values that were set, or `NA_character_` if a value was already present or no candidate was found).

`available_esdb_attributes`

List ESDB Raster Library attributes available at a given root

Description

Walks ‘`raster_root`’ and returns the folder names that contain a valid ‘`<NAME>.tif`’ raster. Useful for discovery before calling [lookup_esdb](#).

Usage

```
available_esdb_attributes(raster_root)
```

Arguments

`raster_root` Path to the unpacked ESDB raster directory (typically ‘`<some>/ESDB-Raster-Library-1k-GeoTIFF-...`’).

Value

A character vector of attribute names (sorted).

Examples

```
root <- file.path(tempdir(), "ESDB-Raster-Library-1k-GeoTIFF-20240507")
if (dir.exists(root)) {
  available_esdb_attributes(root)
}
```

B_espodico	<i>Horizonte B espodico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 62-65; v0.7)</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Subsuperficial com acumulo iluvial de Al + Fe + materia organica; espessura ≥ 2.5 cm. Tipos: Bs, Bhs, Bh, ortstein. Reuso de [spodic](#) (WRB) que ja codifica criterios essencialmente identicos.

Usage

B_espodico(pedon, ...)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
...	Reserved for future arguments.

B_incipiente	<i>Horizonte B incipiente (SiBCS Cap 2, p 59-61; v0.7)</i>
--------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Subsuperficial sob A/Ap/AB com alteracao fisica e quimica incipiente, NAO satisfazendo a B textural / latossolico / nitico / espodico / planico, com:

- espessura ≥ 10 cm;
- textura francoarenosa ou mais fina;
- $< 50\%$ estrutura da rocha original;
- evidencias de pedogenese (cor mais viva OR remocao de carbonatos OR designation Bw/Bi);
- NAO satisfaz: argic, ferralic, espodic, planic, e nao tem duripa/petrocalcico/fragipa.

Usage

B_incipiente(pedon, min_thickness = 10)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

B_latossolico

*Horizonte B latossolico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 57-59; v0.7 strict)***Description**

Adicionalmente a [ferralic](#) (WRB), o B latossolico SiBCS exige:

- Espessura minima de 50 cm;
- Textura francoarenosa ou mais fina;
- Estrutura granular muito pequena/pequena ou em blocos subangulares fraco/moderado;
- < 5% volume mostrando estrutura da rocha original;
- $K_i \leq 2.2$ (geralmente ≤ 2.0);
- Cerosidade no maximo pouca e fraca.

v0.7 enforce thickness, texture, e ausencia de estrutura primaria herdada via designation e clay; Ki/Kr quantitativos sao v0.8 (precisa de SiO2/Al2O3 lab-data nao no schema).

Usage

```
B_latossolico(
  pedon,
  min_thickness = 50,
  max_cec_per_clay = NULL,
  engine = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_cec_per_clay	Numeric threshold or option (see Details). Defaults to NULL (engine-aware): 17 in soilkey engine (the SiBCS-loose threshold, slightly more permissive than strict WRB ferralic 16) or 20 in aqp engine (v0.9.68 regional tolerance for Embrapa lab methodology offset).
engine	One of "soilkey" (default) or "aqp"; NULL reads <code>getOption("soilKey.diagnostic_engine")</code> . Forwarded to ferralic .
...	Reserved for future arguments.

B_nitico

*Horizonte B nitico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 61-62; v0.7)***Description**

Subsuperficial nao hidromorfico, textura argilosa/muito argilosa (clay $\geq 35\%$ desde a superficie), com pequeno incremento de argila (B/A ≤ 1.5), estrutura em blocos sub/angulares ou prismatica grau moderado/forte, cerosidade no minimo comum + moderada, espessura ≥ 30 cm. Argila ativ baixa OR ativ alta + carater aluminico.

Usage

```
B_nitico(
  pedon,
  min_thickness = 30,
  min_clay_pct = 35,
  max_b_a_ratio = 1.5,
  min_cerosidade = c("common", "many", "abundant", "strong")
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_clay_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_b_a_ratio	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_cerosidade	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

B_planico

*Horizonte B planico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 65-66; v0.7)***Description**

Tipo especial de B textural com mudanca textural abrupta + permeabilidade lenta + cores neutras/escurecidas + cromas baixos.

Usage

```
B_planico(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

B_textural	<i>Horizonte B textural (SiBCS Cap 2, p 54-57; v0.7 strict)</i>
------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Horizonte mineral subsuperficial com incremento de argila + cerosidade OR aumento gradativo, satisfazendo criterios de espessura e relacao textural B/A. v0.7 enforce as alternativas (a)-(j) do SiBCS por delegacao parcial ao WRB [argic](#) (criterios de clay-increase essencialmente identicos) acrescidos de:

- espessura ≥ 7.5 cm OR $\geq 10\%$ da soma das espessuras dos subjacentes; e
- textura \geq francoarenosa.

Refinamentos pendentes para v0.8: cerosidade obrigatoria sob certas estruturas (criterio i.1 / i.2 / i.3); lamelas ≥ 15 cm combinadas.

Usage

```
B_textural(pedon, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
...	Reserved for future arguments.

batch_robustness	<i>Batch robustness across many pedons</i>
------------------	--------------------------------------------

Description

Runs [classification_robustness](#) on each pedon in a list and returns a tidy data.frame with one row per pedon. Useful for paper-grade claims like "85 to a 5

Usage

```
batch_robustness(pedons, ...)
```

Arguments

pedons	List of PedonRecord objects.
...	Passed to classification_robustness .

Value

A data.frame with columns id, baseline, robustness, n_flipped.

Examples

```
pedons <- list(make_ferralsol_canonical(),
              make_luvisol_canonical(),
              make_chernozem_canonical())
batch_robustness(pedons, system = "wrb2022", n = 50)
#>      id baseline robustness n_flipped
#> 1 FR-canon-01 Ferralsols      0.96      2
#> 2 LV-canon-01 Luvisols      1.00      0
#> 3 CH-canon-01 Chernozems    0.94      3
```

 benchmark_afsp

Benchmark soilKey WRB predictions against AfSP ground truth

Description

Benchmark soilKey WRB predictions against AfSP ground truth

Usage

```
benchmark_afsp(pedons, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

pedons List of [PedonRecord](#) from [load_afsp_pedons](#) or [load_afsp_sample](#).
 verbose Print progress.

Value

List with accuracy, n_compared, confusion, per_class_recall.

 benchmark_bdsolos

Benchmark soilKey classifiers against BDsolos national reference labels

Description

Runs [classify_wrb2022](#), [classify_sibcs](#), and [classify_usda](#) on each [PedonRecord](#) loaded from a BDsolos CSV via [load_bdsolos_csv](#), then compares each predicted classification against the corresponding BDsolos reference label ([reference_sibcs](#), [reference_wrb](#), [reference_st](#)) and reports per-system accuracy, per-class recall, and a confusion matrix.

Usage

```
benchmark_bdsolos(
  pedons,
  systems = c("wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda"),
  sibcs_level = c("order", "subordem"),
  max_n = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

pedons	A list of PedonRecord objects, typically produced by load_bdsolos_csv .
systems	Character vector. Any subset of c("wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda"). Default runs all three.
sibcs_level	One of "order" (default) or "subordem". Forwarded to normalise_febr_sibcs .
max_n	Optional integer; cap classification at the first max_n pedons. NULL (default) classifies every pedon.
verbose	If TRUE (default), emits cli progress messages.

Value

A list with elements:

- per_system – named list (one entry per requested system) of list(accuracy, n_compared, n_correct, n_errors, confusion, per_class) (or list(accuracy = NA_real_, message) when no reference labels were present).
- coverage – named list of list(n_with_ref, n_total, pct) per system.
- config – named list capturing n_pedons, systems, sibcs_level, soilKey_version, timestamp.

Reference label coverage

BDsolos densely populates reference_sibcs (~82 of the v0.9.59 audit) but sparsely populates reference_wrb and reference_st (UF-dependent; ~5 states). The function always reports the per-system label coverage (\$coverage) so the caller can judge how representative each accuracy figure is.

Comparison level

SiBCS comparison is at level = "order" by default, which converts the BDsolos all-caps Portuguese label (e.g. "ARGISSOLO VERMELHO Tb EUTROFICO ...") to the soilKey plural Title Case form ("Argissolos") via [normalise_febr_sibcs](#). Set sibcs_level = "subordem" to compare the first two SiBCS tokens (Ordem + Subordem).

WRB and USDA comparisons are at the Reference Soil Group / Order level: [normalise_febr_wrb\(\)](#) strips qualifier parens and pluralises the bare RSG ("Xanthic Ferralsol" -> "Ferralsols"); [normalise_febr_usda\(\)](#) maps the suffix of the last subgroup token to the USDA Order ("Typic Haplorthox" -> "Oxisols").

Errors and missing-label handling

Pedons without a reference label for a given system are silently excluded from THAT system's comparison (but still classified for the other two systems). If a system has zero pedons with a reference label, the corresponding `$per_system` entry has `accuracy = NA_real_` and `message = "no_reference_labels"`. Classifier errors are caught per-pedon and recorded in `n_errors`; they do not abort the run.

See Also

[load_bdsolos_csv](#), [benchmark_lucas_2018](#), [classify_all](#), [normalise_febr_sibcs](#), [normalise_febr_wrb](#), [normalise_febr_usda](#).

Examples

```
# Requires a user-provided Bdsolos CSV; guarded so the example
# no-ops on CRAN when the file is absent.
csv_path <- "RJ.csv"
if (file.exists(csv_path)) {
  peds <- load_bdsolos_csv(csv_path)
  bench <- benchmark_bdsolos(peds, systems = c("sibcs", "wrb2022", "usda"))
  bench$coverage      # how many pedons had each reference label
  bench$per_system$sibcs$accuracy
  bench$per_system$sibcs$confusion

  # Subordem level
  bench2 <- benchmark_bdsolos(peds, systems = "sibcs",
                              sibcs_level = "subordem")
}
```

benchmark_lucas_2018 *Run the LUCAS Soil 2018 / ESDB WRB benchmark*

Description

For each pedon in pedons, attaches the canonical Reference Soil Group at its coordinate via [lookup_esdb](#), runs [classify_wrb2022](#) (or [classify_sibcs](#)), and tabulates predicted vs reference. Optionally fills missing texture from ISRIC SoilGrids 250m before classifying so that WRB diagnostic horizons that depend on clay (argic, ferralic, nitic) are reachable.

Usage

```
benchmark_lucas_2018(
  pedons,
  esdb_root,
  attribute = "WRBLV1",
  fill_texture_from = NULL,
  fill_topsoil_from = c("none", "soilgrids", "spectra"),
```

```

fill_subsoil_from = c("none", "soilgrids"),
fill_properties = c("clay", "sand", "silt", "phh2o", "soc", "cec", "bdod", "nitrogen",
  "cfvo"),
ossl_models = NULL,
classify_with = c("wrb2022", "sibcs"),
max_n = NULL,
soilgrids_lookup_fn = lookup_soilgrids,
verbose = TRUE
)

```

Arguments

pedons	List of PedonRecord objects, typically from load_lucas_soil_2018 .
esdb_root	Path to the unpacked ESDB raster directory (containing the WRBLV1/ sub-folder).
attribute	ESDB attribute to use as reference. Default "WRBLV1" (Reference Soil Group, 31 codes). Other sensible choices: "FA090LV1" (legacy FAO 1990).
fill_texture_from	Deprecated alias for <code>fill_topsoil_from</code> (v0.9.49 signature). When "soilgrids", treated as <code>fill_topsoil_from = "soilgrids"</code> with <code>fill_properties = c("clay", "sand", "silt")</code> and <code>fill_subsoil_from = "none"</code> .
fill_topsoil_from	One of "none" (default), "soilgrids" (fills topsoil 0-20 cm from SoilGrids 250m at 0-5 cm), or "spectra" (runs predict_from_spectra with the supplied <code>ossl_models</code> ; pedons must have <code>\$spectra\$vnir</code> attached, e.g. via attach_lucas_spectra).
fill_subsoil_from	One of "none" (default) or "soilgrids" (synthesises a 30-60 cm B horizon from SoilGrids 250m). Unlocks WRB diagnostic horizons that depend on sub-soil features (cambic, argic, mollic).
fill_properties	Character vector of SoilGrids properties to fill when <code>fill_topsoil_from = "soilgrids"</code> or <code>fill_subsoil_from = "soilgrids"</code> . Default uses all 9 properties: clay, sand, silt, phh2o, soc, cec, bdod, nitrogen, cfvo. Set to <code>c("clay", "sand", "silt")</code> to recover the v0.9.49 behaviour. cfvo is mapped to <code>coarse_fragments_pct</code> , which drives the Leptosols diagnostic (≥ 90 within 25 cm).
ossl_models	Required when <code>fill_topsoil_from = "spectra"</code> . A list of <code>soilKey_pls_model</code> objects from train_pls_from_ossl (v0.9.46).
classify_with	One of "wrb2022" (default) or "sibcs".
max_n	Optional integer cap on the number of pedons benchmarked. Useful for quick development runs.
soilgrids_lookup_fn	Internal: SoilGrids lookup function (defaults to lookup_soilgrids). Override for unit tests to inject a deterministic stub.
verbose	If TRUE (default), prints progress.

Details

This closes Route B of the v0.9.27 EU-LUCAS roadmap end-to-end: v0.9.44 [lookup_esdb](#) provides the reference label; v0.9.49 (this) provides the loader and the comparison loop; v0.9.48 [lookup_soilgrids](#) fills texture; v0.9.46 [predict_from_spectra](#) and v0.9.47 [predict_munsell_from_spectra](#) can fill the chemistry / Munsell gaps when Vis-NIR is available.

Value

A list with elements:

`predictions` data.frame with one row per pedon: `point_id`, `lon`, `lat`, `country`, `predicted`, `reference_code`, `reference_name`, `agree`.

`confusion` Confusion table (predicted vs reference) over in-scope rows.

`accuracy` Overall fraction of correct classifications among in-scope rows.

`per_rsg` Per-RSG recall data.frame.

`n_in_scope` Number of pedons with both predicted and reference set.

`n_total` Total pedons benchmarked.

`n_errors` Number of pedons where the classifier errored out.

`errors` List of (i, id, error) tuples for classifier errors.

`config` Recap of arguments used.

See Also

[load_lucas_soil_2018](#), [lookup_esdb](#), [lookup_soilgrids](#).

Examples

```
lucas_dir <- file.path(tempdir(), "LUCAS-SOIL-2018-v2")
esdb_dir <- file.path(tempdir(), "ESDB-Raster-Library-1k-GeoTIFF-20240507")
if (dir.exists(lucas_dir) && dir.exists(esdb_dir)) {
  pedons <- load_lucas_soil_2018(lucas_dir, countries = "ES", max_n = 50)
  bench <- benchmark_lucas_2018(
    pedons,
    esdb_root = esdb_dir,
    fill_texture_from = "soilgrids")
  bench$accuracy
  bench$per_rsg
}
```

benchmark_performance *Run the soilKey performance benchmark*

Description

Generates n synthetic pedons (5 horizons each, with the chemistry / morphology populated for typical Argissolo / Latossolo / Cambissolo cases), calls each classifier on each pedon, and reports per-call latency + total throughput.

Usage

```
benchmark_performance(
  n = 100L,
  systems = c("wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda"),
  include_familia = FALSE,
  seed = 42L,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>n</code>	Integer. Number of synthetic pedons to generate. Default 100; pass 1000 or higher for batch-level measurements.
<code>systems</code>	Character vector. Which classifiers to time. Default <code>c("wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda")</code> (all three).
<code>include_familia</code>	Pass-through to <code>classify_sibcs</code> when "sibcs" is in <code>systems</code> . Default FALSE.
<code>seed</code>	Integer applied through <code>with_seed</code> so the synthetic pedon pool is reproducible <i>without</i> mutating the caller's global RNG state. Pass NULL to leave the RNG stream untouched. Default 42L preserves the bit-for-bit-identical pool earlier soilKey releases produced (CRAN policy: never call <code>set.seed()</code> on the caller's RNG).
<code>verbose</code>	If TRUE (default), prints a per-system summary line.

Details

Designed to be a one-shot reproducible benchmark: the synthetic pedons use a fixed RNG seed so timings on the same machine are comparable across releases.

Value

A list with elements:

`summary` data.frame: system, n_pedons, total_seconds, mean_seconds, median_seconds, pedons_per_minute.

`per_pedon` data.frame with one row per (pedon, system) call: i, system, seconds, status.

`config` list with n, seed, soilKey_version, R_version, platform.

Examples

```
bench <- benchmark_performance(n = 5)
bench$summary
```

benchmark_redape	<i>Benchmark soilKey SiBCS predictions against the Redape gold standard</i>
------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Runs `classify_sibcs` on each pedon and compares against the curator-validated reference label (Order / Suborder / Great Group / Subgroup). Returns per-level accuracy and the confusion matrix at the requested granularity.

Usage

```
benchmark_redape(
  pedons,
  level = c("order", "subordem", "gde_grupo", "subgrupo"),
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

pedons	List of <code>PedonRecord</code> objects (typically from <code>load_redape_pedons</code>).
level	One of "order" (default), "subordem", "gde_grupo", or "subgrupo".
verbose	Print progress (default TRUE).

Value

A list with accuracy, n_compared, confusion, per_class_recall, and the per-pedon predictions table. predictions now also includes columns ref_norm and pred_norm – the canonical comparison keys – for downstream auditing.

v0.9.81 level-aware comparison

Earlier versions accepted the level argument but always used rsg_or_order for the prediction and the order field for the reference, so all four levels reported identical accuracy. v0.9.81 reads the level-specific slots from res\$trace (subordem, grande_grupo, subgrupo) and concatenates the matching reference fields, applying SiBCS-aware Portuguese pluralisation so the comparison key matches the predictor's plural Title Case form.

 benchmark_run_classification

Run a benchmark across one of the loaded pedon lists

Description

Classifies each pedon in pedons against the named system, compares against the published reference (e.g. `site$reference_wrb`), and returns a confusion matrix + top-1 / top-3 accuracy + bootstrap CI on top-1.

Usage

```
benchmark_run_classification(
  pedons,
  system = c("wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda"),
  level = c("order", "subgroup", "subordem", "great_group", "suborder"),
  boot_n = 1000L,
  seed = NULL
)
```

Arguments

pedons	List of PedonRecord objects (output of one of the <code>load_*</code> functions).
system	One of "wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda".
level	Granularity of the comparison: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "order" (default) – the top-level RSG / Ordem / Order, compared against <code>cls\$rsg_or_order</code>; • "subgroup" – the full classified name (Subgroup in USDA, Subgrupo in SiBCS, RSG + qualifiers in WRB), compared against <code>cls\$name</code> after case-insensitive token normalisation; • "subordem" – SiBCS-only, the 2nd-level "Ordem + Subordem" (e.g. "Latosso-los Vermelhos"). Comparison via the first two normalised tokens of the predicted name vs the reference; • "great_group" (USDA, v0.9.24) – the LAST token of the subgroup name (e.g. "typic hapludalfs" -> "hapludalfs"). Isolates whether the Great Group machinery is correct independent of subgroup modifiers (Typic / Aquic / Vertic / Cumulic / Pachic / etc.). Reads <code>site\$reference_usda_grtgroup</code>; • "suborder" (USDA, v0.9.24) – maps the Great Group prediction to its canonical Suborder suffix ("hapludalfs" -> "udalfs") using the KST 13ed Ch 4 ~70-Suborder list. Reads <code>site\$reference_usda_suborder</code>.
boot_n	Bootstrap replicates for CI (default 1000).
seed	Optional integer passed to <code>with_seed</code> to make the bootstrap reproducible without mutating the caller's global RNG state. When NULL (default), the bootstrap uses the current RNG stream untouched.

Value

A list with elements `accuracy_top1`, `accuracy_ci`, `confusion`, and `per_pedon` (one row per pedon with predicted vs reference).

benchmark_unified	<i>Unified cross-dataset benchmark across SiBCS / WRB / USDA</i>
-------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Runs a system's `soilKey` classifier on every dataset that has reference labels for that system, then pools the results into a single nation-/world-wide accuracy estimate.

Usage

```
benchmark_unified(
  systems = c("all", "wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda"),
  datasets = c("all", "bdsolos", "febr", "kssl", "lucas_esdb"),
  paths = NULL,
  max_n_per_dataset = NULL,
  engine = c("soilkey", "aqp", "both"),
  harmonize = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

<code>systems</code>	Character vector. Any subset of <code>c("wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda")</code> . Default "all" runs all three.
<code>datasets</code>	Character vector. Any subset of <code>c("bdsolos", "febr", "kssl", "lucas_esdb")</code> . Default "all" pools every dataset that has reference labels for the requested systems. Datasets without reference labels for a system are silently excluded from that system's pooled result.
<code>paths</code>	Named list of dataset paths. Element names should match those in <code>datasets</code> . If NULL (default), <code>soilKey</code> looks for canonical paths under <code>"~/soil_data/"</code> .
<code>max_n_per_dataset</code>	Optional integer to cap per-dataset sample size (useful for development / debugging). NULL (default) classifies every available pedon.
<code>engine</code>	Currently forwarded to Phase-1 <code>aqp</code> wiring. One of "soilkey" (default), "aqp", "both". When "aqp", sets <code>options(soilKey.diagnostic_engine = "aqp")</code> for the duration of the benchmark, which routes <code>argic()</code> / <code>cambic()</code> through the canonical <code>aqp::getArgillicBounds</code> / <code>getCambicBounds</code> .
<code>harmonize</code>	If TRUE (default FALSE), applies <code>harmonize_to_gsm</code> to each dataset's pedons before classification, putting all chemistry/texture on the GSM depth grid (0-5 / 5-15 / 15-30 / 30-60 / 60-100 / 100-200 cm). Required for cross-dataset pooling integrity (Phase 2.3) but slow (~1-2 min for 1k pedons) and may degrade per-dataset accuracy slightly because the splined depths are approximations.
<code>verbose</code>	If TRUE (default), emits cli progress.

Value

A list with elements:

- `per_system` – per-system pooled list(`accuracy`, `n_compared`, `n_correct`, `confusion`, `per_class`).
- `per_system_per_dataset` – per-(system, dataset) same shape, for breakdown.
- `coverage` – per-(system, dataset) sample sizes and label coverage.
- `config` – captures systems, datasets, engine, `soilKey_version`, `timestamp`.

Datasets and their reference labels

Dataset	Systems with reference labels
BDsolos	SiBCS (dense), WRB (sparse), USDA (sparse)
FEBR superconjunto	SiBCS, WRB, USDA (most rows have all 3)
KSSL+NASIS	USDA only (<code>samp_taxsubgrp</code> universal)
LUCAS + ESDB raster	WRB (via <code>lookup_esdb</code> on coords)

For each (system, dataset) pair, this function:

1. Loads pedons via the appropriate `load_*` helper.
2. Filters to pedons with a populated reference label for the requested system.
3. Normalises both reference and predicted labels via `normalise_febr_*`(`)` / KSSL canonicalisation helpers.
4. Calls the system's classifier and records pred-vs-ref.

Then pools per-system results across datasets.

Engine selection (Phase 1 wiring)

For datasets with morphological data (BDsolos / FEBR), the diagnostics that pivot Argissolos / Latossolos / Cambissolos classification can be run with two engines:

- `engine = "soilkey"` (default) – the hand-coded WRB 6/1.4/20 thresholds.
- `engine = "aqp"` – `aqp::getArgillicBounds` / `getCambicBounds` (KST 13ed 3/1.2/8 thresholds).

On the v0.9.62 RJ benchmark (722 perfis), `aqp` was 14.8 pp stricter on `argic` and 40.6 pp more permissive on `cambic`; the SiBCS Argissolos / Latossolos / Cambissolos boundary is sensitive to both. `engine` is currently forwarded to a future v0.9.63 wired `argic()` / `cambic()`; for now, `benchmark_unified()` reports separately per engine when `engine = "both"`.

See Also

[benchmark_bdsolos](#), [benchmark_lucas_2018](#), [benchmark_run_classification](#), [harmonize_to_gsm](#).

benchmark_wrb_vs_usda *Benchmark soilKey WRB predictions against a USDA-derived ground truth*

Description

Convenience wrapper: applies [annotate_wrb_from_usda](#) to attach derived WRB labels, runs [classify_wrb2022](#) on each pedon, and returns top-1 accuracy + per-RSG recall.

Usage

```
benchmark_wrb_vs_usda(pedons, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

pedons	List of PedonRecord objects with <code>site\$reference_usda</code> populated (typically from load_kssl_pedons_gpkg).
verbose	Print progress.

Value

A list with accuracy, n_compared, confusion, per_class_recall.

calcaric_material *Calcaric material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.3): $\geq 2\%$ CaCO₃ throughout the fine earth, primary carbonates from the parent material.*

Description

Calcaric material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.3): $\geq 2\%$ CaCO₃ throughout the fine earth, primary carbonates from the parent material.

Usage

```
calcaric_material(pedon, min_caco3_pct = 2)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_caco3_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

calcic	<i>Calcic horizon (WRB 2022)</i>
--------	----------------------------------

Description

Tests whether any horizon meets the calcic horizon criteria. The calcic horizon is a horizon of secondary carbonate accumulation, diagnostic for Calcisols and qualifying many other RSGs.

Usage

```
calcic(pedon, min_thickness = 15, min_caco3_pct = 15)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Minimum thickness in cm (default 15).
min_caco3_pct	Minimum CaCO ₃ percent in fine earth (default 15).

Details

Sub-tests called:

- [test_caco3_concentration](#) – CaCO₃ \geq 15%.
- [test_minimum_thickness](#) – thickness \geq 15 cm.

v0.2 limitations: the WRB criterion of "5% absolute or relative more CaCO₃ than the underlying horizon" is not enforced; this captures true calcic horizons but may also mark uniformly carbonate-rich substrates that are not pedologically calcic. Cementation (petrocalcic) is not yet detected. Both refinements are scheduled for v0.3.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022). *World Reference Base for Soil Resources*, 4th edition. International Union of Soil Sciences, Vienna. Chapter 3 – Calcic horizon.

calcic_horizon_usda *Calcic horizon (USDA, delegates to WRB calcic).*

Description

Calcic horizon (USDA, delegates to WRB calcic).

Usage

```
calcic_horizon_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

calcic_subgroup_usda *Calcic Subgroup helper – delegates to calcic_horizon_usda within max_top_cm.*

Description

Calcic Subgroup helper – delegates to calcic_horizon_usda within max_top_cm.

Usage

```
calcic_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

cambic *Cambic horizon (WRB 2022)*

Description

Tests whether any horizon meets the cambic horizon criteria. The cambic horizon is a subsurface horizon with evidence of pedological alteration that does not meet the criteria for any stronger diagnostic horizon. It is the diagnostic of Cambisols.

Usage

```
cambic(pedon, min_thickness = 15, min_top_cm = 5, engine = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Minimum thickness in cm (default 15).
min_top_cm	Minimum top depth (cm) for a horizon to be considered cambic-eligible (default 5). Anchors the candidate set to subsurface layers.
engine	v0.9.63+. One of "soilkey" (hand-coded path, default for back-compat) or "aqp" (canonical NRCS dispatch via <code>aqp::getCambicBounds</code>). When NULL (the new default) the function reads <code>getOption("soilKey.diagnostic_engine", "soilkey")</code> , so a <code>globalOptions(soilKey.diagnostic_engine = "aqp")</code> flips every <code>cambic()</code> call without modifying call sites. The aqp engine fired 40.6 soilkey 0 v0.9.50 LUCAS WRB benchmark from 0 100 cambic_aqp .

Details

v0.2 implementation tests three conditions:

- thickness \geq 15 cm ([test_minimum_thickness](#))
- texture sandy loam or finer ([test_texture_argic](#))
- NOT [argic](#) AND NOT [ferralic](#)

v0.2 limitations: WRB 2022 also excludes profiles with spodic, calcic, gypsic, plinthic, vertic, and several other diagnostic horizons. Those exclusions, plus the WRB criteria of "evidence of alteration" (color/structure differences from parent material, carbonate removal), are scheduled for v0.3.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3, Cambic horizon.

cambic_aqp	<i>Cambic horizon via aqp::getCambicBounds()</i>
------------	--------------------------------------------------

Description

Wraps `aqp::getCambicBounds()` in soilKey's [DiagnosticResult](#) contract. The aqp test enforces the KST 13ed cambic criteria:

- Texture finer than loamy fine sand (i.e. NOT in the sandy-texture pattern).
- Soil structure or absence of rock structure.
- Evidence of pedogenic alteration (chroma / value / clay).
- NOT meeting argic / oxic / spodic / mollic criteria.

soilKey's [cambic](#) (and the SiBCS proxy [B_incipiente](#)) implements similar logic but with SiBCS / WRB-flavoured exclusions; the aqp engine here is an independent canonical reference.

Usage

```
cambic_aqp(pedon, argi_bounds = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
argi_bounds	Optional c(ubound, lbound) for argillic bounds (forwarded to aqp). NULL (default) means the aqp internals re-detect.
...	Reserved for future arguments.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#) with name = "cambic_aqp".

See Also

[cambic](#) (soilKey hand-coded), `aqp::getCambicBounds`.

cambissolo	<i>Cambissolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 113; conceito Cap 3, p 88-89)</i>
------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Horizonte B incipiente imediatamente abaixo de A ou histico < 40 cm, com plintita/petroplintita (se presente) que NAO satisfaca aos requisitos para Plintossolos.

Usage

cambissolo(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

cambissolo_fluvico	<i>Cambissolos Fluvicos (Cap 6): carater fluvico.</i>
--------------------	-------------------------------------------------------

Description

Cambissolos Fluvicos (Cap 6): carater fluvico.

Usage

cambissolo_fluvico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

cambissolo_haplico	<i>Cambissolos Haplicos (catch-all).</i>
--------------------	------------------------------------------

Description

Cambissolos Haplicos (catch-all).

Usage

cambissolo_haplico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

cambissolo_histico	<i>Cambissolos Histicos (Cap 6): horizonte histico sem espessura para Organossolo.</i>
--------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Cambissolos Histicos (Cap 6): horizonte histico sem espessura para Organossolo.

Usage

```
cambissolo_histico(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

cambissolo_humico	<i>Cambissolos Humicos (Cap 6): horizonte A humico.</i>
-------------------	---------------------------------------------------------

Description

Cambissolos Humicos (Cap 6): horizonte A humico.

Usage

```
cambissolo_humico(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

canonical_reference	<i>Load a canonical reference dataset from soilKey or SoilTaxonomy</i>
---------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Resolution order:

1. If the SoilTaxonomy package is installed AND the prefer_pkg argument is TRUE (default), load the dataset from the installed package (always fresh).
2. Otherwise, load from the vendored copy at inst/extdata/canonical/<name>.rda.

Usage

```
canonical_reference(
  name = c("WRB_4th_2022", "ST_criteria_13th", "ST_features"),
  prefer_pkg = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

name	One of "WRB_4th_2022", "ST_criteria_13th", "ST_features".
prefer_pkg	If TRUE (default), prefer the installed SoilTaxonomy package over the vendored copy. Set to FALSE to force the vendored copy (e.g. for reproducibility of a specific soilKey release).

Value

The dataset as the original R object (list or data.frame).

See Also

[wrb2022_canonical](#), [kst13_canonical](#), [st_features_canonical](#).

canonicalise_kst13ed_gg

Canonicalise a USDA Great Group label to a KST 13ed-compatible key

Description

Maps both obsolete (pre-KST 13ed) and modern Great Group names to a single canonical key, so that direct equality between predicted and reference Great Group names ignores edition-driven renaming. Names that have no known mapping pass through unchanged.

Usage

```
canonicalise_kst13ed_gg(gg)
```

Arguments

gg	Character vector of Great Group names (lower case, no whitespace).
----	--------------------------------------------------------------------

Details

Examples of the canonicalisation (each pair is rendered equivalent):

- "haplaquolls" (KST 8) === "endoaquolls" (KST 13ed)
- "pellusterts" (KST 8) === "hapluderts" (KST 13ed)
- "camborthids" (KST 8) === "haplocambids" (KST 13ed)
- "vitrandepts" (KST 8) === "vitrudands" (KST 13ed)

Value

Character vector of canonical keys. Unmapped names pass through. NA stays NA. Empty input returns empty vector.

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), Keys to Soil Taxonomy 13ed, Ch 4 (Order keys); previous editions for the obsolete names.

carater_acrico	<i>Carater acrico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 31)</i>
----------------	-------------------------------------------

Description

Indica solos com balanca de cargas predominante eletropositiva ou eletricamente neutra. Discrimina Latossolos Acricos / Acriferricos no 3o nivel (Cap 10).

Usage

```
carater_acrico(pedon, max_ecec_clay = 1.5, min_delta_ph = 0)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_ecec_clay	Limite superior de CECef/argila em cmolc/kg argila (default 1.5).
min_delta_ph	Limite inferior de ΔpH (default 0).

Details

Critérios canonicos (todos verificados em horizontes B):

1. $\Delta pH = pH(KCl) - pH(H_2O) \geq 0$
2. CECef por kg de argila ≤ 1.5 cmolc/kg argila

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#); passed = TRUE se pelo menos um horizonte B satisfaz ambos os critérios.

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p 31; Cap 10 (Latosolos), pp 173-176.

carater_alitico *Carater alitico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 32)*

Description

Cr terios can nicos: Al(extr) ≥ 4 cmolc/kg solo, saturacao por aluminio $[100 * Al / (S + Al)] \geq 50\%$, e saturacao por bases $V < 50\%$. Avaliado no horizonte B (ou C, na ausencia de B).

Usage

```
carater_alitico(pedon, min_al = 4, min_al_sat = 50, max_v = 50)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_al	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_al_sat	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_v	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

carater_arenico *Carater arenico (SiBCS Cap 5)*

Description

Solos com textura arenosa (clay% $<$ max_clay_pct, default 15%) desde a superficie ate uma profundidade entre min_depth_cm e max_depth_cm (default 50-100 cm). Discrimina os Subgrupos arenicos de Argissolos (Cap 5: PAC, PA, PV, PVA) e Neossolos (Cap 12).

Usage

```
carater_arenico(
  pedon,
  max_clay_pct = 15,
  min_depth_cm = 50,
  max_depth_cm = 100
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_clay_pct	Limite superior de % argila para "arenoso" (default 15 = areia / areia franca).
min_depth_cm	Profundidade minima do boundary (default 50).
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima do boundary (default 100).

Details

Implementacao: ordena horizontes por top_cm, identifica o PRIMEIRO horizonte com clay_pct >= max_clay_pct, e verifica que (a) todos os horizontes acima desse boundary sao arenosos (sem camada argilosa intercalada acima) e (b) o boundary (top_cm) cai no intervalo [min_depth_cm, max_depth_cm].

Para "espessarenicos" (boundary 100-200 cm), use carater_espessarenico (planejado v0.7.4.B.3).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5 (Argissolos), pp 120-138.

carater_argiluvico *Carater argiluvico (SiBCS Cap 1; Cap 6)*

Description

Solos com B textural ([B_textural](#)) em posicao NAO diagnostica para Argissolos, dentro de max_depth_cm. Discrimina os Subgrupos argissolicos de Cambissolos (Cap 6 CX 4.7.8, 4.10.5).

Usage

```
carater_argiluvico(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_depth_cm	Default 150 cm.

Details

Implementacao v0.7.5: requer [B_textural](#) passa em alguma camada com top_cm < max_depth_cm. Distingue-se de Argissolo pleno por contexto: chamado dentro de Cambissolos onde B incipiente ([B_incipiente](#)) ja definiu a ordem como Cambissolo.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1; Cap 6, p 153.

carater_cambissolico *Carater cambissolico (SiBCS Cap 14)*

Description

Solos com B incipiente ([B_incipiente](#)) abaixo do horizonte hístico (H/O) ou A. Discrimina os Subgrupos cambissolicos de Organossolos Folicos (Cap 14, pp 247-248): Folicos Fibricos / Hemicos / Sapricos cambissolicos.

Usage

carater_cambissolico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementado como uma interseccao de duas condicoes:

1. [B_incipiente](#) passa em ao menos um horizonte
2. Esse horizonte B incipiente esta abaixo de um horizonte H/O (hístico) ou A

Em pedons sem H/O ou A acima do B incipiente, o teste falha (B incipiente isolado nao caracteriza Organossolo Cambissolico).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 14, pp 247-248.

carater_cambissolico_arg
Carater cambissolico (Argissolos – Cap 5)

Description

Solos com 4% ou mais de minerais alteraveis visiveis E/OU 5% ou mais de fragmentos de rocha ([coarse_fragments_pct](#)) no horizonte B (exclusive BC ou B/C), dentro de [max_depth_cm](#). Discrimina os Subgrupos cambissolicos de Argissolos PA (Cap 5, p 126) – DISTINTO do [carater_cambissolico](#) (Cap 14 Organossolos Folicos: B incipiente abaixo de hístico/A).

Usage

```
carater_cambissolico_arg(pedon, min_coarse_pct = 5, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 min_coarse_pct Default 5% volume.
 max_depth_cm Default 150 cm.

Details

Implementacao v0.7.4 (aproximacao): apenas coarse_fragments_pct \geq min_coarse_pct (default 5) eh testado. O criterio "minerais alteraveis visiveis" exigiria campo adicional no schema (e.g. weatherable_minerals_pct) que sera adicionado em release futura. Documentado como limitacao conhecida.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5, p 126.

carater_carbonatico *Carater carbonatico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 33)*

Description

\geq 150 g/kg (15%) de CaCO₃ equivalente em qualquer forma de segregacao (incl. nodulos, concrecoes). Excludente: nao satisfaz aos requisitos de horizonte calcico.

Usage

```
carater_carbonatico(pedon, min_caco3_pct = 15, max_depth_cm = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 min_caco3_pct Limite de CaCO₃ (default 15%).
 max_depth_cm Profundidade maxima (top_cm) em que camadas qualificam (default NULL = sem restricao). SiBCS Cap 14 Subgrupos usam max_depth_cm = 150.

carater_chernossolico *Carater chernossolico (SiBCS Cap 5; A chernozemico + Ta alta)*

Description

Solos com horizonte A chernozemico ([horizonte_A_chernozemico](#)) E atividade da argila \geq min_ta (default 20 cmolc/kg argila) na maior parte dos primeiros 100 cm do B (inclusive BA). Discrimina os Subgrupos chernossolicos de Argissolos (Cap 5: PV, PVA).

Usage

```
carater_chernossolico(pedon, min_ta = 20)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_ta	Threshold de atividade da argila (default 20).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5, p 134; Cap 7 (Chernossolos).

carater_coeso *Carater coeso (SiBCS Cap 1, pp 32-33)*

Description

Solos com horizontes coesos: muito duros a extremamente duros quando secos, friaveis a firmes quando umidos, decorrentes do empacotamento das particulas e/ou cimentacao. Discrimina os Grandes Grupos Distrocoesos / Eutrocoesos de Argissolos (Cap 5, pp 117-119) e Latossolos (Cap 10).

Usage

```
carater_coeso(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima onde camadas qualificam (default 150, conforme SiBCS Cap 5: "dentro de 150 cm a partir da superficie").

Details

Critérios canonicos:

- rupture_resistance \in {"very hard", "extremely hard"} (em estado seco)
- consistence_moist \in {"friable", "firm"} (em estado umido)
- Excluído: textura areia / areia franca (clay_pct < 15%)

Value

DiagnosticResult; passed = TRUE se ao menos uma camada (com textura suficiente) atende aos dois critérios de consistencia.

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, pp 32-33; Cap 5 (Argissolos), pp 117-119.

carater_durico	<i>Carater durico (SiBCS Cap 1)</i>
----------------	-------------------------------------

Description

Solos com endurecimento por cimentacao parcial de silica (SiO₂), insuficiente para qualificar como horizonte durico ([duripa](#)) completo. Detectado quando:

Usage

```
carater_durico(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima onde camadas qualificam (default 150, conforme SiBCS Cap 5: "dentro de 150 cm").

Details

- duripan_pct > 0 (presenca de noduros / concrecoes de silica), OR
- cementation_class \in {"weakly", "moderately"} (cimentacao fraca a moderada, NAO indurada/strongly).

Discrimina os Subgrupos duricos / abrupticos duricos de Argissolos Acinzentados (Cap 5 PAC) e Latossolos com caracter durico (Cap 10).

Value

DiagnosticResult.

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1; Cap 5 (Argissolos Acinzentados Distrocoesos abrupticos duricos), p 120.

carater_ebanico *Carater ebanico (SiBCS Cap 1; Cap 7 e Cap 17)*

Description

Cor preta uniforme (value ≤ 3 e chroma ≤ 2 em umido) em TODO o horizonte B + atividade da argila alta (Ta) + saturacao por bases V% ≥ 65 . Discrimina Chernossolos Ebanicos (Cap 7) e Vertissolos Ebanicos (Cap 17) no 2o nivel.

Usage

carater_ebanico(pedon, max_value = 3, max_chroma = 2, min_v = 65)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_value	Limite superior de Munsell value em umido (default 3).
max_chroma	Limite superior de chroma em umido (default 2).
min_v	Limite inferior de V% (default 65).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1; Cap 7 (Chernossolos), pp 144-148; Cap 17 (Vertissolos), pp 271-274.

carater_espessarenico *Carater espessarenico (SiBCS Cap 5)*

Description

Textura arenosa (clay% < max_clay_pct) da superficie ate boundary em [100, 200] cm. Variante "espessa" do [carater_arenico](#).

Usage

```
carater_espessarenico(
  pedon,
  max_clay_pct = 15,
  min_depth_cm = 100,
  max_depth_cm = 200
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_clay_pct	Limite superior de % argila (default 15).
min_depth_cm	Profundidade minima do boundary (default 100).
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima do boundary (default 200).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5, pp 130-131.

carater_espodico	<i>Carater espodico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 35; Cap 8)</i>
------------------	----------------------------------------------------

Description

Evidencia iluvial de Al / Fe / materia organica em camada de pelo menos 2,5 cm de espessura, em quantidade insuficiente para qualificar como horizonte B espodico ([B_espodico](#)), mas suficiente para indicar espodicidade incipiente. Usado em Cambissolos / Argissolos / Plintossolos espodicos (Caps 5, 6 e 16) e em Espodossolos rasos (Cap 8).

Usage

```
carater_espodico(pedon, min_thickness = 2.5, min_oc_pct = 0.5)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Espessura minima da camada espodica incipiente em cm (default 2,5).
min_oc_pct	OC% minimo em camada candidata (default 0,5).

Details

Diferença para **B_espodico**: thickness \geq 2,5 cm em vez de exigir o gate completo de espessura espodica; OC \geq 0,5% em vez do gate de iluviação quantitativa; sinais de iluviação Fe/Al (al_ox_pct ou fe_ox_pct ou fe_dcb_pct).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p 35; Cap 8 (Espodossolos), pp 156-160.

carater_espodico_profundo

Carater B espodico profundo (SiBCS Cap 8)

Description

Solos com horizonte B espodico cujo top_cm esta entre min_top_cm (default 200) e max_top_cm (default 400). Discrimina os Grandes Grupos Hiperespessos / Hidro-hiperespessos de Espodossolos (Cap 8 1.1, 1.3, 2.1, 2.3, 3.1, 3.3).

Usage

```
carater_espodico_profundo(pedon, min_top_cm = 200, max_top_cm = 400)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_top_cm	Default 200.
max_top_cm	Default 400.

Details

Implementação: chama [carater_espodico](#) e filtra por top_cm no intervalo [min_top_cm, max_top_cm].

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 8, pp 165-168.

carater_eutrico	<i>Carater eutrico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 35)</i>
-----------------	--------------------------------------------

Description

Distinto de "eutrofico": exige $\text{pH}(\text{H}_2\text{O}) \geq 5.7$ conjugado com S (soma de bases) ≥ 2.0 cmolc/kg solo dentro da secao de controle.

Usage

```
carater_eutrico(pedon, min_pH = 5.7, min_s = 2)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_pH	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_s	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

carater_ferrico	<i>Carater ferrico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 35; Cap 5 e Cap 10)</i>
-----------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Teor de Fe_2O_3 (pelo ataque sulfurico-NaOH) entre 180 e 360 g/kg de solo (= 18%-36% mass) na maior parte dos primeiros 100 cm do horizonte B. Acima de 360 g/kg = "perferrico" (nao implementado aqui). Discrimina os Grandes Grupos Eutroferricos / Distroferricos / Aluminoferricos de Latossolos (Cap 10), Argissolos (Cap 5 Eutroferricos) e Cambissolos (Cap 6 Aluminoferricos).

Usage

```
carater_ferrico(
  pedon,
  min_fe2o3_pct = 18,
  max_fe2o3_pct = 36,
  max_depth_cm = 100
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_fe2o3_pct	Limite inferior de Fe_2O_3 sulfurico em % mass (default 18 = 180 g/kg).
max_fe2o3_pct	Limite superior (exclusivo) em % mass (default 36 = 360 g/kg).
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima de B avaliado (default 100).

Details

Implementacao v0.7.4: testa se *algum* horizonte B dentro de max_depth_cm atende ao intervalo. SiBCS estrito ("na maior parte de") seria uma media ponderada por espessura – refinamento planejado para v0.7.5.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p 35; Cap 5 (Argissolos Eutrofericos, p 118); Cap 10 (Latosolos).

carater_fluvico	<i>Carater fluvico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 35-36): camadas estratificadas + distribuicao irregular de C organico. Reuso de fluvic_material (WRB).</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Carater fluvico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 35-36): camadas estratificadas + distribuicao irregular de C organico. Reuso de fluvic_material (WRB).

Usage

carater_fluvico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

carater_gleissolico	<i>Carater gleissolico (SiBCS Cap 5; horizonte_glei em posicao nao-Gleissolo)</i>
---------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Solos com horizonte glei ([horizonte_glei](#)) em posicao nao diagnostica para Gleissolos (i.e., dentro de max_depth_cm mas NAO satisfazendo os requisitos completos de Gleissolo). Discrimina os Subgrupos gleissolicos de Argissolos (Cap 5 PA), Cambissolos (Cap 6) e outros.

Usage

carater_gleissolico(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_depth_cm Profundidade maxima onde camadas qualificam (default 150).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5, p 126; Cap 9 (Gleissolos).

carater_hidromorfico *Carater hidromorfico (SiBCS Cap 8)*

Description

Solos saturados com agua em camada(s) dentro de max_depth_cm (default 100 cm), evidenciado por horizonte glei ([horizonte_glei](#)) OU caracter redoxico ([carater_redoxico](#)) OU horizonte Eg na designation OU acumulacao de Mn em horizonte E ou B espodico. Discrimina os Grandes Grupos Hidromorficos / Hidro-hiperespessos de Espodossolos (Cap 8 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2, 3.1, 3.2).

Usage

```
carater_hidromorfico(pedon, max_depth_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_depth_cm Default 100 cm.

Details

Implementacao v0.7.5 (aproximacao):

- [horizonte_glei](#) dentro de max_depth_cm, OR
- [carater_redoxico](#) ate max_depth_cm, OR
- designation pattern Eg dentro de max_depth_cm.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 8, pp 165-168.

carater_hipocarbonatico

Carater hipocarbonatico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 33): CaCO₃ entre 50 e 150 g/kg.

Description

Carater hipocarbonatico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 33): CaCO₃ entre 50 e 150 g/kg.

Usage

carater_hipocarbonatico(pedon, max_depth_cm = NULL)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima em que camadas qualificam (default NULL = sem restricao). SiBCS Cap 14 Subgrupos de Organossolos Haplicos Sapricos usam max_depth_cm = 150.

carater_humico_espesso

Carater espesso-humico (SiBCS Cap 5, p 119)

Description

Solos com horizonte A humico e conteudo de carbono \geq min_oc_pct (default 1% = 10 g/kg) extendendo-se ate min_depth_cm (default 80 cm) ou mais de profundidade. Discrimina os Subgrupos "espesso-humicos" de Argissolos Bruno-Acinzentados Ta Aluminicos (Cap 5 PBAC 1.1.2) – camadas humosas espessas tipicas de Argissolos do RS.

Usage

carater_humico_espesso(pedon, min_oc_pct = 1, min_depth_cm = 80)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_oc_pct	Limite inferior de OC% nas camadas inferiores (default 1.0 = 10 g/kg).
min_depth_cm	Profundidade minima de extensao do C alto (default 80 cm).

Details

Implementacao: requer (1) [horizonte_A_humico](#) passa AND (2) ha camada com oc_pct \geq min_oc_pct cuja bottom_cm \geq min_depth_cm.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5 (Argissolos), p 119.

carater_latossolico *Carater latossolico (SiBCS Cap 5)*

Description

Solos com horizonte B latossolico ([B_latossolico](#)) abaixo do horizonte B textural ([B_textural](#)), dentro de `max_depth_cm` (default 150 cm). Discrimina os Subgrupos latossolicos de Argissolos (Cap 5: PAC, PA, PV, PVA) – transicao entre Argissolo e Latossolo dentro do mesmo perfil.

Usage

```
carater_latossolico(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

`pedon` A [PedonRecord](#).
`max_depth_cm` Profundidade maxima do B latossolico (default 150).

Details

Implementacao: requer (1) `B_textural()` passa, (2) `B_latossolico()` passa, e (3) ao menos uma camada com B latossolico tem `top_cm` maior que o `top_cm` maximo das camadas com B textural (i.e., latossolico ocorre abaixo).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5 (Argissolos), pp 121-138.

carater_leptico	<i>Carater leptico (SiBCS Cap 5; contato litico em 50-100 cm)</i>
-----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Solos com contato litico ([contato_litico](#)) a profundidade entre 50 e 100 cm. Discrimina os Subgrupos lepticos de Argissolos (Cap 5: PA, PV, PVA).

Usage

```
carater_leptico(pedon, min_depth_cm = 50, max_depth_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_depth_cm	Default 50.
max_depth_cm	Default 100.

Details

Implementacao: chama [contato_litico](#)(pedon) sem bound, depois filtra layers para top em [min_depth_cm, max_depth_cm].

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5, pp 127, 132.

carater_leptofragmentario	<i>Carater leptofragmentario (SiBCS Cap 5; Cr / fragmentary 50-100 cm)</i>
---------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Solos com contato litico fragmentario (Cr / Crf) a profundidade entre 50 e 100 cm. Discrimina os Subgrupos leptofragmentarios de Argissolos (Cap 5: PA, PV, PVA).

Usage

```
carater_leptofragmentario(pedon, min_depth_cm = 50, max_depth_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_depth_cm	Default 50.
max_depth_cm	Default 100.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5, pp 127, 132.

carater_luissolico *Carater luissolico (SiBCS Cap 5; Ta + S alta)*

Description

Solos com atividade da argila \geq min_ta (default 20 cmolc/kg argila) E soma de bases (S) \geq min_s (default 5 cmolc/kg solo), ambos na maior parte dos primeiros 100 cm do horizonte B. Discrimina os Subgrupos luissolicos de Argissolos (Cap 5: PV, PVA).

Usage

```
carater_luissolico(pedon, min_ta = 20, min_s = 5, max_depth_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_ta	Threshold de atividade da argila em cmolc/kg argila (default 20).
min_s	Threshold de S em cmolc/kg solo (default 5).
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima de B avaliado (default 100).

Details

Note: o threshold de Ta para "luissolico" e 20 (vs 27 para atividade_argila_alta canonico). S = Ca + Mg + K + Na trocaveis.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5, p 134; Cap 11 (Luissolos).

carater_nitossolico *Carater nitossolico (SiBCS Cap 5)*

Description

Solos com morfologia (estrutura e cerosidade) semelhante aos Nitossolos, mas diferindo por apresentar relacao textural $B/A > 1,5$ OU policromia (multiplas matizes Munsell em horizontes B) dentro de max_depth_cm cm. Discrimina os Subgrupos nitossolicos de Argissolos (Cap 5: PV, PVA).

Usage

```
carater_nitossolico(pedon, max_b_a_ratio = 1.5, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_b_a_ratio	Razao maxima B/A para Nitossolos (default 1.5); Argissolos nitossolicos tem ratio > 1.5.
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima do B avaliado (default 150).

Details

Implementacao v0.7.4 (aproximacao):

- [cerosidade](#) \geq comum + moderada, AND
- Razao textural $B/A > \text{max_b_a_ratio}$ (default 1.5), OR policromia (≥ 2 matizes distintos em B).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5, pp 129-131; Cap 13.

carater_palico *Carater palico (SiBCS Cap 11)*

Description

Solos com espessura do solum (A + B, inclusive E e exclusive BC) maior que min_solum_cm (default 80). Discrimina os Grandes Grupos Palicos de Luvisolos (Cap 11 TCp, TXp) – "desenvolvimento excessivo" (do latim "pale").

Usage

```
carater_palico(pedon, min_solum_cm = 80)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_solum_cm Default 80.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 11, p 214.

carater_perferrico *Carater perferrico (SiBCS Cap 1; Cap 6 CX Perferricos)*

Description

Teor de Fe₂O₃ (pelo ataque sulfurico-NaOH) \geq 360 g/kg de solo (= 36%) na maior parte dos primeiros 100 cm do horizonte B. Discrimina os Grandes Grupos Perferricos (acima do range "ferrico" 180-360 g/kg). Cap 6 CX 4.3 e Cap 10 (Latosolos Perferricos).

Usage

```
carater_perferrico(pedon, min_fe2o3_pct = 36, max_depth_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_fe2o3_pct Limite inferior em % mass (default 36 = 360 g/kg).
max_depth_cm Profundidade maxima de B avaliado (default 100).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1; Cap 6, p 142; Cap 10 (Latossolos Perferricos).

carater_petroplintico *Carater petroplintico (SiBCS Cap 5)*

Description

Caracteres concrecionario e/ou litoplintico ou horizontes concrecionario / litoplintico em posicao NAO diagnostica para Plintossolos Petricos, dentro de max_depth_cm (default 150). Discrimina os Subgrupos petroplinticos de Argissolos (Cap 5: PA, PVA, PV).

Usage

```
carater_petroplintico(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_depth_cm Default 150 cm.

Details

Implementacao: passa se [horizonte_concrecionario](#) OU [horizonte_litoplintico](#) retornarem TRUE em ao menos uma camada com top < max_depth_cm.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5; Cap 16 (Plintossolos).

carater_placico	<i>Carater placico (SiBCS Cap 5; horizonte placico cementado por Fe/Mn)</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Camada cimentada por Fe/Mn (geralmente fina, 1-25 mm), detectada via `cementation_class` em `in%{"strongly", "indurated"}` dentro de `max_depth_cm`. Discrimina os Subgrupos placicos de Argissolos PA (Cap 5).

Usage

```
carater_placico(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

<code>pedon</code>	A PedonRecord .
<code>max_depth_cm</code>	Default 150 cm.

Details

Implementacao v0.7.4 (aproximacao): `cementation_class` forte ou indurada. SiBCS estrito requereria espessura minima e composicao Fe/Mn confirmada. Refinamento planejado para v0.8.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5, p 125.

carater_planossolico	<i>Carater planossolico (SiBCS Cap 5)</i>
----------------------	-------------------------------------------

Description

Caracter planico em posicao NAO diagnostica para Planossolos. Discrimina os Subgrupos planossolicos de Argissolos (Cap 5: PA, PVA, PV).

Usage

```
carater_planossolico(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_depth_cm Profundidade maxima (default 150).

Details

Implementacao v0.7.4: aproxima como [B_planico](#) OR ([mudanca_textural_abrupta](#) AND [carater_sodico](#)).
SiBCS Cap 1 estritamente define caracter planico via mudanca textural abrupta + horizonte/caracter sodico em B + cores neutras.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5; Cap 1, p 36; Cap 15 (Planossolos).

carater_plintico	<i>Carater plintico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 36): plintita >= 5% em quantidade insuficiente para horizonte plintico.</i>
------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Carater plintico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 36): plintita >= 5% em quantidade insuficiente para horizonte plintico.

Usage

```
carater_plintico(pedon, min_plinthite_pct = 5, max_plinthite_pct = 15)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_plinthite_pct
 Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_plinthite_pct
 Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

carater_psamitico	<i>Carater psamitico (SiBCS Cap 10)</i>
-------------------	-----------------------------------------

Description

Solos com conteudo de argila inferior a `max_clay_pct` (default 20% = 200 g/kg) na maior parte dos primeiros `max_depth_cm` (default 150 cm) a partir da superficie do solo. Discrimina os Subgrupos psamiticos de Latossolos Amarelos Distroficos (Cap 10 LA 2.6.1).

Usage

```
carater_psamitico(pedon, max_clay_pct = 20, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

<code>pedon</code>	A PedonRecord .
<code>max_clay_pct</code>	Default 20% = 200 g/kg.
<code>max_depth_cm</code>	Default 150 cm.

Details

Implementacao: testa se a media ponderada por espessura de `clay_pct` dentro de `[0, max_depth_cm]` esta abaixo de `max_clay_pct`.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 10 LA, p 203.

carater_redoxico	<i>Carater redoxico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 36-37): feicoes redoximorficas em quantidade pelo menos comum, dentro da secao de controle. epiirredoxico se dentro de 50 cm; endorredoxico se 50-150 cm.</i>
------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Carater redoxico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 36-37): feicoes redoximorficas em quantidade pelo menos comum, dentro da secao de controle. epiirredoxico se dentro de 50 cm; endorredoxico se 50-150 cm.

Usage

```
carater_redoxico(pedon, min_redox_pct = 5, max_top_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_redux_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

carater_retratil	<i>Carater retratil (SiBCS Cap 1, p 33)</i>
------------------	---------------------------------------------

Description

Solos com retracao significativa quando secos: $COLE \geq 0,06$ sobre a secao de controle, OU presenca de slickensides + fendas (cracks) suficientemente desenvolvidas. Discrimina Cambissolos retrateis (Cap 6), Vertissolos (Cap 17) e Argissolos retrateis (Cap 5).

Usage

```
carater_retratil(pedon, min_cole = 0.06, min_crack_width = 1)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_cole	Limite inferior de COLE (default 0,06).
min_crack_width	Largura minima de fenda em cm para o caminho slickensides+cracks (default 1).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p 33.

carater_rubrico	<i>Carater rubrico (SiBCS Cap 1; Cap 10 Latossolos Brunos)</i>
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Solos com matiz Munsell mais vermelho que 5YR (i.e., 2.5YR, 10R, 5R) E chroma ≥ 4 em alguma parte do horizonte B (inclusive BA), dentro de max_depth_cm (default 100). Discrimina os Subgrupos rubricos de Latossolos Brunos (Cap 10 LB).

Usage

```
carater_rubrico(pedon, min_chroma = 4, max_depth_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_chroma	Default 4.
max_depth_cm	Default 100.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1; Cap 10 LB, p 199-200.

carater_salico	<i>Carater salico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 38): CE ≥ 7 dS/m em alguma epoca.</i>
----------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Carater salico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 38): CE ≥ 7 dS/m em alguma epoca.

Usage

```
carater_salico(pedon, min_ec = 7, max_depth_cm = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_ec	Limite de CE em dS/m (default 7).
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima em que camadas qualificam (default NULL). SiBCS Cap 14 Subgrupos usam 150.

carater_salino *Carater salino (SiBCS Cap 1, p 39): $4 \leq CE < 7$ dS/m.*

Description

Carater salino (SiBCS Cap 1, p 39): $4 \leq CE < 7$ dS/m.

Usage

```
carater_salino(pedon, min_ec = 4, max_ec = 7, max_depth_cm = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_ec	Limite inferior de CE em dS/m (default 4).
max_ec	Limite superior (exclusivo) (default 7).
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima em que camadas qualificam (default NULL). SiBCS Cap 14 Subgrupos usam 150.

carater_saprolitico *Carater saprolitico (SiBCS Cap 5)*

Description

Solos com horizonte Cr (brando) e ausencia de contato litico ou litico fragmentario, todos dentro de max_depth_cm (default 100 cm). Discrimina os Subgrupos saproliticos de Argissolos (Cap 5: PA, PV).

Usage

```
carater_saprolitico(pedon, max_depth_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_depth_cm	Default 100.

Details

Implementacao: requer (a) designation pattern Cr/Crf (sem R continuo) em camada com top < max_depth_cm, e (b) [contato_litico](#)(pedon) retorna FALSE.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5, pp 122, 132.

carater_sodico	<i>Carater sodico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 39): saturacao por sodio (PST) >= 15%.</i>
----------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Carater sodico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 39): saturacao por sodio (PST) >= 15%.

Usage

```
carater_sodico(pedon, min_pst = 15, max_depth_cm = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_pst	PST minimo (%) (default 15).
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima em que camadas qualificam (default NULL). SiBCS Cap 14 Subgrupos usam 150.

carater_solodico	<i>Carater solodico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 39): PST entre 6% e < 15%.</i>
------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Carater solodico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 39): PST entre 6% e < 15%.

Usage

```
carater_solodico(pedon, min_pst = 6, max_pst = 15, max_depth_cm = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_pst	PST minimo (%) (default 6).
max_pst	PST maximo (%) (default 15).
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima em que camadas qualificam (default NULL). SiBCS Cap 14 Subgrupos usam 150.

carater_sombrico *Carater sombrico (SiBCS Cap 1; Cap 5 PV)*

Description

Camada subsuperficial com acumulacao iluvial de materia organica, caracterizada por cores escuras ($\text{munsell_value_moist} \leq 4$, $\text{munsell_chroma_moist} \leq 3$) e $\text{oc_pct} \geq 0.5\%$, em B abaixo de A/E. Distinto de B espodico por nao requerer iluviacao Al/Fe. Tipico de solos altitudinais (planaltos sul-brasileiros). Discrimina o Subgrupo sombricos de Argissolos Vermelhos Aluminicos (Cap 5 PV 4.2.6).

Usage

```
carater_sombrico(
  pedon,
  max_value = 4,
  max_chroma = 3,
  min_oc_pct = 0.5,
  max_depth_cm = 150
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_value	Default 4 (escuro).
max_chroma	Default 3.
min_oc_pct	Default 0.5%.
max_depth_cm	Default 150.

Details

Implementacao v0.7.4 (aproximacao):

- Camada B (designation matches ^B) com $\text{value} \leq \text{max_value}$ E $\text{chroma} \leq \text{max_chroma}$ E $\text{oc_pct} \geq \text{min_oc_pct}$, dentro de max_depth_cm .

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1; Cap 5 PV 4.2.6, p 130 (Lunardi Neto, 2012, perfil PVa).

carater_terrigo *Carater terrico (SiBCS Cap 14)*

Description

Solos com horizontes ou camadas constituídos por materiais minerais (horizonte A, Ag, Big e/ou Cg), com espessura cumulativa \geq min_thickness_cm dentro de within_depth_cm da superfície do solo. Discrimina os Subgrupos terricos de Organossolos (Cap 14, pp 245-250) e Cambissolos terricos (Cap 6).

Usage

```
carater_terrigo(pedon, min_thickness_cm = 30, within_depth_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_thickness_cm Espessura cumulativa mínima de material mineral (default 30 cm).
within_depth_cm Profundidade de busca (default 100 cm).

Details

Padroes de designacao reconhecidos para horizonte mineral:

- A, Ap, An (mineral superficial)
- Ag (mineral hidromorfico)
- Big, Bg (B mineral hidromorfico)
- Cg (C mineral hidromorfico)
- C, Cr, Crf (mineral subsuperficial)

Excluidos do somatorio: horizontes histicos (H*, O*) e horizontes cementados puros sem material mineral.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#); passed = TRUE se a soma da espessura dos horizontes minerais (truncada em within_depth_cm) for \geq min_thickness_cm.

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 14, p 246 (subgrupos terricos de Organossolos).

carater_tionico *Carater tionico (SiBCS Cap 9; Cap 1 thionic-related)*

Description

Solos com horizonte sulfurico ([horizonte_sulfurico](#)) OU materiais sulfidricos a profundidades entre `min_depth_cm` e `max_depth_cm` (default 100-150 cm). Discrimina os Subgrupos tionicos de Gleissolos (Cap 9 GZsd, GMtal, GMtd, GXte) – variante "tionico subordinado" (vs Tiomorfico, que e a subordem completa).

Usage

```
carater_tionico(pedon, min_depth_cm = 100, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

<code>pedon</code>	A PedonRecord .
<code>min_depth_cm</code>	Default 100 cm.
<code>max_depth_cm</code>	Default 150 cm.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 9, pp 180-191.

carater_vertissolico *Carater vertissolico (SiBCS Cap 6)*

Description

Solos com horizonte vertico OU caracter vertico em posicao nao diagnostica para Vertissolos, dentro de `max_depth_cm` (default 150). Discrimina os Subgrupos vertissolicos de Cambissolos Carbonaticos / Eutroficicos / Tb Eutroferricos (Cap 6 CY 3.1.3, 3.6.2, CX 4.1.5, 4.7.7, 4.11.4).

Usage

```
carater_vertissolico(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

<code>pedon</code>	A PedonRecord .
<code>max_depth_cm</code>	Default 150 cm.

Details

Implementacao: passa se [horizonte_vertico](#) retornar TRUE em ao menos uma camada com $top_cm < max_depth_cm$. SiBCS estrito requer "posicao nao diagnostica para Vertissolos" – aproximamos isso confiando no dispatcher (apenas chamamos quando ja sabemos que nao e Vertissolo).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 6, pp 146-153; Cap 17 (Vertissolos).

cerosidade	<i>Cerosidade quantitativa (SiBCS Cap 13, p 207; Cap 1)</i>
------------	-------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Diagnostico parametrizado quantidade x intensidade de cerosidade (clay films / cutans). Consume as colunas v0.7.2 `clay_films_amount` (ordinal: few/pouca, common/comum, many/abundante, continuous/continua) e `clay_films_strength` (ordinal: weak/fraca, moderate/moderada, strong/forte; "shiny" mapeado a "strong"), introduzidas em substituicao ao legado `clay_films`.

Usage

```
cerosidade(pedon, min_amount = "common", min_strength = "moderate")
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_amount	Quantidade minima: "few", "common", "many", "continuous" (ou equivalentes em PT-BR). Default "common".
min_strength	Intensidade minima: "weak", "moderate", "strong". Default "moderate". Pass NULL para ignorar a dimensao de intensidade.

Details

Discriminante critico Nitossolos vs Argissolos no Cap 13: Nitossolos exigem cerosidade \geq comum + \geq moderada (defaults).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#); passed = TRUE se ao menos um horizonte B atende ambos os limiares.

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 13 (Nitossolos), p 207; Cap 1 (atributos diagnosticos).

chernic	<i>Chernic horizon (WRB 2022): the cherozemic-style mollic with very high biological activity (worm holes, casts, coprolites). v0.3.3: delegates to mollic + worm_holes_pct >= 50 (proxy for "biological homogenization").</i>
---------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Chernic horizon (WRB 2022): the cherozemic-style mollic with very high biological activity (worm holes, casts, coprolites). v0.3.3: delegates to mollic + worm_holes_pct >= 50 (proxy for "biological homogenization").

Usage

```
chernic(pedon, min_worm_pct = 50)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_worm_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

chernossolo	<i>Chernossolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 113; conceito Cap 3, p 89-90)</i>
-------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

A chernozemico seguido de: (a) Bi OR Bt, ambos com argila ativ alta + V alta; OR (b) Bi com espessura < 10 cm OR C, ambos calcicos, petrocalcicos OR carbonaticos; OR (c) Calcico OR carater carbonatico no A, seguido de contato litico / fragmentario.

Usage

```
chernossolo(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

chernossolo_argiluvico

Chernossolos Argiluvicos (Cap 7): B textural abaixo do A chernozemico.

Description

Chernossolos Argiluvicos (Cap 7): B textural abaixo do A chernozemico.

Usage

chernossolo_argiluvico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

chernossolo_ebanico

Chernossolos Ebanicos (Cap 7): caracter ebanico em B. v0.7.1: detecta via Munsell em B - hue 7.5YR ou mais amarelo: V<4 + C<3 umido; OR hue mais vermelho 7.5YR: preto/cinza muito escuro.

Description

Chernossolos Ebanicos (Cap 7): caracter ebanico em B. v0.7.1: detecta via Munsell em B - hue 7.5YR ou mais amarelo: V<4 + C<3 umido; OR hue mais vermelho 7.5YR: preto/cinza muito escuro.

Usage

chernossolo_ebanico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

chernossolo_haplico *Chernossolos Haplicos (catch-all).*

Description

Chernossolos Haplicos (catch-all).

Usage

chernossolo_haplico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

chernossolo_rendzico *Chernossolos Rendzicos (Cap 7): A chernozemico + (calcico/etrocalcico OR carater carbonatico).*

Description

Chernossolos Rendzicos (Cap 7): A chernozemico + (calcico/etrocalcico OR carater carbonatico).

Usage

chernossolo_rendzico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

chernozem *Chernozem RSG diagnostic (WRB 2022)*

Description

Tests whether a profile satisfies the Chernozem RSG criteria: a mollic horizon plus secondary carbonates somewhere in the profile, plus chroma (moist) ≤ 2 in at least one layer of the upper 20 cm.

Usage

chernozem(pedon, max_chroma_upper = 2)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 max_chroma_upper Maximum moist chroma in the upper part (default 2, per WRB 2022).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Chernozems.

chernozem_strict	<i>Chernozem RSG gate (strengthened, WRB 2022 Ch 4, p 111)</i>
------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB-canonical: chernic horizon AND, starting ≤ 50 cm below the lower limit of the mollic horizon and (if a petrocalcic horizon is present) above it, a layer with protocalcic properties ≥ 5 cm thick OR a calcic horizon AND base saturation $\geq 50\%$ from the surface to the protocalcic / calcic layer throughout.

Usage

```
chernozem_strict(pedon, min_bs = 50, max_top_cm = 50)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 min_bs Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

Details

v0.3.4 strengthens the previous v0.2 chernozem (which only required mollic + chernic_color) by adding the protocalcic / calcic gate and the BS $\geq 50\%$ requirement.

Note: the v0.2 chernozem() diagnostic remains available as a less-strict variant; chernozem_strict() is what the v0.3.4 key.yaml uses for the CH RSG.

claric_material	<i>Claric material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.4): light-coloured fine earth with Munsell criteria.</i>
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Claric material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.4): light-coloured fine earth with Munsell criteria.

Usage

```
claric_material(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

classification_robustness	<i>Robustness of classification under input perturbation</i>
---------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------

Description

For a given [PedonRecord](#), perturb a chosen list of horizon attributes by a configured fractional amount, re-classify under the requested system, and report how often the classification \$rsg_or_order (or full \$name) matches the unperturbed baseline.

Usage

```
classification_robustness(
  pedon,
  system = c("wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda"),
  level = c("order", "name"),
  n = 50L,
  perturbations = NULL,
  seed = 42L
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
system	One of "wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda".
level	Either "order" (compare \$rsg_or_order) or "name" (compare full classification name).
n	Number of Monte-Carlo perturbed runs (default 50).

perturbations	Named list. Each name is a horizon column; each element is a function taking the original value and returning a perturbed value. NA-tolerant.
seed	Integer applied through <code>with_seed</code> so the Monte-Carlo draws are reproducible <i>without</i> mutating the caller's global RNG state. Pass NULL to leave the RNG stream untouched. Default 42L preserves the bit-for-bit-identical output earlier <code>soilKey</code> releases produced (CRAN policy: never call <code>set.seed()</code> on the caller's RNG).

Details

Default perturbation panel:

- clay_pct: ± 5
- sand_pct: ± 5
- silt_pct: ± 5
- ph_h2o: ± 0.2 absolute
- oc_pct: ± 10

Value

A list with elements `baseline` (the unperturbed classification name), `n` (number of MC runs), `robustness` (fraction of perturbed runs matching baseline), `flipped_to` (table of alternative classifications when the perturbation flipped the result).

Examples

```
p <- make_ferralsol_canonical()
classification_robustness(p, system = "wrb2022", n = 50)
#> $baseline      : "Ferralsols"
#> $robustness    : 0.96 (48 / 50 perturbed runs landed on Ferralsols)
#> $flipped_to    : table(c("Cambisols" = 1, "Acrisols" = 1))
```

ClassificationResult *ClassificationResult: structured outcome of running a key*

Description

ClassificationResult: structured outcome of running a key

ClassificationResult: structured outcome of running a key

Details

Returned by `classify_wrb2022` (and the future `classify_sibcs`). Carries the full decision trace — which RSGs were tested, which passed, which failed, which were indeterminate because of missing data — plus the assigned class, qualifiers, ambiguities (RSGs that nearly satisfied), missing data that would refine the result, the provenance-aware evidence grade, and any biogeographical or prior-based warnings.

Public fields

system Character. "WRB 2022" or "SiBCS 5".

name Character. Full classification name with qualifiers (e.g. "Rhodic Ferralsol (Clayic, Humic, Dystric)").

rsg_or_order Character. Bare RSG (WRB) or order (SiBCS), e.g. "Ferralsols".

qualifiers List. Principal and supplementary qualifiers in canonical order.

trace List. One element per RSG tested (in key order), each with code, name, passed, evidence, missing.

ambiguities List. RSGs that came close to passing — useful hints for follow-up measurements.

missing_data Character vector. Attributes whose measurement would refine or resolve the result.

evidence_grade Character. "A", "B", "C", "D", or NA_character_.

prior_check List or NULL. Result of the spatial-prior sanity check (consistent / inconsistent / not run).

warnings Character vector. Free-form warnings.

Methods**Public methods:**

- [ClassificationResult\\$new\(\)](#)
- [ClassificationResult\\$print\(\)](#)
- [ClassificationResult\\$summary\(\)](#)
- [ClassificationResult\\$report\(\)](#)
- [ClassificationResult\\$clone\(\)](#)

Method `new()`: Build a `ClassificationResult`.

Usage:

```
ClassificationResult$new(
  system,
  name,
  rsg_or_order = NA_character_,
  qualifiers = list(),
  trace = list(),
  ambiguities = list(),
  missing_data = character(0),
  evidence_grade = NA_character_,
  prior_check = NULL,
  warnings = character(0)
)
```

Arguments:

system System name.

name Classification name.

rsg_or_order RSG (WRB) or order (SiBCS).

qualifiers List of qualifier names.

trace List of per-RSG test entries.
 ambiguities List of close-call RSGs.
 missing_data Character vector.
 evidence_grade Single character A/B/C/D or NA.
 prior_check List or NULL.
 warnings Character vector.

Method print(): Pretty-print the result with key trace, ambiguities, and warnings.

Usage:

```
ClassificationResult$print(...)
```

Arguments:

... Ignored (S3 print signature compatibility).

Method summary(): Compact summary list.

Usage:

```
ClassificationResult$summary(...)
```

Arguments:

... Ignored (S3 summary signature compatibility).

Method report(): Render this classification as a self-contained report (delegates to the package-level [report](#) generic). HTML output is dependency-free; PDF requires rmarkdown and a working LaTeX engine.

Usage:

```
ClassificationResult$report(
  file,
  format = c("auto", "html", "pdf"),
  pedon = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments:

file Output path. Format is inferred from the extension.

format One of "html" or "pdf" (defaults to "auto", which infers from the extension).

pedon Optional PedonRecord whose horizons / provenance are added to the report.

... Forwarded to [report_html](#) or [report_pdf](#).

Method clone(): The objects of this class are cloneable with this method.

Usage:

```
ClassificationResult$clone(deep = FALSE)
```

Arguments:

deep Whether to make a deep clone.

classify_all	<i>Classify a pedon across all three taxonomic systems</i>
--------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Convenience wrapper that runs `classify_wrb2022`, `classify_sibcs`, and `classify_usda` on the same `PedonRecord` and returns a single named list with one entry per system (plus a summary table that's handy for reports).

Usage

```
classify_all(
  pedon,
  systems = "all",
  on_missing = c("warn", "silent", "error"),
  include_familia = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A <code>PedonRecord</code> .
systems	Character vector. Any subset of <code>c("wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda")</code> , or the literal "all" (default) to run every system.
on_missing	One of "warn" (default), "silent", "error". Forwarded verbatim to each classifier.
include_familia	Forwarded to <code>classify_sibcs</code> (default TRUE). Has no effect on the other systems.
...	Additional named arguments are silently ignored.

Details

Each classifier still produces its own `ClassificationResult` with the full key trace and evidence grade – nothing is collapsed or homogenised. The wrapper exists for ergonomics, not abstraction.

Value

A named list with elements:

- `wrb` – `ClassificationResult` from `classify_wrb2022()` (or NULL if the system was skipped or errored).
- `sibcs` – as above, from `classify_sibcs()`.
- `usda` – as above, from `classify_usda()`.
- `summary` – a 1-row data.frame with one column per system, holding the resulting \$name (or NA when the system was skipped / errored). Useful for tabulating many pedons in one shot.

Selecting a subset of systems

Pass `systems = c("wrb2022", "sibcs")` (or any other subset) to skip systems you don't need. Default `systems = "all"` runs all three.

Errors and partial results

If a single classifier raises an error, the corresponding slot of the returned list is set to `NULL` and a one-line warning is emitted (so you can rerun the offender on its own to see the full traceback). The other classifiers still run and their results are returned. This matches the spirit of `on_missing = "warn"` on the individual classifiers.

Side effects

None. The classifiers do not mutate pedon; the wrapper does not attach any side-channel state.

See Also

[classify_wrb2022](#), [classify_sibcs](#), [classify_usda](#).

Examples

```
pr <- make_ferralsol_canonical()
all_three <- classify_all(pr)
all_three$summary

# WRB + USDA only (skip SiBCS):
classify_all(pr, systems = c("wrb2022", "usda"))$summary
```

classify_by_spectral_neighbours

Classify a soil by spectral similarity to OSSL reference profiles

Description

Given a Vis-NIR (or MIR) spectrum and an OSSL reference library enriched with WRB / SiBCS / USDA labels, returns the `K` most spectrally similar profiles plus a probabilistic class prediction aggregated from their labels.

Usage

```
classify_by_spectral_neighbours(
  spectrum,
  ossl_library,
  system = c("wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda"),
  k = 25L,
  preprocess = "snv+sg1",
  region = NULL,
```

```

    verbose = TRUE
  )

```

Arguments

spectrum	Numeric vector or 1-row matrix (the query spectrum). Must align (after preprocessing) with the column space of <code>ossl_library\$Xr</code> .
ossl_library	A list with <code>Xr</code> (numeric matrix, rows = OSSL training profiles, cols = wavelengths) and <code>Yr</code> (data frame keyed by property; <i>must include</i> a column named <code>wrb_rsg</code> and / or <code>sibcs_orderm</code> / <code>usda_order</code> for the labels to aggregate over). <code>ossl_library</code> may also carry <code>lat</code> and <code>lon</code> columns in <code>Yr</code> for the regional filter.
system	One of "wrb2022" (default), "sibcs", "usda". Controls which label column of <code>Yr</code> is aggregated.
k	Number of nearest neighbours (default 25).
preprocess	Pre-processing pipeline; passed to <code>preprocess_spectra</code> . Default "snv+sg1".
region	Optional <code>list(lat, lon, radius_km)</code> for a regional filter on <code>ossl_library\$Yr\$lat / lon</code> .
verbose	Emit a cli summary.

Details

This is the **spectral analogy** classifier. It does not replace the deterministic key in `classify_wrb2022` / `classify_sibcs` / `classify_usda`; instead it provides a high-prior "expected class" before the user has lab data, reducing the search space when collecting confirming attributes.

Value

A list with three elements:

`distribution` A `data.table` with columns `class`, `n_neighbours`, `probability` (= `n_neighbours / k`), sorted by probability.

`neighbours` A `data.table` with one row per neighbour (top K), columns `rank`, `distance`, `class`, plus any other columns present in `ossl_library$Yr`.

`query` The query metadata (`system`, `k`, `region filter`, `n_library_rows`, `n_filtered`).

Distance metric

By default we compute distances on PLS scores (matching the `resemble` / OSSL recipe), with PLS components fit on the OSSL reference `Yr` matrix. When `resemble` is unavailable, we fall back to PCA scores from `stats::prcomp` on the preprocessed `Xr` – a defensible-but-simpler heuristic.

Region filter

Optional `lat / lon / radius_km` arguments filter the OSSL library to profiles within `radius_km` (great-circle) of the query location before computing distances. This implements the "biome-aware" use case the architecture document calls for: a Cerrado profile shouldn't have its class inferred from spectral neighbours in the Boreal taiga.

See Also

[predict_oss1_mbl](#) (predicts attributes), [classify_wrb2022](#) (the deterministic key).

Examples

```
# Toy run against the bundled demo library (synthetic):
data(oss1_demo_sa)
# Inject a fake label column for the demo (real OSSL has it):
oss1_demo_sa$Yr$wrb_rsg <- sample(c("FR", "AC", "LX", "AL"),
                                nrow(oss1_demo_sa$Yr),
                                replace = TRUE)

query <- oss1_demo_sa$Xr[1, ]
res <- classify_by_spectral_neighbours(query, oss1_demo_sa,
                                    k = 10)

res$distribution # ranked classes
res$neighbours  # the 10 most similar profiles
```

```
classify_from_documents
```

Build a fully-classified 'PedonRecord' from documents in one call

Description

Highest-level entry point of the soilKey VLM pipeline. Given a soil-description PDF and / or a profile-wall photograph, this function:

Usage

```
classify_from_documents(
  pdf = NULL,
  image = NULL,
  fieldsheet = NULL,
  pedon = NULL,
  provider = "auto",
  model = NULL,
  systems = c("wrb", "sibcs", "usda"),
  report = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

pdf	Optional path to a soil-description PDF.
image	Optional path to a profile-wall image (JPG / PNG); if supplied, Munsell extraction is attempted with the configured provider.

fieldsheet	Optional path to a site-metadata field sheet (image or PDF).
pedon	Optional existing PedonRecord ; when supplied, the function fills only the fields VLM extraction can fill (subject to the provenance-authority order).
provider	Either a provider name passed to vlm_provider (default "ollama") OR a pre-built ellmer chat object (when you want full control over system_prompt, api_key, ...).
model	Optional model identifier; passed through to vlm_provider() when provider is a string. Defaults to the per-provider default from default_model .
systems	Character vector listing which classification systems to run; subset of c("wrb", "sibcs", "usda"). Default: all three.
report	Optional output path for a self-contained report (.html or .pdf). When supplied, report is called on the classification results + pedon. Default NULL (no report file).
overwrite	When merging extracted values into an existing pedon, allow VLM-extracted attributes to clobber already-recorded ones. Default FALSE – the provenance authority order (measured > extracted_vlm) is enforced by PedonRecord\$add_measurement() .
verbose	Emit cli progress messages. Default TRUE.

Details

1. Constructs a vision-language provider chat object via [vlm_provider](#) (defaults to local Ollama with Gemma 4 edge for institutional independence and data sovereignty).
2. Extracts horizons from pdf via [extract_horizons_from_pdf](#), Munsell colours from image via [extract_munsell_from_photo](#), and site metadata from fieldsheet via [extract_site_from_fieldsheet](#). Every extracted attribute is stamped source = "extracted_vlm" in the [PedonRecord](#)'s provenance log.
3. Runs the three deterministic keys ([classify_wrb2022](#), [classify_sibcs](#), [classify_usda](#)). The VLM never classifies – the package's architectural invariant is preserved.
4. Optionally renders a one-pager HTML / PDF report via [report](#).

At least one of pdf, image or fieldsheet must be supplied; you can also pass an existing partially-filled [PedonRecord](#) via pedon and let this function fill the gaps.

Value

A list with elements:

pedon The (mutated) [PedonRecord](#).

classifications Named list with up to three [ClassificationResult](#) objects keyed by wrb, sibcs, usda.

report Path to the rendered report file (if report = ... was supplied), else NULL.

provider The chat-provider object actually used (useful for downstream debugging or cost accounting).

Why local-first by default

The default provider = "ollama" runs the entire VLM pipeline on the user's machine via Gemma 4 (edge variant, ~3 GB, multimodal text+image). No part of the soil description, photograph or field sheet ever leaves the local network. This is the recommended configuration for governmental surveys, indigenous land studies, and unpublished research data; it also makes the pipeline reproducible without an internet connection. Cloud providers ("anthropic", "openai", "google") remain one argument away when they are the right call.

Architectural invariants preserved

- The VLM never classifies. Every extracted value carries source = "extracted_vlm"; the deterministic keys consume the resulting PedonRecord unaware of how each value was obtained.
- Provenance is preserved end-to-end. The evidence_grade on each ClassificationResult reflects whether decisive attributes came from measured, predicted_spectra, extracted_vlm, inferred_prior, or user_assumed – so a caller always knows how robust the classification is.
- Authority order is enforced. A pre-existing measured value is never silently overwritten by a later extracted_vlm value (unless overwrite = TRUE).

See Also

[vlm_provider](#), [extract_horizons_from_pdf](#), [classify_wrb2022](#), [report](#).

Examples

```
# Requires user-provided PDF/image files and a VLM provider; the
# block guards against missing inputs so it no-ops on CRAN.
pdf_path <- "perfil_042_descricao.pdf"
if (file.exists(pdf_path) && interactive()) {
  # The simplest possible end-to-end call -- local Gemma 4 edge.
  res <- classify_from_documents(
    pdf      = pdf_path,
    image    = "perfil_042_parede.jpg",
    report   = file.path(tempdir(), "perfil_042.html")
  )
  res$classifications$wrb$name

  # Cloud provider for a one-shot, production run
  res <- classify_from_documents(
    pdf      = pdf_path,
    provider = "anthropic"
  )

  # Different Gemma 4 size on Ollama
  res <- classify_from_documents(
    pdf      = pdf_path,
    provider = "ollama",
    model    = "gemma4:31b"
  )
}
```

```

    )
}

```

classify_sibcs	<i>Classifica um pedon segundo o SiBCS 5a edicao (1o + 2o + 3o + 4o niveis)</i>
----------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

v0.7 ligou as 13 ordens; v0.7.1 desce ao 2o nivel (subordens) via [run_sibcs_subordem](#); v0.7.3 desce ao 3o nivel (Grandes Grupos) via [run_sibcs_grande_grupo](#) para as ordens progressivamente viradas em `inst/rules/sibcs5/grandes-grupos/<ordem>.yaml` (Cap 14 Organossolos primeiro). Quando a subordem ainda nao tem bloco de Grandes Grupos, ou quando nenhum Grande Grupo passa (e nao ha catch-all default), a classificacao para no 2o nivel.

Usage

```

classify_sibcs(
  pedon,
  rules = NULL,
  on_missing = c("warn", "silent", "error"),
  include_familia = FALSE
)

```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
rules	Conjunto de regras pre-carregado.
on_missing	Um de "warn" (default), "silent", "error".
include_familia	Quando TRUE (default FALSE), adiciona o 5o nivel categorico (Familia) via classify_sibcs_familia . O label textual da Familia aparece em <code>\$trace\$familia_label</code> , e a lista de FamilyAttributes em <code>\$trace\$familia</code> .

Value

Um [ClassificationResult](#) cujo name eh o nome completo da classe atribuida no nivel mais profundo (Grande Grupo > Subordem > Ordem) e `rsg_or_order` eh o nome da ordem (e.g. "Organossolos"). Os codigos de cada nivel e o trace ficam em `$trace`.

`classify_sibcs_familia`*Classifica um perfil no 5o nivel categorico do SiBCS (Familia)*

Description

Aplica as dimensoes pertinentes a ordem do solo e devolve uma lista nomeada de [FamilyAttribute](#). O label textual da Familia eh formado adicionando-se cada value nao-nulo apos a designacao do 4o nivel, separados por virgulas (Cap 18, p 281).

Usage

```
classify_sibcs_familia(  
  pedon,  
  ordem_code = NULL,  
  sg_code = NULL,  
  max_depth_cm = 200  
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
ordem_code	Codigo da ordem (1 letra: "P", "L", ...). Se NULL, sera derivado de sg_code.
sg_code	Codigo do subgrupo do 4o nivel (e.g. "PVdAr"). Opcional; usado para ajustes especificos por SG (e.g. forcar subgrupamento textural em arenicos/espessarenicos).
max_depth_cm	Profundidade da secao de controle (default 200 cm).

Details

Esta funcao NAO eh uma chave determinista: cada perfil recebe SIMULTANEAMENTE todos os adjetivos pertinentes (multi-rotulo).

Value

Lista nomeada de [FamilyAttribute](#).

Status v0.7.14.A

Implementadas 5 dimensoes – grupamento textural, subgrupamento textural, distribuicao de cascalhos, constituicao esquelética, tipo de horizonte superficial. Outras dimensoes (prefixos epi/ meso/endo, saturacao de bases, alico, mineralogia, atividade da argila, oxidos de ferro, andico, especificos de Organossolos) adicionadas em sub-commits subsequentes.

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 18, pp 281-288.

`classify_usda`*Classify a pedon under USDA Soil Taxonomy (13th edition)*

Description

Walks the canonical 4-level USDA key (Order -> Suborder -> Great Group -> Subgroup) using YAML rule files at:

- `inst/rules/usda/key.yaml`: Order key (12 entries)
- `inst/rules/usda/suborders/<order>.yaml`
- `inst/rules/usda/great-groups/<order>.yaml`
- `inst/rules/usda/subgroups/<order>.yaml`

Usage

```
classify_usda(pedon, rules = NULL, on_missing = c("warn", "silent", "error"))
```

Arguments

<code>pedon</code>	A PedonRecord .
<code>rules</code>	Optional pre-loaded rule set.
<code>on_missing</code>	One of "warn" (default), "silent", "error".

Details

Stops at the deepest level for which a YAML rule file is available (e.g. v0.8.x: Gelisols full Path C; other 11 Orders at Order level only).

Value

A [ClassificationResult](#) with deepest-level taxon name. Each level's trace is in `$trace`.

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022). Keys to Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition. USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service.

```
classify_via_smartsolos_api
```

Classify a PedonRecord via Embrapa's SmartSolosExpert REST API

Description

Sends a soilKey [PedonRecord](#) to the SmartSolosExpert REST endpoint maintained by Embrapa (Glauber Vaz's PROLOG-based implementation of the SiBCS classifier) and returns the resulting four-level classification (Ordem / Subordem / Grande Grupo / Subgrupo) wrapped in a soilKey [ClassificationResult](#).

Usage

```
classify_via_smartsolos_api(
  pedon,
  api_key = Sys.getenv("AGROAPI_TOKEN"),
  endpoint = c("classification", "verification"),
  drenagem = NULL,
  reference_sibcs = NULL,
  base_url = "https://api.cnptia.embrapa.br/smartsolos/expert/v1",
  timeout_seconds = 30,
  post_fn = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
api_key	Bearer token. Defaults to Sys.getenv("AGROAPI_TOKEN"). Required unless post_fn is supplied (test injection).
endpoint	One of "classification" (default; classify only) or "verification" (classify + compare against user-supplied reference_sibcs).
drenagem	Optional drainage class. Integer 1..8 or Portuguese string ("bem drenado" etc.).
reference_sibcs	Optional named list (ordem, subordem, gde_grupo, subgrupo) used by the "verification" endpoint as the user's reference.
base_url	Override base URL. Default "https://api.cnptia.embrapa.br/smartsolos/expert/v1".
timeout_seconds	HTTP timeout (default 30).
post_fn	Internal: function with signature function(payload) -> response_list for unit tests. When supplied, the network is bypassed.
verbose	If TRUE (default), emits a one-line summary.

Details

This is an **external classifier** – the package does not host or replicate the PROLOG rules. The function exists so soilKey users can cross-validate the local classifier against an authoritative Embrapa-hosted reference. Use the "verification" endpoint to compare against your own user-supplied reference classification (the API returns a per-level match summary with counters L0..L4).

Authentication: register a free AgroAPI account at <https://www.agroapi.cnptia.embrapa.br/portal/>, subscribe to the SmartSolosExpert API and generate an access token. Pass it via the AGROAPI_TOKEN environment variable or the api_key argument.

Value

A `ClassificationResult` with `system = "SiBCS 5a edicao (SmartSolosExpert API)"` and the four taxonomic levels in `rsg_or_order` (Ordem) and `qualifiers` (Subordem / GdeGrupo / Subgrupo). Verification-mode responses additionally carry `trace$smartsolos_summary` (the per-level match counters L0..L4).

References

Vaz, G. J., Silva Neto, L. de F. da, & Barbedo, J. G. A. (2025). SmartSolos Expert: an expert system for Brazilian soil classification. *Smart Agricultural Technology*, 10, 100735. doi:10.1016/j.atech.2024.100735.

Vaz, G. J., Silva Neto, L. de F. da, Lima, R. N., & Oliveira, S. R. de M. (2019). Uma API para a classificacao de solos do Brasil. In *Anais do 12 Congresso Brasileiro de Agroinformatica (SBIAGRO 2019)*, pp. 63-72. Ponta Grossa.

Vaz, G. J., Silva Jr, A. F., & Silva Neto, L. de F. da (2023). Brazilian soil data for taxonomic classification. *Redape*, V1. doi:10.48432/PYKKA7.

See Also

`classify_sibcs` for the local PROLOG-free classifier; `compare_smartsolos` for a side-by-side comparison helper; `benchmark_redape` for the gold-standard curated dataset published by the same authors.

Examples

```
# Needs a SmartSolos Expert API token (set AGROAPI_TOKEN) and
# network access; the example no-ops on CRAN.
if (nzchar(Sys.getenv("AGROAPI_TOKEN")) &&
    requireNamespace("httr", quietly = TRUE)) {
  res <- try(classify_via_smartsolos_api(make_argissolo_canonical()),
            silent = TRUE)
  if (!inherits(res, "try-error")) {
    res$rsg_or_order      # "ARGISSOLO"
    res$qualifiers
  }
}
```

```
classify_with_engine_heuristic
```

Classify a pedon with the engine chosen by 'pick_engine()'

Description

Convenience wrapper that routes `classify_wrb2022` / `classify_sibcs` / `classify_usda` through whichever engine the heuristic recommends for the specific pedon.

Usage

```
classify_with_engine_heuristic(
  pedon,
  system = c("wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda"),
  min_score = 3L,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
system	One of "wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda".
min_score	Forwarded to <code>pick_engine</code> .
...	Forwarded to the underlying classifier.

Value

The result of the chosen classifier (a [ClassificationResult](#)). The chosen engine is captured in `$trace$engine_used`.

```
classify_wrb2022
```

Classify a pedon under WRB 2022

Description

High-level classification entry point. Pre-computes the implemented diagnostic horizons (argic, ferralic, mollic) for transparent reporting, runs the key, and assembles a [ClassificationResult](#) with the trace, ambiguities, missing-data hints, evidence grade, and (in future) prior sanity check.

Usage

```

classify_wrb2022(
  pedon,
  prior = NULL,
  prior_threshold = 0.01,
  on_missing = c("warn", "silent", "error"),
  rules = NULL
)

```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
prior	Optional spatial prior – a data.table with columns rsg_code and probability, typically the return value of spatial_prior . If supplied, the result records a prior_check entry from prior_consistency_check ; an inconsistent prior also emits a warning. The deterministic key is NEVER overridden by the prior.
prior_threshold	Probability below which the prior triggers an "inconsistent" warning (default 0.01).
on_missing	One of "warn" (default), "silent", "error". Behaviour when the trace reports missing attributes.
rules	Optional pre-loaded rule set.

Value

A [ClassificationResult](#).

clear_kst13_cache	<i>Clear the in-memory KST13 cache</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------

Description

Useful when the vendored JSON files are updated mid-session. Frees ~3.1 MB.

Usage

```
clear_kst13_cache()
```

clear_oss1_cache	<i>Clear the soilKey OSSL cache</i>
------------------	-------------------------------------

Description

Removes the per-region cache files written by [download_oss1_subset](#). Useful when a stale cache is suspected or when disk space is tight.

Usage

```
clear_oss1_cache(region = NULL, cache_dir = NULL, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

region	Optional character vector of regions to clear; the default NULL clears every cached file under ‘tools::R_user_dir("soilKey", "cache")’.
cache_dir	Cache directory (defaults to the soilKey user-cache dir).
verbose	If TRUE, prints which files were removed.

Value

Invisibly, the character vector of files that were removed.

combine_priors	<i>Combine multiple spatial priors via weighted geometric mean</i>
----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Given a list of priors (each a `data.table` with `rsg_code`, `probability`), pools them into a single distribution using a weighted geometric mean and renormalises to sum to 1.

Usage

```
combine_priors(priors, weights = NULL, epsilon = 1e-06)
```

Arguments

priors	A list of <code>data.table</code> s with columns <code>rsg_code</code> and <code>probability</code> .
weights	Optional non-negative numeric vector of length <code>length(priors)</code> . Defaults to equal weights. Will be renormalised to sum to 1.
epsilon	Smoothing floor for classes missing from a prior (default 1e-6). Must be > 0 – otherwise any class missing from a single prior is suppressed entirely.

Details

Geometric pooling has two desirable properties for soil-class priors:

1. externally Bayesian (the pooled posterior under any common likelihood matches what one would get by individual updates), and
2. zero-preserving: a class assigned probability 0 by any prior is suppressed in the pooled distribution. To avoid that, classes absent from a given prior are imputed with the smoothing constant epsilon.

Value

A `data.table` with columns `rsg_code`, `probability`, sorted by descending probability.

<code>compare_engines</code>	<i>Side-by-side comparison of soilKey vs aqp diagnostic engines</i>
------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Runs the `soilKey` hand-coded diagnostic and the `aqp` wrapper on the same pedon, returns both results plus an agreement flag. Useful for A/B benchmarks and for choosing which engine to use per dataset.

Usage

```
compare_engines(pedon, diagnostic = c("argic", "cambic"))
```

Arguments

<code>pedon</code>	A PedonRecord .
<code>diagnostic</code>	One of "argic" or "cambic".

Value

A list with `soilkey`, `aqp`, `agree`.

compare_smartsolos	<i>Cross-validate the local SiBCS classifier against the SmartSolosExpert API</i>
--------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Runs both `classify_sibcs` (local) and `classify_via_smartsolos_api` (remote PROLOG via Embrapa AgroAPI) on the same `PedonRecord` and tabulates agreement at each of the four SiBCS categorical levels.

Usage

```
compare_smartsolos(pedon, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon	A <code>PedonRecord</code> .
...	Forwarded to <code>classify_via_smartsolos_api</code> .

Value

A list with local and remote `ClassificationResults` plus a one-row agreement data.frame with columns `ordem`, `subordem`, `gde_grupo`, `subgrupo`, `n_match`.

Examples

```
if (nzchar(Sys.getenv("AGROAPI_TOKEN")) &&
    requireNamespace("htr", quietly = TRUE)) {
  cmp <- try(compare_smartsolos(make_argissolo_canonical()),
            silent = TRUE)
  if (!inherits(cmp, "try-error")) cmp$agreement
}
```

compute_ki	<i>Ki (silica:alumina molar) – SiBCS Cap 1, p 32</i>
------------	------------------------------------------------------

Description

Calcula o índice molar $Ki = SiO_2 / Al_2O_3$ a partir de teores percentuais por ataque sulfúrico-NaOH (Embrapa Manual de Metodos). Massas molares: 60.08 (SiO₂), 101.96 (Al₂O₃):

Usage

```
compute_ki(sio2_pct, al2o3_pct)
```

Arguments

sio2_pct Teor de SiO₂ por ataque sulfurico (%).
 al2o3_pct Teor de Al₂O₃ por ataque sulfurico (%).

Details

$K_i \text{ (molar)} = (\% \text{ SiO}_2 / 60.08) / (\% \text{ Al}_2\text{O}_3 / 101.96) \approx 1.6973 \times (\% \text{ SiO}_2 / \% \text{ Al}_2\text{O}_3)$

Value

Ki molar (numeric); NA se algum input for NA ou Al₂O₃ ≤ 0.

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p 32; Embrapa Manual de Metodos de Analise de Solo (3a ed., 2017).

compute_kr

Kr (silica:sesquioxidos molar) – SiBCS Cap 1, p 32

Description

Calcula o indice molar $K_r = \text{SiO}_2 / (\text{Al}_2\text{O}_3 + \text{Fe}_2\text{O}_3)$ usando massas molares 60.08 (SiO₂), 101.96 (Al₂O₃) e 159.69 (Fe₂O₃):

Usage

compute_kr(sio2_pct, al2o3_pct, fe2o3_pct)

Arguments

sio2_pct Teor de SiO₂ por ataque sulfurico (%).
 al2o3_pct Teor de Al₂O₃ por ataque sulfurico (%).
 fe2o3_pct Teor de Fe₂O₃ por ataque sulfurico (%).

Details

$K_r \text{ (molar)} = (\% \text{ SiO}_2 / 60.08) / (\% \text{ Al}_2\text{O}_3 / 101.96 + \% \text{ Fe}_2\text{O}_3 / 159.69)$

Value

Kr molar (numeric); NA se algum input for NA ou denominador ≤ 0.

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p 32.

contato_litico	<i>Contato litico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 40): rocha continua dura. Reuso de continuous_rock via designacao R / Cr.</i>
----------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Contato litico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 40): rocha continua dura. Reuso de [continuous_rock](#) via designacao R / Cr.

Usage

```
contato_litico(pedon, max_depth_cm = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima do contato (default NULL). SiBCS Cap 14 Subgrupos liticos de Folicos usam max_depth_cm = 50.

contato_litico_fragmentario	<i>Contato litico fragmentario (SiBCS Cap 1, p 40): rocha fragmentada.</i>
-----------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Contato litico fragmentario (SiBCS Cap 1, p 40): rocha fragmentada.

Usage

```
contato_litico_fragmentario(pedon, max_depth_cm = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_depth_cm	Profundidade maxima do contato (default NULL). SiBCS Cap 14 Subgrupos fragmentarios de Folicos usam max_depth_cm = 50.

continuous_rock	<i>Continuous rock (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.5)</i>
-----------------	--------------------------------------------

Description

Consolidated material below the soil. v0.3.3: detects via designation R or Cr on the lowermost (or any) layer.

Usage

```
continuous_rock(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

cryic_conditions	<i>Cryic conditions (WRB 2022)</i>
------------------	------------------------------------

Description

Tests whether continuous frozen / permafrost material occurs within the upper max_top_cm. Two alternative paths qualify per WRB 2022:

1. **Permafrost temperature:** a layer at top_cm ≤ max_top_cm (default 100) with permafrost_temp_C ≤ max_temp_C (default 0 C).
2. **Designation pattern:** a layer at top_cm ≤ max_top_cm with designation containing suffix "f" (frozen) or matching "^Cf" / "perma". Used as a fallback when the temperature field is not in the pedon (typical of legacy survey data).

Either path qualifies. Diagnostic of Cryosols.

Usage

```
cryic_conditions(pedon, max_top_cm = 100, max_temp_C = 0)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Maximum top depth (cm) (default 100).
max_temp_C	Maximum mean annual permafrost-zone temperature (deg C) for the temperature path (default 0).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Cryosols.

cryoturbation_usda *Cryoturbation (USDA Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition)*

Description

"Cryoturbation (frost churning) is the mixing of the soil matrix within the pedon that results in irregular or broken horizons, involutions, accumulation of organic matter on the permafrost table, oriented rock fragments, and silt caps on rock fragments." – KST 13ed, Ch 3, p 43.

Usage

cryoturbation_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Diagnostic for the Turbels suborder of Gelisols.

Implementation (v0.8.x): Uses heuristics from horizon designations and morphology data:

- Designation contains 'jj' (cryoturbation symbol) per KST notation;
- OR boundary_topography in {"irregular", "broken", "involuted"};
- OR coarse_fragments_pct varying non-monotonically with depth (proxy for "oriented rock fragments");
- OR designation contains 'f' (frozen) AND irregular boundary_distinctness.

Refinement to incorporate explicit cryoturbation_evidence column is deferred to v0.9.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, p 43.

cumulic_subgroup_usda *Cumulic Subgroup helper (Mollorthels / Umbrorthels)*

Description

Pass when:

- Mollic or umbric epipedon ≥ 40 cm thick with texture finer than loamy fine sand; AND
- Slope < 25 percent.

Usage

cumulic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Slope is taken from site\$slope_pct when available; if NA, assumed to satisfy (TRUE).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

densiaquept_qualifying_usda
Densiaquept qualifying (densic contact within 100 cm)

Description

Densiaquept qualifying (densic contact within 100 cm)

Usage

densiaquept_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

DiagnosticResult *DiagnosticResult: structured outcome of a diagnostic test*

Description

DiagnosticResult: structured outcome of a diagnostic test

DiagnosticResult: structured outcome of a diagnostic test

Details

Returned by every WRB or SiBCS diagnostic function (e.g. [argic](#), [ferralic](#), [mollic](#)). A DiagnosticResult never reduces to a bare TRUE/FALSE — it always carries (a) which layers satisfied the criteria, (b) the per-sub-test evidence, (c) which attributes would have been required but are missing, and (d) the literature reference for the diagnostic definition.

passed is TRUE/FALSE/NA; NA means the test could not be evaluated because critical attributes were missing. This three-valued semantics propagates through the rule engine — an indeterminate test does not silently fail.

Public fields

name Character. Name of the diagnostic (e.g. "argic").

passed Logical. TRUE, FALSE, or NA.

layers Integer vector. Indices of horizons that satisfy the diagnostic.

evidence Named list. Sub-test results, each itself a list with at least passed, layers, and missing.

missing Character vector. Attribute names that would have been needed but were NA.

reference Character. Literature citation for this diagnostic.

notes Character. Free-form notes (interpretation choices, edge cases hit).

Methods

Public methods:

- [DiagnosticResult\\$new\(\)](#)
- [DiagnosticResult\\$print\(\)](#)
- [DiagnosticResult\\$as_list\(\)](#)
- [DiagnosticResult\\$clone\(\)](#)

Method `new()`: Build a DiagnosticResult.

Usage:

```
DiagnosticResult$new(
  name,
  passed = NA,
  layers = integer(0),
  evidence = list(),
  missing = character(0),
```

```

    reference = NA_character_,
    notes = NA_character_
  )

```

Arguments:

name Diagnostic name.
passed TRUE/FALSE/NA.
layers Integer vector of horizon indices that satisfied.
evidence Named list of sub-test results.
missing Character vector of missing attribute names.
reference Citation string.
notes Free-form notes.

Method `print()`: Pretty-print the result with sub-test breakdown.

Usage:

```
DiagnosticResult$print(...)
```

Arguments:

... Ignored (S3 print signature compatibility).

Method `as_list()`: Return the result as a plain list (for serialization).

Usage:

```
DiagnosticResult$as_list()
```

Method `clone()`: The objects of this class are cloneable with this method.

Usage:

```
DiagnosticResult$clone(deep = FALSE)
```

Arguments:

deep Whether to make a deep clone.

dístrofíco

*Solo dístrofíco (SiBCS Cap 1, p 30)***Description**

Negacao operacional de [eutrofíco](#): $V < 50\%$ no horizonte diagnóstico subsuperficial.

Usage

```
dístrofíco(pedon, max_v = 50)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_v Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

dolomitic_material	<i>Dolomitic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.5): $\geq 2\%$ Mg-rich carbonate, $\text{CaCO}_3/\text{MgCO}_3 < 1.5$. v0.3.3: detects via designation pattern kdo do magn as proxy when ratio data missing.</i>
--------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Dolomitic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.5): $\geq 2\%$ Mg-rich carbonate, $\text{CaCO}_3/\text{MgCO}_3 < 1.5$. v0.3.3: detects via designation pattern kdo|do|magn as proxy when ratio data missing.

Usage

```
dolomitic_material(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

download_bdsolos	<i>Download the Bdsolos consulta-publica CSV (experimental, requires chromote)</i>
------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Drives the Embrapa Bdsolos web form via headless Chrome (chromote) to produce a CSV of all profiles + all attributes. Marked **experimental**: heavy queries (no UF filter) frequently overload the Embrapa server. Prefer filter_uf = batches of one or two states at a time and stitch the resulting CSVs.

Usage

```
download_bdsolos(
  out_path,
  accept_terms = FALSE,
  filter_uf = NULL,
  attributes = "default",
  timeout_seconds = 600,
  chromote_session = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

out_path	File path for the downloaded CSV.
accept_terms	Logical. Must be TRUE to proceed; the function aborts otherwise. Documents informed consent to the BDSololos terms (personal/academic use, ABNT citation).
filter_uf	Optional 2-letter UF code (e.g. "RJ", "SC"). Strongly recommended – the full-table query often times out.
attributes	Character vector. Which attribute groups to request. Defaults to the full SiBCS-classification-relevant set (Identificacao + Localizacao + Classificacao for Pontos de Amostragem, Identificacao + Morfológicas + Físicas + Químicas for Horizontes; Mineralógicas excluded for performance). Pass "all" to include Mineralógicas.
timeout_seconds	Total timeout for the AJAX query. Default 600 (10 min).
chromote_session	Optional pre-built chromote::ChromoteSession. Useful to share a session across calls.
verbose	If TRUE (default), prints progress.

Details

Per the Embrapa terms-of-use, the data is licensed for personal / academic use and publications must cite the source per ABNT. **Set** `accept_terms = TRUE` **to acknowledge this and let the function click "Concordo" on your behalf.**

Value

File path to the downloaded CSV (invisible).

See Also

[load_bdsolos_csv](#), [inspect_bdsolos_csv](#).

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("chromote", quietly = TRUE) && interactive()) {
  out_dir <- file.path(tempdir(), "bdsolos")
  dir.create(out_dir, showWarnings = FALSE, recursive = TRUE)

  # Single UF (fast, recommended)
  download_bdsolos(file.path(out_dir, "RJ.csv"),
                  accept_terms = TRUE,
                  filter_uf     = "RJ")

  # Stitch multiple UFs
  for (uf in c("RJ", "SP", "MG", "ES")) {
    download_bdsolos(file.path(out_dir, paste0(uf, ".csv")),
                    accept_terms = TRUE, filter_uf = uf)
  }
}
```

```

# Then load all of them
csvs <- list.files(out_dir, "\\*.csv$", full.names = TRUE)
all_pedons <- unlist(lapply(csvs, load_bdsolos_csv), recursive = FALSE)
length(all_pedons)
}

```

download_extdata_cache

Download one or more soilKey lazy-fetch caches from GitHub Release

Description

soilKey ships four large benchmark caches (KSSL, KSSL+NASIS, AfSP, WoSIS stratified) that are too large to embed in the CRAN source tarball. Since v0.9.94 they are pinned to a versioned GitHub Release and downloaded on demand into the user cache directory at `tools::R_user_dir("soilKey", "data")`.

Usage

```

download_extdata_cache(
  which = "all",
  release = .SOILKEY_LAZY_FETCH_RELEASE,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE
)

```

Arguments

which	Character vector of cache names to download. "all" (default) downloads every lazy-fetch cache. Valid names: "afsp_sample", "kssl_sample", "kssl_nasis_sample", "wosis_stratified_sample".
release	GitHub Release tag to pull from (default "v0.9.94-data"). Override only if you maintain a local mirror.
overwrite	If TRUE, redownload even if the file is already present in the user cache (default FALSE).
verbose	Print progress (default TRUE).

Details

On first call to any of `load_kssl_sample()`, `load_kssl_nasis_sample()`, `load_afsp_sample()`, or `load_wosis_stratified_sample()`, soilKey checks for the file in the user cache. If missing, the loader prompts (interactive sessions only) to download. Use `download_extdata_cache()` to eagerly populate the cache without prompting.

Value

Invisibly, a named character vector of local paths to the downloaded files.

Examples

```
# Network-dependent; the example no-ops on CRAN.
if (interactive()) {
  # Download every lazy-fetch cache once, ahead of any benchmark run:
  download_extdata_cache()

  # Or just the WRB AfSP sample:
  download_extdata_cache("afsp_sample")
}
```

download_oss1_subset *Download an OSS1 subset and return an 'oss1_library' artefact*

Description

Fetches a region-filtered subset of the Open Soil Spectral Library (Sanderman et al. 2024) and assembles it into the 'list(Xr, Yr, metadata)' shape consumed by [predict_oss1_mbl](#) and [predict_oss1_plsr_local](#). The result is cached under 'tools::R_user_dir("soilKey", "cache)" so subsequent calls in the same session (or future R sessions) skip the network.

Usage

```
download_oss1_subset(
  region = c("global", "south_america", "north_america", "europe", "africa", "asia",
            "oceania"),
  properties = c("clay_pct", "sand_pct", "silt_pct", "cec_cmol", "bs_pct", "ph_h2o",
                "oc_pct", "fe_dcb_pct", "caco3_pct"),
  wavelengths = 350:2500,
  endpoint = NULL,
  cache_dir = NULL,
  force = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

region	One of "global", "south_america", "north_america", "europe", "africa", "asia", "oceania". Filters the OSS1 training rows by their site coordinates' continent.
properties	Character vector of OSS1 property names to keep in 'Yr' (drops other reference columns to keep the artefact small). Defaults to the WRB-relevant set used by fill_from_spectra .

wavelengths	Integer vector of wavelengths (nm) the returned Xr matrix will be interpolated to. Defaults to Vis-NIR/SWIR (350-2500 nm at 1-nm resolution, 2151 columns).
endpoint	OSSL HTTP endpoint serving the JSON manifest; overrideable via options(soilKey.ossll_endpoint = ...) for testing or for using a private mirror. The default is the public Soil Spectroscopy GG bucket.
cache_dir	Cache directory; defaults to tools::R_user_dir("soilKey", "cache").
force	If TRUE, re-fetches even when a cached subset exists.
verbose	If TRUE, emits a 'cli' summary of the fetch.

Details

This function intentionally does **not** fall back to the synthetic predictor on network failure – a missing OSSL artefact is a real condition that the caller must handle, and silent fallback would make benchmarks meaningless.

Value

A list with elements Xr (numeric matrix, rows = training profiles, columns = wavelengths in nm), Yr (data.frame with the requested property columns, rows aligned to Xr), and metadata (snapshot date, region, n profiles, source URL, and the SHA-256 of the cache file). Pass it as the ossll_library argument to [fill_from_spectra](#) or [predict_ossll_mbl](#).

References

Sanderman, J., Savage, K., Dangal, S.R.S., Duran, G., Rivard, C., Cardona, M.T., Sandzhieva, A., Aramian, A. & Safanelli, J.L. (2024). Soil Spectroscopy for Global Good – the Open Soil Spectral Library (OSSL). <https://soilspectroscopy.org/>.

download_ossll_subset_with_labels

Download an OSSL subset and attach WRB / SiBCS / USDA labels

Description

Fetches a region-filtered slice of the Open Soil Spectral Library via [download_ossll_subset](#) and post-joins WRB Reference Soil Group labels from WoSIS GraphQL by spatial nearest-neighbour. The resulting artefact has the canonical list(Xr, Yr, metadata) shape – with extra columns in Yr: wrb_rsg, wrb_label_source, wrb_label_distance_km, plus optionally sibcs_ordem and usda_order when translate_systems = TRUE.

Usage

```
download_ossll_subset_with_labels(
  region = c("global", "south_america", "north_america", "europe", "africa", "asia",
            "oceania"),
  max_distance_km = 5,
```

```

    wosis_endpoint = NULL,
    translate_systems = TRUE,
    max_to_label = Inf,
    verbose = TRUE,
    query_fn = NULL,
    ...
)

```

Arguments

region	OSSL region filter; one of "global", "south_america", "north_america", "europe", "africa", "asia", "oceania".
max_distance_km	WoSIS spatial-join tolerance in kilometres (default 5). Profiles whose nearest WRB-labeled WoSIS neighbour is farther than this are left unlabeled.
wosis_endpoint	Override for the WoSIS GraphQL endpoint (default <code>getOption("soilKey.wosis_graphql")</code>). The canonical value is "https://graphql.isric.org/wosis/graphql".
translate_systems	If TRUE (default), also adds <code>sibcs_ordem</code> and <code>usda_order</code> columns derived from the WRB label via the Schad (2023) Annex Table 1 / SiBCS 5 ^a ed. Annex A correspondence. Those translations are 1:N for some classes; we pick the most-common partner and tag rows where the translation is genuinely ambiguous.
max_to_label	Maximum number of profiles to query against WoSIS (default Inf). WoSIS throttles aggressive queries; cap this when running interactive demos.
verbose	Emit cli progress messages.
query_fn	Optional injection of the per-coordinate WoSIS query function. Default uses <code>.query_nearest_wosis_wrb</code> . Tests pass a stub here to exercise the join logic without network.
...	Forwarded to download_ossL_subset .

Value

A list with `Xr` (numeric matrix), `Yr` (data frame with the labels attached), and `metadata` (list with the OSSL fetch metadata + the join statistics: number of profiles labeled, average / max distance, WoSIS endpoint, snapshot date).

Why this function exists

OSSL stores Vis-NIR / MIR spectra and lab data but typically lacks WRB Reference Soil Group labels on most profiles (KSSL data is USDA-flavoured; non-US contributions are inconsistent). WoSIS, by contrast, archives ~228 000 profiles with WRB labels but no spectra. This function bridges the two so the user can run `classify_by_spectral_neighbours` on a real-data OSSL library without having to do the spatial join themselves.

Caveats and provenance

WRB labels obtained via spatial join are **weak labels**. The same physical location may have been classified differently across surveys (different WRB editions, different interpretations). Each row carries:

- wrb_label_source = "wosis_spatial_join": label inherited from a WoSIS neighbour within max_distance_km.
- wrb_label_distance_km: the distance to that neighbour (NA when no neighbour was found within tolerance).
- wrb_label_source = "ossl_native": label was already present in OSSL Yr (rare; preserved verbatim).
- wrb_label_source = "missing": no neighbour within tolerance; the row stays unlabeled and will be skipped downstream.

Treat the labels as priors, not ground truth.

See Also

[download_ossl_subset](#), [classify_by_spectral_neighbours](#).

Examples

```
# Pulls OSSL + WoSIS over the network; the example no-ops on CRAN.
if (interactive()) {
  lib <- try(download_ossl_subset_with_labels(
    region          = "south_america",
    max_distance_km = 10
  ), silent = TRUE)
  if (!inherits(lib, "try-error")) {
    table(lib$Yr$wrb_rsg, useNA = "always")
    table(lib$Yr$wrb_label_source)
  }
}
```

download_redape_dataset

Download the curated Redape GeoTab dataset (Vaz et al 2023)

Description

Enumerates the dataset via the Dataverse API and downloads all JSON profile files (the structured / interoperable format used by the curators) into dest_dir. Skips files already present unless overwrite = TRUE.

Usage

```
download_redape_dataset(
  dest_dir,
  dataset_doi = .REDAPE_GEOTAB_DOI,
  include_rtf = FALSE,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

dest_dir	Destination directory for the JSON files.
dataset_doi	DOI of the dataset (default: the Vaz 2023 dataset).
include_rtf	If TRUE, also download the original RTF profile sheets (default FALSE; the JSON files alone are enough for classification).
overwrite	If TRUE, re-download files that already exist locally.
verbose	Print progress (default TRUE).

Value

Character vector of paths to the downloaded files.

References

Vaz, G. J., Silva Jr, A. F., & Silva Neto, L. de F. da (2023). Brazilian soil data for taxonomic classification. Redape, V1. doi:10.48432/PYKKA7.

duric_horizon	<i>Duric horizon (WRB 2022)</i>
---------------	---------------------------------

Description

Tests for $\geq 10\%$ volume of duripan nodules (Si-cemented) within a horizon at least 10 cm thick. Diagnostic of Durisols.

Usage

```
duric_horizon(pedon, min_thickness = 10, min_duripan_pct = 10)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Minimum thickness (cm; default 10 per WRB 2022).
min_duripan_pct	Minimum duripan volume % (default 10 per WRB 2022).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

v0.3.1: thresholds aligned with WRB 2022 Ch 3.1.7 (10%, 10 cm) – previous v0.3 used 15%/15 cm. Petroduric (cemented continuous duripan) detection still deferred and will be added in v0.4.

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3.1.7 – Duric horizon (p. 41).

duric_subgroup_usda *Duric Subgroup helper (USDA Spodosols)*

Description

Pass when a pedogenically cemented horizon (extremely weakly coherent or stronger) is present in 90%+ of the pedon within 100 cm. v0.8 proxy: any horizon with cementation_class >= "weakly".

Usage

```
duric_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Default 100.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

duripa *Duripa (SiBCS Cap 2, p 74; v0.7)*

Description

Reuso de [duric_horizon](#) (WRB Ch 3.1): subsuperficial cimentado por silica, continuo ou em >= 50% volume.

Usage

```
duripa(pedon, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
...	Reserved for future arguments.

duripan_usda	<i>Duripan (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, pp 36-37)</i>
--------------	------------------------------------------------

Description

Silica-cemented horizon, very strongly resistant. Detected via `cementation_class == "indurated"` AND `duripan_pct >= 50`.

Usage

```
duripan_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Default 100.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

dystric_subgroup_usda	<i>Dystric Subgroup helper (Vertisols Dystr*) Pass when BS (NH4OAc) < 50% in some part of the upper 100 cm.</i>
-----------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Dystric Subgroup helper (Vertisols Dystr*) Pass when BS (NH4OAc) < 50% in some part of the upper 100 cm.

Usage

```
dystric_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

entic_subgroup_usda	<i>Entic Subgroup helper (Spodosols)</i>
---------------------	------------------------------------------

Description

Pass when the spodic horizon is "weakly developed":

- Less than 1.2% organic carbon in the upper 10 cm of spodic; OR
- Spodic horizon < 10 cm thick.

Usage

```
entic_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

entisol_usda	<i>Entisols (USDA Cap 8): catch-all for soils that don't match any other Order. Always passes.</i>
--------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Entisols (USDA Cap 8): catch-all for soils that don't match any other Order. Always passes.

Usage

```
entisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

episaturation_usda	<i>Episaturation helper (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, p 41) Pass when aquic conditions PLUS perched water (saturation type "episaturation").</i>
--------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Episaturation helper (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, p 41) Pass when aquic conditions PLUS perched water (saturation type "episaturation").

Usage

```
episaturation_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

espodossolo	<i>Espodossolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 112; conceito Cap 3, p 90-91)</i>
-------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Horizonte B espodico imediatamente abaixo de horizontes E ou A, dentro de 200 cm (ou 400 cm se A+E ou histico+E ultrapassam 200).

Usage

```
espodossolo(pedon, max_top_cm = 200)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

espodossolo_ferri_humiluvico

Espodossolos Ferri-humiluvicos (Cap 8): B espodico tipo Bhs OR catch-all dos espodossolos.

Description

Espodossolos Ferri-humiluvicos (Cap 8): B espodico tipo Bhs OR catch-all dos espodossolos.

Usage

espodossolo_ferri_humiluvico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

espodossolo_ferriluvico

Espodossolos Ferriluvicos (Cap 8): B espodico tipo Bs (Fe + Al, baixo OC iluvial).

Description

Espodossolos Ferriluvicos (Cap 8): B espodico tipo Bs (Fe + Al, baixo OC iluvial).

Usage

espodossolo_ferriluvico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

espodossolo_humiluvico

Espodossolos Humiluvicos (Cap 8): B espodico tipo Bh (org. + Al, pouco/sem Fe).

Description

Espodossolos Humiluvicos (Cap 8): B espodico tipo Bh (org. + Al, pouco/sem Fe).

Usage

espodossolo_humiluvico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

eutric_inceptisol_usda

Eutric Inceptisol Suborder helper (Eutrudepts) Pass when BS (NH4OAc) >= 60% in some part of upper 75 cm.

Description

Eutric Inceptisol Suborder helper (Eutrudepts) Pass when BS (NH4OAc) >= 60% in some part of upper 75 cm.

Usage

eutric_inceptisol_usda(pedon, min_bs = 60)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

min_bs Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

eutric_oxisol_usda	<i>Eutric Oxisol Suborder helper (Eutroperox/Eutradox/etc.) Pass when BS (NH4OAc) >= 35% in all layers within 125 cm.</i>
--------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Eutric Oxisol Suborder helper (Eutroperox/Eutradox/etc.) Pass when BS (NH4OAc) >= 35% in all layers within 125 cm.

Usage

eutric_oxisol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

eutric_subgroup_usda	<i>Eutric Subgroup helper (Andisols) Pass when base_saturation (sum-of-cations) >= 50% in some part.</i>
----------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Eutric Subgroup helper (Andisols) Pass when base_saturation (sum-of-cations) >= 50% in some part.

Usage

eutric_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

eutrofico	<i>Solo eutrofico (SiBCS Cap 1, p 30)</i>
-----------	-------------------------------------------

Description

Returns TRUE se a saturacao por bases (V%) \geq 50% no horizonte diagnostico subsuperficial (B ou C). 65% para A chernozemico.

Usage

```
eutrofico(pedon, min_v = 50)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_v	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

evaluate_rsg_tests	<i>Evaluate the test block of a single RSG</i>
--------------------	------------------------------------------------

Description

Given a parsed tests block from a YAML key entry, evaluates the appropriate combinator and returns a list with passed, evidence, missing, and (optionally) notes.

Usage

```
evaluate_rsg_tests(pedon, tests)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
tests	A tests block from the YAML.

Value

A list summarising the test outcome.

 extract_horizons_from_pdf

Extract horizons from a soil description PDF

Description

Reads a PDF (typically a soil survey chapter, field-sheet scan, or thesis appendix), prompts the configured VLM to extract horizon attributes against `inst/schemas/horizon.json`, and merges the result into pedon. Every extracted attribute is recorded with `source = "extracted_vlm"` and the model's reported confidence and verbatim source quote.

Usage

```
extract_horizons_from_pdf(
  pedon,
  pdf_path = NULL,
  provider,
  max_retries = 3L,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  prompt_name = "extract_horizons",
  schema_name = "horizon",
  pdf_text = NULL
)
```

Arguments

<code>pedon</code>	A PedonRecord to merge into. Mutated in place AND returned invisibly.
<code>pdf_path</code>	Path to the PDF file. Either <code>pdf_path</code> or <code>pdf_text</code> must be supplied.
<code>provider</code>	A chat provider from vlm_provider (or a MockVLMProvider for testing).
<code>max_retries</code>	Integer; how many times to re-prompt on validation failure. Default 3.
<code>overwrite</code>	If TRUE, lower-authority values are allowed to clobber higher-authority ones. Default FALSE.
<code>prompt_name</code>	Override the default prompt template ("extract_horizons").
<code>schema_name</code>	Override the default schema ("horizon").
<code>pdf_text</code>	Optional alternative to <code>pdf_path</code> : the already-extracted description text. Useful for smoke tests, unit tests without <code>pdftools</code> , and for already-OCR'd field-sheet text.

Details

The `PedonRecord`'s authority order guarantees that values already tagged "measured" are never silently overwritten by VLM extraction unless `overwrite = TRUE`.

If the PDF is long (more than ~30,000 characters), it is chunked page-by-page and each page is sent independently. This is a conservative-but-simple strategy; for very long surveys callers should pre-chunk and call this function once per profile.

Value

Invisibly, the (mutated) pedon. Carries a "vlm_extraction" attribute with the parsed response, number of attempts, and number of provenance entries added.

Failure modes

- If pdftools is not installed -> error.
- If the PDF cannot be read -> error.
- If the VLM response fails JSON parse / schema validation after max_retries + 1 attempts -> error from validate_or_retry.

extract_munsell_from_photo

Extract Munsell color from a profile photo

Description

Sends the photo to a multimodal VLM with a prompt that asks the model to estimate Munsell hue / value / chroma per visible horizon (when a Munsell reference card is in frame). Recorded as extracted_vlm with the model's self-reported confidence; photos without a reference card should yield confidence below 0.5 per the prompt specification.

Usage

```
extract_munsell_from_photo(
  pedon,
  image_path,
  provider,
  max_retries = 3L,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  prompt_name = "extract_munsell_from_photo",
  schema_name = "horizon"
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
image_path	Path to the image file (JPG / PNG).
provider	A chat provider from vlm_provider (or a MockVLMProvider for testing).
max_retries	Integer; how many times to re-prompt on validation failure. Default 3.
overwrite	If TRUE, lower-authority values are allowed to clobber higher-authority ones. Default FALSE.
prompt_name	Override the default prompt template ("extract_horizons").
schema_name	Override the default schema ("horizon").

Details

Quantitative non-color attributes (clay %, CEC, pH, etc.) are **never** extracted from photos, by prompt-level instruction. If the model returns one anyway, it is silently dropped.

Value

Invisibly, the mutated pedon, with the photo added to pedon\$images.

extract_site_from_fieldsheet

Extract site metadata from a field-sheet image

Description

Sends a photographed / scanned field sheet to a multimodal VLM and merges the extracted site-level metadata (lat, lon, elevation, parent material, land use, etc.) into pedon\$site. Existing fields are preserved unless overwrite = TRUE; only NULL fields are filled.

Usage

```
extract_site_from_fieldsheet(
  pedon,
  image_path,
  provider,
  max_retries = 3L,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  prompt_name = "extract_site_metadata",
  schema_name = "site"
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
image_path	Path to the field-sheet image.
provider	A chat provider from vlm_provider (or a MockVLMProvider for testing).
max_retries	Integer; how many times to re-prompt on validation failure. Default 3.
overwrite	If TRUE, lower-authority values are allowed to clobber higher-authority ones. Default FALSE.
prompt_name	Override the default prompt template ("extract_horizons").
schema_name	Override the default schema ("horizon").

Value

Invisibly, the mutated pedon.

familia_andico *Familia: propriedades andicas (Cap 1, p 42-43)*

Description

Aplica o termo "andico" quando, em qualquer horizonte:

- densidade do solo $\leq 0,9$ g/cm³, E
- retencao de fosfato $\geq 85\%$, E
- $\text{Alo} + 0.5 * \text{Feo} \geq 2\%$ (oxalato extraivel)

Usage

```
familia_andico(pedon, max_db = 0.9, min_pret = 85, min_aloxfeox = 2)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_db	Densidade maxima (default 0.9 g/cm ³).
min_pret	Retencao minima de fosfato (default 85%).
min_aloxfeox	Limite de $\text{Alo} + 0.5 * \text{Feo}$ (default 2%).

Details

Aplicavel para Cambissolos Histicos e Organossolos Folicos (Cap 18 p 287), em fase de validacao.

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#) com value = "andico" ou NULL.

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p 42-43; Cap 18, p 287.

familia_atividade_argila

Familia: subgrupamento de atividade da fracao argila (Cap 18, p 287)

Description

Classifica pela CTC da fracao argila $T = (\text{cec_cmol} * 100 / \text{clay_pct})$:

- Tmb: $T < 8$ cmolc/kg argila (muito baixa)
- Tmob: $8 \leq T < 17$ (moderadamente baixa)
- Tm: $17 \leq T < 27$ (media)
- Tmoa: $27 \leq T < 40$ (moderadamente alta)
- Tma: $T \geq 40$ (muito alta)

Usage

```
familia_atividade_argila(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_depth_cm Profundidade da secao de controle (default 150).

Details

Considerada na maior parte do horizonte B (ou C, na ausencia de B). Nao aplicavel a solos de classe textural areia ou areia franca ($\text{clay} < 15 \text{ g kg}^{-1} = 1,5\%$).

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 18, p 287.

familia_constituicao_esqueletica

Familia: constituicao esqueletica (Cap 1, p 48)

Description

Solo com mais de 35% e menos de 90% do volume constituído por material mineral com diâmetro > 2 cm. Acima de 90%, é considerado tipo de terreno (não classificável).

Usage

```
familia_constituicao_esqueletica(pedon, max_depth_cm = 200)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_depth_cm Profundidade da seção de controle (default 200).

Details

O schema atual não distingue cascalho (2 mm-2 cm) de calhaus (> 2 cm). Como aproximação conservadora, esta função retorna "esqueletica" quando coarse_fragments_pct está no intervalo (35%, 90%). Refinamento futuro requer adicionar uma coluna distinta para fragmentos > 2 cm.

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p 48; Cap 18, p 284.

familia_distribuicao_cascalhos

Familia: distribuicao de cascalhos no perfil (Cap 1, p 47-48)

Description

Utiliza coarse_fragments_pct (% volume de cascalhos 2 mm a 2 cm relativo a terra fina) como modificador do agrupamento textural.

Usage

```
familia_distribuicao_cascalhos(pedon, max_depth_cm = 200)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_depth_cm Profundidade da secao de controle (default 200).

Details

Classes (Santos et al., 2015; valores em g kg-1):

- pouco_cascalhenta: 8% <= cascalho < 15%
- cascalhenta: 15% <= cascalho <= 50%
- muito_cascalhenta: cascalho > 50%

Aplica-se a TODAS as classes que apresentam cascalho > 80 g/kg (8% do volume) na secao de controle.

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p 47-48; Cap 18, p 284.

familia_grupamento_textural

Familia: grupamento textural (Cap 1, p 46)

Description

Retorna o grupamento textural do solo na secao de controle. Classes (em g kg-1):

- arenosa: areia + areia franca, i.e. (sand_pct - clay_pct) > 70
- media: clay < 35 e sand > 15, exceto arenosa
- argilosa: clay entre 35 e 60
- muito_argilosa: clay > 60
- siltosa: clay < 35 e sand < 15

Usage

```
familia_grupamento_textural(pedon, max_depth_cm = 200)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_depth_cm Profundidade da secao de controle (default 200 cm).

Details

Aplicavel a todas as ordens do SiBCS, exceto Neossolos Quartzarenicos (RQ), nas quais o subgru-
pamento eh mais apropriado.

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p. 46-47; Cap 18, p. 281.

familia_label	<i>Constroi label textual de Familia a partir de classify_sibcs_familia</i>
---------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Concatena os value nao-nulos como string separada por virgulas, conforme orientado no Cap 18, p 281: "as caracteristicas utilizadas para identificacao do 5o nivel categorico devem ser acrescentadas apos a designacao do 4o nivel categorico e separadas desta e entre si por virgula".

Usage

```
familia_label(familia)
```

Arguments

familia Lista de [FamilyAttribute](#), retorno de [classify_sibcs_familia](#).

Value

String com adjetivos compostos separados por ", ", ou vazia se nenhum adjetivo se aplica.

familia_mineralogia_areia	<i>Familia: mineralogia da fracao areia (Cap 18, p 286)</i>
---------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Identifica predominio de minerais facilmente alteraveis na fracao areia ($\geq 0,05$ mm) na secao de controle. Classes:

- micacea: sand_mica_pct ≥ 15 (% volume).
- anfibolitica: sand_amphibole_pct ≥ 15 .
- feldspatica: sand_feldspar_pct ≥ 15 .

Usage

```
familia_mineralogia_areia(pedon, max_depth_cm = 200, threshold = 15)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_depth_cm	Profundidade da secao de controle (default 200).
threshold	Limiar de % volume (default 15).

Details

Quando os percentuais especificos estao ausentes, busca a coluna sand_mineralogy (atalho qualitativo, valores aceitos: "micacea", "anfibolitica", "feldspatica").

Aplicavel a Cambissolos, Chernossolos, Gleissolos, Luvisolos, Neossolos (excepto Quartzarenicos), Nitossolos, Planossolos, Plintossolos e Vertissolos.

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 18, p 286.

familia_mineralogia_argila_geral

Familia: mineralogia da fracao argila (geral, nao-Latossolos)

Description

Classifica a mineralogia da argila para Argissolos, Cambissolos, Plintossolos, Luvisolos, Nitossolos, Vertissolos, Chernossolos, Planossolos, Gleissolos quando ha informacao quantitativa de atividade da argila e/ou Ki/Kr. Cobre as classes nao endereçadas por [familia_mineralogia_argila_latossolo](#):

- esmectitica: $T_{argila} \geq ta_{threshold}$ (default 27 cmolc/kg argila), indicando dominancia de argilas 2:1 expansivas (esmectita / vermiculita / micas hidratadas).
- caulinitica: $Ki \geq ki_{caulinitico_min}$ (default 0.75) e $Kr \geq kr_{caulinitico_min}$ (default 0.75), alem de $T_{argila} < ta_{threshold}$.
- oxidica: $Kr < kr_{caulinitico_min}$, indicando predominancia de oxihidrooxidos de Fe e Al.
- mista: nenhum dos outros gates fechou conclusivamente – evidencia heterogenea ou incompleta.

Quando os tres atributos (T_{argila} , Ki , Kr) estiverem ausentes, o resultado fica NULL e os atributos faltantes sao reportados.

Usage

```
familia_mineralogia_argila_geral(
  pedon,
  max_depth_cm = 200,
  ta_threshold = 27,
  ki_caulinitico_min = 0.75,
  kr_caulinitico_min = 0.75
)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_depth_cm Profundidade da secao de controle (default 200).

ta_threshold Limite cmolc/kg argila para esmectitica (default 27).

ki_caulinitico_min Limite Ki para caulinitica (default 0.75).

kr_caulinitico_min Limite Kr para caulinitica vs oxidica (default 0.75).

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 18, p 286-287.

familia_mineralogia_argila_latossolo

Familia: mineralogia da fracao argila para Latossolos (Cap 18, p 286-287)

Description

Classifica via $Ki = SiO_2/(Al_2O_3)$ e $Kr = SiO_2/(Al_2O_3 + Fe_2O_3)$ molares (helpers [compute_ki](#) / [compute_kr](#)):

- caulinitico: $Ki > 0.75$ e $Kr > 0.75$
- caulinitico-oxidico: $Ki > 0.75$ e $Kr \leq 0.75$
- gibsitico-oxidico: $Ki \leq 0.75$ e $Kr \leq 0.75$
- oxidico: $Kr \leq 0.75$ (predominio $Fe_2O_3 + Al_2O_3$)

Usage

```
familia_mineralogia_argila_latossolo(pedon, max_depth_cm = 200)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_depth_cm Profundidade da secao de controle (default 200).

Details

Aplicavel principalmente para Latossolos; tambem pode ser usado em Argissolos, Cambissolos e Plintossolos quando ha informacao de mineralogia da argila pelo menos semiquantitativa.

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 18, p 286-287.

familia_organossolo_espessura

*Familia: espessura > 100 cm de material organico em Organossolos
(Cap 18, p 287)*

Description

Retorna "espesso" quando a soma das espessuras de camadas organicas a partir da superficie excede 100 cm (Cap 18 p 287: "Organossolos com mais de 100 cm de material organico a partir da sua superficie").

Usage

```
familia_organossolo_espessura(pedon, min_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_cm Default 100 cm.

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 18, p 287.

familia_organossolo_lenhosidade

Familia: lenhosidade em Organossolos (Cap 18, p 288)

Description

Classifica a presença de galhos / fragmentos de troncos > 2 cm em camadas orgânicas, "a semelhança do utilizado para qualificar as classes de pedregosidade" (Cap 18 p 288):

- lenhoso: $10\% \leq \text{woody_fragments} < 30\%$
- muito lenhoso: $30\% \leq \text{woody_fragments} \leq 50\%$
- extremamente lenhoso: $\text{woody_fragments} > 50\%$

(Limites adotados a partir das classes de pedregosidade, Santos et al. 2015.)

Usage

familia_organossolo_lenhosidade(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 18, p 288.

familia_organossolo_material_subjacente

Familia: material subjacente em Organossolos (Cap 18, p 287)

Description

Identifica a textura da primeira camada não-orgânica abaixo das camadas orgânicas, na secção de controle. Retorna o agrupamento textural daquele material como adjetivo (e.g. "arenoso", "argiloso").

Usage

familia_organossolo_material_subjacente(pedon, max_depth_cm = 200)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_depth_cm Profundidade da secao de controle (default 200).

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 18, p 287.

familia_oxidos_ferro *Familia: teor de oxidos de ferro (Cap 1, p 42)*

Description

Classifica pelo teor de Fe₂O₃ (g/kg de solo, equivalente a fe₂o₃_sulfuric_pct * 10) na maior parte do horizonte B:

- hipoferrico: < 80 g/kg (= < 8%)
- mesoferrico: 80 - 180 g/kg ([8%, 18%))
- ferrico: 180 - 360 g/kg ([18%, 36%))
- perferrico: >= 360 g/kg (>= 36%)

Usage

```
familia_oxidos_ferro(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_depth_cm Profundidade da secao de controle (default 150).

Details

Aplicavel a Argissolos, Cambissolos, Chernossolos, Latossolos, Neossolos Litolicos, Neossolos Regoliticos, Nitossolos e Plintossolos. Quando o atributo ja foi considerado em nivel categorico mais alto (e.g. Latossolos Eutroferricos / Distroferricos / Acriferricos), o motor de Familia pula esta dimensao.

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p 42.

familia_prefixo_profundidade

Familia: prefixo de profundidade epi-/meso-/endo- (Cap 18, p 284-285)

Description

Classifica a profundidade onde um diagnostico ocorre em um dos tres prefixos:

- epi-: topo da primeira camada que satisfaz < 50 cm
- meso-: topo da primeira camada em $[50, 100)$ cm
- endo-: topo da primeira camada em ≥ 100 cm

Usage

```
familia_prefixo_profundidade(diag, horizons)
```

Arguments

diag	Um DiagnosticResult com layers (indices de horizontes que satisfazem o atributo).
horizons	data.table de horizontes do pedon.

Details

Wrapper generico para ser usado com qualquer [DiagnosticResult](#). Retorna NULL se o diagnostico nao passou ou se nao ha camadas identificadas.

Value

String "epi" / "meso" / "endo" ou NULL.

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 18, p 284-285.

familia_saturacao_aluminio

Familia: saturacao por aluminio – "alico" (Cap 18, p 285)

Description

Aplica o termo "alico" quando, em qualquer camada do horizonte B (ou C, na ausencia de B):

- $al_sat_pct \geq 50\%$ (saturacao por Al = $100 * Al / (S + Al)$),
- E $al_cmol > 0.5$ cmol/kg.

Quando aplicavel, o prefixo de profundidade (epi-/meso-/endo-) eh determinado pelo topo da primeira camada que satisfaz, e concatenado ao adjetivo: "epialico", "mesoalico", "endoalico".

Usage

```
familia_saturacao_aluminio(pedon, min_al_sat = 50, min_al_cmol = 0.5)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_al_sat	Default 50.
min_al_cmol	Default 0.5.

Details

Aplicavel a classes cujo carater aluminio nao tenha sido considerado em nivel categorico mais alto (p.ex. Argissolos Aluminicos ja o usam).

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#) com value igual a "epialico" / "mesoalico" / "endoalico" ou NULL.

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 18, p 285.

familia_saturacao_bases

Familia: saturacao por bases (Cap 18, p 285)

Description

Retorna "eutrofico" ($V \geq 50\%$) ou "distrofico" ($V < 50\%$) baseado na media ponderada de bs_pct na secao de controle. Pode ser combinado com prefixos epi-/meso-/endo- via familia_prefixo_profundidade.

Usage

familia_saturacao_bases(pedon, max_depth_cm = 150, threshold = 50)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_depth_cm	Profundidade da secao de controle (default 150 cm; p. 31 do SiBCS define a secao de controle dos Argissolos / Latossolos como 0-150 cm de B).
threshold	Limiar de eutrofico (default 50%).

Details

Aplicavel a todas as classes que ainda nao consideram saturacao por bases em nivel categorico mais alto (p.ex. Latossolos Eutroficos / Distroficos ja a consideram).

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 1, p 31; Cap 18, p 285.

familia_subgrupoamento_textural

Familia: subgrupoamento textural (Cap 18, p 283; em validacao)

Description

Subgrupoamento textural mais detalhado, aplicavel em substituicao ao grupoamento para Espodosolos, Latossolos psamiticos, Neossolos Fluviicos Psamiticos, Neossolos Regoliticos, Neossolos Quartzarenicos, e SGs arenicos / espessarenicos de Argissolos / Luvissolos / Planossolos / Plintossolos. Tambem em solos com textura arenosa e/ou media.

Usage

```
familia_subgrupamento_textural(pedon, max_depth_cm = 200)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 max_depth_cm Profundidade da secao de controle (default 200 cm).

Details

Classes (em g kg-1; referidas a media ponderada da secao de controle):

- muito_arenosa: classe textural areia (sand >= 85)
- arenosa-media: classe textural areia franca (sand >= 70 e <= 91; clay <= 15)
- media-arenosa: francoarenosa, sand > 52
- media-argilosa: franco-argiloarenosa (clay 20-35, sand >= 45)
- media-siltosa: clay < 35 e sand > 15, excluindo as 4 classes acima
- siltosa: clay < 35 e sand < 15
- argilosa: clay 35-60
- muito_argilosa: clay > 60

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 18, p. 283.

familia_tipo_horizonte_superficial

Familia: tipo de horizonte diagnostico superficial (Cap 2)

Description

Retorna o tipo do horizonte A (ou H/O) presente, em ordem de precedencia: historico > chernozemico > humico > proeminente > moderado > fraco. Se nenhum diagnostico passa, retorna NULL.

Usage

```
familia_tipo_horizonte_superficial(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Aplica-se a TODAS as classes de solo, exceto para aquelas que ja consideram o tipo de A em nivel categorico mais alto (e.g. Chernossolos, Organossolos, Neossolos Litolicos Humicos / Histicos).

Value

[FamilyAttribute](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 2 (p 49-54); Cap 18, p 284.

FamilyAttribute	<i>Classe S4-like para atributos de Familia (5o nivel SiBCS)</i>
-----------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Classe S4-like para atributos de Familia (5o nivel SiBCS)

Classe S4-like para atributos de Familia (5o nivel SiBCS)

Details

Estrutura categorica (em vez de booleana) que representa um adjetivo composto da Familia. value eh o adjetivo atribuido (string) ou NULL quando a dimensao nao se aplica ou nao foi possivel determinar.

Public fields

name Nome da dimensao (e.g. "grupamento_textural").

value Adjetivo atribuido (e.g. "argilosa") ou NULL.

evidence Lista nomeada com valores intermediarios.

missing Vetor de colunas necessarias mas indisponiveis.

reference String com referencia bibliografica.

Methods**Public methods:**

- [FamilyAttribute\\$new\(\)](#)
- [FamilyAttribute\\$print\(\)](#)
- [FamilyAttribute\\$clone\(\)](#)

Method `new()`: Build a FamilyAttribute.

Usage:

```
FamilyAttribute$new(
  name,
  value = NULL,
  evidence = list(),
  missing = character(0),
  reference = ""
)
```

Arguments:

`name` Nome da dimensao (e.g. "grupamento_textural").
`value` Adjetivo atribuido (e.g. "argilosa") ou NULL.
`evidence` Lista nomeada com valores intermediarios.
`missing` Vetor de colunas necessarias mas indisponiveis.
`reference` String com referencia bibliografica.

Method `print()`: Pretty-print the attribute.

Usage:

```
FamilyAttribute$print(...)
```

Arguments:

... Ignored (S3 print signature compatibility).

Method `clone()`: The objects of this class are cloneable with this method.

Usage:

```
FamilyAttribute$clone(deep = FALSE)
```

Arguments:

`deep` Whether to make a deep clone.

febr_index_munsell *Curated index of FEBR datasets that carry Munsell colors*

Description

Returns a data.frame listing FEBR dataset IDs that have at least one Munsell-related column populated in their camada table, with metadata: `n_horizons`, `n_finite_munsell`, `coverage`, `column_pattern`.

Usage

```
febr_index_munsell(min_coverage = 0.1, refresh = FALSE, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

<code>min_coverage</code>	Drop datasets whose Munsell coverage (fraction of horizons with non-NA hue) is below this. Default 0.1.
<code>refresh</code>	Logical. If TRUE, re-scan FEBR over the network instead of using the bundled May-2026 cache.
<code>verbose</code>	If TRUE (default), prints a one-line summary.

Details

Backed by a precomputed cache shipped in `R/sysdata.rda` (`.FEBR_MUNSELL_INDEX`; results of the May 2026 scan over 249 datasets). On first call after install, returns the cache instantly. Pass `refresh = TRUE` to re-scan FEBR live (slow, network-dependent; updates the in-memory copy but does not modify the bundled cache).

Value

A `data.frame` sorted by `n_finite_munsell` descending.

See Also

[read_febr_pedons](#).

ferralic

Ferralic horizon (WRB 2022)

Description

Tests whether any horizon meets the ferralic horizon criteria. The ferralic horizon is a subsurface horizon resulting from long and intense weathering, characterized by very low cation exchange capacity per unit clay – the canonical "low-activity clay" signal that defines the Ferralsol RSG.

Usage

```
ferralic(pedon, min_thickness = 30, max_cec = NULL, engine = NULL)
```

Arguments

<code>pedon</code>	A PedonRecord .
<code>min_thickness</code>	Minimum thickness in cm (default 30).
<code>max_cec</code>	Maximum CEC (1M NH ₄ OAc, pH 7) per kg clay (default NULL = 16 in soilkey engine, 20 in aqp engine; see engine).
<code>engine</code>	One of "soilkey" (default; strict 16 cmol _c /kg-clay threshold per WRB 2022) or "aqp" (relaxed 20 cmol _c /kg-clay – a regional tolerance that accommodates Brazilian / SOTERLAC Latossolos data, where Embrapa-style Mehlich/Ca+Mg+K+Al sum often reads ~17-20 on profiles that the canonical NRCS / WRB definition would accept as ferralic). NULL reads <code>getOption("soilkey.diagnostic_engine")</code> . The numeric threshold can also be overridden directly via <code>options(soilkey.ferralic_max_cec = ...)</code> .

Details

Sub-tests called:

- [test_ferralic_texture](#) – texture sandy loam or finer.
- [test_cec_per_clay](#) – CEC / clay ≤ 16 (or 20 under engine = "aqp") cmol_c/kg clay.
- [test_ferralic_thickness](#) – thickness ≥ 30 cm.

v0.3.1 alignment with WRB 2022 Ch 3.1.10 (p. 44): the older "ECEC ≤ 12 cmol_c/kg clay" gate was removed because it is not in the canonical text – only CEC (1M NH₄OAc, pH 7) ≤ 16 is required.

v0.9.67 regional tolerance: Bdsolos RJ benchmark (n=722 perfis) showed 88/115 Latossolos failing the strict 16-cmol gate because Embrapa lab methodology often reads CEC at 17-20 on profiles that are unambiguously Latossolos by every other criterion. The engine = "aqp" threshold of 20 closes that gap without redefining the WRB threshold itself; users targeting strict WRB 2022 fidelity should keep engine = "soilkey".

The weatherable-mineral test ($\leq 10\%$ by volume), water-dispersible-clay test, and stratification / rock-structure exclusions remain deferred (they need mineralogical data outside the canonical horizon schema) and are refinements rather than gates.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022). *World Reference Base for Soil Resources*, 4th edition. International Union of Soil Sciences, Vienna. Chapter 3.1.10 – Ferralic horizon (p. 44).

ferralsol

Ferralsol RSG gate (WRB 2022 Ch 4, p 110)

Description

WRB-canonical: ferralic horizon ≤ 150 cm AND no argic horizon starting above (or at the upper limit of) the ferralic, UNLESS the argic in its upper 30 cm or throughout has one or more of:

- $< 10\%$ water-dispersible clay; OR
- $\Delta\text{pH} (\text{pH}_{\text{KCl}} - \text{pH}_{\text{water}}) \geq 0$; OR
- $\geq 1.4\%$ soil organic carbon.

v0.3.4 enforces all three exception paths. The ΔpH check uses `ph_kcl` and `ph_h2o`; the WDC check uses `water_dispersible_clay_pct` (introduced in v0.3.3 schema).

Usage

ferralsol(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

ferric *Ferric horizon (WRB 2022)*

Description

A horizon of iron accumulation that does not reach the cementation / redness levels of plinthic. Diagnostic for the Ferric qualifier.

Usage

```
ferric(pedon, min_thickness = 15, min_fe_dith_pct = 5)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 min_thickness Minimum thickness (cm; default 15).
 min_fe_dith_pct Minimum dithionite-extractable iron percent (default 5).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3.1, Ferric horizon.

ferric_subgroup_usda *Ferric Subgroup helper (FerrudalFs) Pass when iron-rich (fe_dcb_pct >= 4%) horizon present in B.*

Description

Ferric Subgroup helper (FerrudalFs) Pass when iron-rich (fe_dcb_pct >= 4%) horizon present in B.

Usage

```
ferric_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

fibrice_p predominant_usda

Fibrice_p predominant_usda: Fibrists Suborder qualifier

Description

Fibrice_p predominant_usda: Fibrists Suborder qualifier

Usage

fibrice_p predominant_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

fibrice_subgroup_usda *Fibrice Subgroup helper (Haplohemists / Haplowassists / Sulfiwassists)*
Pass when fibrice layers cumulative thickness \geq 25 cm in control section below surface tier.

Description

Fibrice Subgroup helper (Haplohemists / Haplowassists / Sulfiwassists) Pass when fibrice layers cumulative thickness \geq 25 cm in control section below surface tier.

Usage

fibrice_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 130)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

fibrico	<i>Material organico fibrico (SiBCS Cap 14)</i>
---------	-------------------------------------------------

Description

Material organico pouco decomposto: $\geq 40\%$ de fibras esfregadas OU indice de von Post H1-H4. Discrimina Organossolos Fibricos no 3o nivel.

Usage

```
fibrico(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 14 (Organossolos), pp 224-226.

fill_from_spectra	<i>Fill missing soil attributes from spectra via OSSL</i>
-------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Given a [PedonRecord](#) carrying a `spectra$vnir` matrix (rows = horizons, columns = wavelengths in nm), pre-processes the spectra, predicts the requested soil properties using the chosen OSSL-backed method, and writes the predictions into the pedon's horizons table via `pedon$add_measurement(..., source = "predicted_spectra")`. Each call updates the pedon's provenance log so that downstream classification can derive an evidence grade.

Usage

```
fill_from_spectra(
  pedon,
  library = "ossl",
  region = c("global", "south_america", "north_america", "europe", "africa"),
  properties = c("clay_pct", "sand_pct", "silt_pct", "cec_cmol", "bs_pct", "ph_h2o",
    "oc_pct", "fe_dcb_pct", "caco3_pct"),
  method = c("mbl", "plsr_local", "pretrained"),
  preprocess = "snv+sg1",
  k_neighbors = 100L,
```

```

    overwrite = FALSE,
    ossl_library = NULL,
    ossl_models = NULL,
    verbose = TRUE
)

```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord with a spectra\$vnir matrix.
library	Currently only "ossl" is supported.
region	One of "global", "south_america", "north_america", "europe", "africa". Used to subset the OSSL training data when supported by the underlying backend.
properties	Character vector of OSSL-supported property names to predict. Default covers the most-requested WRB/SiBCS-relevant attributes.
method	One of "mbl", "plsr_local", "pretrained".
preprocess	Pre-processing pipeline; passed to preprocess_spectra .
k_neighbors	Number of neighbours for memory-based methods.
overwrite	If FALSE (default), only fill cells whose existing provenance is weaker than predicted_spectra.
ossl_library	Optional OSSL library object (see predict_ossl_mbl).
ossl_models	Optional named list of pretrained models (see predict_ossl_pretrained).
verbose	If TRUE, prints a cli summary.

Details

By default, predicted values do **not** overwrite measured values (the `add_measurement()` authority logic protects them). Setting `overwrite = TRUE` forces overwrite of any non-measured value.

Value

The mutated pedon, invisibly. Provenance entries with `source = "predicted_spectra"` are added per (horizon, property).

See Also

[preprocess_spectra](#), [predict_ossl_mbl](#), [predict_ossl_plsr_local](#), [predict_ossl_pretrained](#), [pi_to_confidence](#).

```
fill_munsell_from_spectra
```

Fill missing Munsell colors on a PedonRecord from Vis-NIR spectra

Description

High-level helper that runs `predict_munsell_from_spectra` per horizon over the Vis-NIR spectra in `pedon$spectra$vnir` and writes the resulting hue / value / chroma back to the matching horizon rows via `pedon$add_measurement(..., source = "predicted_spectra")`.

Usage

```
fill_munsell_from_spectra(pedon, overwrite = FALSE, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

<code>pedon</code>	A <code>PedonRecord</code> that has <code>\$spectra\$vnir</code> populated (rows = horizons, cols = wavelengths).
<code>overwrite</code>	If TRUE, overwrite existing Munsell measurements. Default FALSE (only fills horizons whose Munsell is currently NA).
<code>verbose</code>	If TRUE (default), prints a per-horizon summary.

Details

This is the operational answer to the v0.9.35 Argissolo color confusion: when surveyor Munsell colors are missing and the user has Vis-NIR (e.g. from OSSL), call this helper, then re-run `classify_sibcs` – the v0.9.45 "color-undetermined" fallback will lift, and the classification will descend to `subordem / grande grupo / subgrupo` with proper `evidence_grade`.

Value

The pedon, invisibly. Provenance entries with `source = "predicted_spectra"` are appended.

```
fluvaquentic_usda
```

Fluvaquentic Subgroup helper (irregular OC decrease + aquic)

Description

Pass when:

- Irregular decrease in organic carbon between 25 cm and 125 cm (or to a densic/lithic/paralithic contact); AND
- Aquic conditions in some horizon within 75 cm (`aquic_conditions_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 75)`).

Usage

fluvaquentic_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation: tests whether OC values are non-monotonic (some upward variation) within 25-125 cm.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 9.

fluvent_qualifying_usda

Fluvent Suborder qualifier (irregular OC decrease in 25-125 cm, OR layered alluvial designation).

Description

Fluvent Suborder qualifier (irregular OC decrease in 25-125 cm, OR layered alluvial designation).

Usage

fluvent_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

fluventic_usda	<i>Fluventic Subgroup helper (irregular OC decrease, NO aquic req.)</i>
----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Fluventic Subgroup helper (irregular OC decrease, NO aquic req.)

Usage

```
fluventic_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

fluvic_material	<i>Fluvic material (WRB 2022)</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------------

Description

Tests whether the profile shows fluvic material features: alternating textures across consecutive horizons within the upper 100 cm AND an irregular (non-monotone) organic carbon pattern with depth. Diagnostic of Fluvisols.

Usage

```
fluvic_material(pedon, max_top_cm = 100, min_clay_swing = 8)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Maximum top depth (cm) considered (default 100).
min_clay_swing	Minimum absolute clay-percent change between consecutive layers required to count as alternation (default 8 percentage points).

Details

Sub-test: [test_fluvic_stratification](#).

v0.3 limitations: WRB 2022 fluvic material also requires age (typically <100 years for sediment freshness), which v0.3 does not check (no temporal fields in the schema). The stratification proxy is conservative – truly heterogeneous floodplain profiles with dramatic texture swings will pass; subtle alluvial sequences may miss. v0.4 will refine.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3, Fluvic material.

folist_qualifying_usda

Folists Suborder qualifier (KST 13ed, Ch 10, p 200)

Description

Histosols saturated for less than 30 days per year (and not artificially drained). Implementation: pass when there is no aquic conditions and no glei designation in the upper 50 cm.

Usage

folist_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

folistic_epipedon_usda

Folistic epipedon (USDA Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition)

Description

A freely-drained surface organic horizon. Differs from the histic epipedon in that it is saturated for less than 30 days per year. Diagnostic for the Folists suborder of Histosols and the Folistels great group of Histels.

Usage

folistic_epipedon_usda(pedon, min_oc_pct = 12, min_thickness_cm = 15)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_oc_pct	Minimum OC for organic soil material (default 12).
min_thickness_cm	Minimum thickness (default 15 cm).

Details

KST 13ed required characteristics (Ch. 3, pp 13-14):

- Saturated < 30 days/year (and not artificially drained); AND
- Organic soil material: 15+ cm thick (with Sphagnum-rich exception 20-60 cm) OR Ap with OC \geq 8 percent.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, pp 13-14.

folistic_subgroup_usda

Folistic Subgroup helper (folistic_epipedon present)

Description

Folistic Subgroup helper (folistic_epipedon present)

Usage

folistic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

format_wrb_name	<i>Format a WRB 2022 soil name with qualifiers</i>
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------

Description

Format a WRB 2022 soil name with qualifiers

Usage

```
format_wrb_name(
  rsg_name,
  principal = character(0),
  supplementary = character(0)
)
```

Arguments

rsg_name	Full RSG name (e.g. "Ferralsols").
principal	Character vector of principal-qualifier names.
supplementary	Character vector of supplementary-qualifier names (default empty in v0.9).

Value

Formatted string per Ch 6 p 154 ("Rhodic Ferralsol (Clayic, Humic, Dystric)").

fragic	<i>Fragic horizon (WRB 2022): a high-bulk-density horizon with restricted rooting. v0.3.3: detects via bulk_density_g_cm3 >= 1.65 AND structure grade massive/very firm OR designation pattern x/Bx.</i>
--------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Fragic horizon (WRB 2022): a high-bulk-density horizon with restricted rooting. v0.3.3: detects via bulk_density_g_cm3 >= 1.65 AND structure grade massive/very firm OR designation pattern x/Bx.

Usage

```
fragic(pedon, min_thickness = 15, min_bd = 1.65)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_bd	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

fragipa	<i>Fragipa (SiBCS Cap 2, p 73-74; v0.7)</i>
---------	---------------------------------------------

Description

Reuso de [fragic](#) (WRB v0.3.3): horizonte subsuperficial endurecido quando seco, baixa MO, BD elevada, quebradicidade.

Usage

```
fragipa(pedon, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
...	Reserved for future arguments.

fragipan_usda	<i>Fragipan (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, p 38)</i>
---------------	---------------------------------------------

Description

Pass when a horizon has fragic soil properties:

- rupture_resistance class >= "firm" (firm, very firm, extremely firm); OR
- NASIS peddiagfeatures has a "Fragipan" entry (v0.9.31: the surveyor's field-identified fragipan – direct evidence, used as a tie-breaker when rupture_resistance is missing from the lab data); AND
- thickness >= 15 cm.

KSSL pedons rarely carry rupture_resistance; NASIS peddiagfeatures carries 13 500 entries including "Fragipan" tags from surveyors. v0.9.31 adds the NASIS path so fragipan can be detected on KSSL+ NASIS pedons (closing the Fragiudults / Fragiudalfs / Fragiaqualfs confusion documented in the v0.9.25 Great Group analysis).

Usage

```
fragipan_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Default 100.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

frasic_qualifying_usda

FraSiwAssists Subgroup helper (Wassists)

Description

Pass when $ec_dS_m < 0.6$ (1:5 soil:water) in all horizons within 100 cm. KST 13ed, Ch 10, p 203.

Usage

```
frasic_qualifying_usda(pedon, max_ec = 0.6, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_ec	Default 0.6.
max_top_cm	Default 100.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

from_aqp

Convert an aqp SoilProfileCollection back to a list of PedonRecord

Description

Inverse of [as_aqp](#). Walks each profile in the SPC, renames aqp's canonical horizon column names back to soilKey's (top -> top_cm, name -> designation, clay -> clay_pct, ...), assembles a [PedonRecord](#) per profile, and returns the list.

Usage

```
from_aqp(spc)
```

Arguments

spc	A <code>aqp::SoilProfileCollection</code> .
-----	---------------------------------------------

Details

Round-trip property: `from_aqp(as_aqp(pedon))` reproduces pedon modulo column ordering.

Value

A list of [PedonRecord](#) objects (`length = length(spc)`).

See Also

[as_aqp](#), the forward conversion.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("aqp", quietly = TRUE)) {
  pedons <- list(make_ferralsol_canonical(), make_luvisol_canonical())
  spc <- as_aqp(pedons)
  pedons2 <- from_aqp(spc)
  identical(pedons[[1]]$horizons$clay_pct, pedons2[[1]]$horizons$clay_pct)
  #> [1] TRUE
}
```

fulvic_andisol_usda	<i>Fulvic Andisols: similar to melanic but with melanic_index > 1.70 (more humic acid). v0.8: detected via OC >= 6 in cumulative 30 cm but WITHOUT melanic_epipedon (since melanic requires index <= 1.70).</i>
---------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Fulvic Andisols: similar to melanic but with melanic_index > 1.70 (more humic acid). v0.8: detected via OC >= 6 in cumulative 30 cm but WITHOUT melanic_epipedon (since melanic requires index <= 1.70).

Usage

```
fulvic_andisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

gelisol_usda	<i>Gelisols (USDA Cap 9): gelic conditions / permafrost.</i>
--------------	--------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Order-level gate: cryic_conditions diagnostic from WRB delegated + optional permafrost_temp_C if available.

Usage

```
gelisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

glacic_layer_usda *Glacic layer (USDA Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition)*

Description

"A glacic layer is massive ice or ground ice in the form of ice lenses or wedges. The layer is 30 cm or more thick and contains 75 percent or more visible ice." – KST 13ed, Ch 3, p 45.

Usage

```
glacic_layer_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100, min_thickness_cm = 30)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_top_cm Maximum top depth (default 100 cm; subgroup-level depth bound).

min_thickness_cm Minimum thickness (default 30 cm).

Details

Diagnostic for the Glacistels great group of Histels and the Glacic subgroup modifier in Gelisols.

Implementation (v0.8.x): Detected via designation containing 'ff' (massive ice) per KST notation, with thickness \geq 30 cm. Refinement to use an ice_pct schema column is deferred to v0.9.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, p 45.

gleissolo	<i>Gleissolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 112-113; conceito Cap 3, p 91-93)</i>
-----------	---------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Horizonte glei iniciando ≤ 50 cm OR entre 50-150 cm imediatamente subjacente a A/E ou H histórico (com espessura insuficiente para Organossolo), sem horizonte plintico/concrecionario/litoplintico dentro de 200 cm.

Usage

gleissolo(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

gleissolo_haplico	<i>Gleissolos Haplicos (catch-all).</i>
-------------------	-----------------------------------------

Description

Gleissolos Haplicos (catch-all).

Usage

gleissolo_haplico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

gleissolo_melanico	<i>Gleissolos Melanicos (Cap 9): horizonte histórico < 40 cm OR A humico, proeminente, chernozemico.</i>
--------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Gleissolos Melanicos (Cap 9): horizonte histórico < 40 cm OR A humico, proeminente, chernozemico.

Usage

gleissolo_melanico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

gleissolo_salico *Gleissolos Salicos (Cap 9): caracter salico em < 100 cm.*

Description

Gleissolos Salicos (Cap 9): caracter salico em < 100 cm.

Usage

gleissolo_salico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

gleissolo_tiomorfico *Gleissolos Tiomorficos (Cap 9): materiais sulfidricos OR horizonte sulfurico em < 100 cm.*

Description

Gleissolos Tiomorficos (Cap 9): materiais sulfidricos OR horizonte sulfurico em < 100 cm.

Usage

gleissolo_tiomorfico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

gleyc_properties *Gleyic properties (WRB 2022)*

Description

Tests whether the profile shows gleyic properties – evidence of prolonged saturation by groundwater – within the upper 50 cm. Gleyic properties are diagnostic for Gleysols and qualify many other RSGs (Endogleyic, Epigleyic qualifiers).

Usage

```
gleyic_properties(
  pedon,
  max_top_cm = 50,
  min_redox_pct = 5,
  stagnic_decay_factor = 3
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Maximum top depth (cm) of a candidate layer (default 50, per WRB 2022).
min_redox_pct	Minimum redoximorphic_features_pct (default 5).
stagnic_decay_factor	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

Details

Sub-test: [test_gleyic_features](#) – requires explicit redoximorphic_features_pct $\geq 5\%$ within the upper 50 cm.

v0.2 deliberately does NOT use the Munsell-based shortcut (chroma $\leq 2 + \text{value} \geq 4$) as a primary criterion: that pattern fits albic / bleached horizons of Podzols just as well as truly reduced gleyic horizons. v0.3 will add reductimorphic / oxidimorphic feature discrimination once we model field-described mottle properties. v0.9.72 adds the designation-suffix path (opt-in).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

v0.9.72 designation morphological inference (opt-in)

Field-described Brazilian Gleissolos profiles (e.g. the Embrapa Redape curated dataset) routinely encode gleyic properties via the designation suffix g (e.g. Cg, Cg1, Cgn, Apg) plus low-chroma Munsell colours (chroma ≤ 2), without recording redoximorphic_features_pct as a numeric percent. The strict canonical test then returns NA on every horizon and Gleissolos cascade to other Orders.

With `options(soilKey.gleyic_designation_inference = TRUE)` the function accepts a layer as gleyic when:

1. the canonical redoximorphic_features_pct test is NA for that layer, AND
2. the designation matches `[A-Z]+g[0-9a-z]?` (a horizon name with a g suffix in the master letter sequence, e.g. Cg, Bg2, Apg, Cgn), AND
3. the layer has `munsell_chroma_moist` ≤ 2 (low-chroma reduced colour) when Munsell is recorded; if Munsell is missing on the layer the suffix alone is sufficient (designation suffix is the most direct signal of pedologist field judgment).

This is conservative: the suffix g is a master-letter modifier in the FAO/Embrapa horizon nomenclature that explicitly means "gleyic-affected" – the curator already made the call. Default is FALSE (canonical behaviour preserved).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3, Gleyic properties.

gleysol

Gleysol RSG gate (WRB 2022 Ch 4, p 103)

Description

WRB-canonical (multi-path):

1. Layer ≥ 25 cm starting ≤ 40 cm with gleyic properties throughout AND reducing conditions in some parts of every sublayer; OR
2. Mollic/umbric > 40 cm thick with reducing conditions some parts of every sublayer 40 cm below mineral surface to lower limit, AND directly underneath a layer ≥ 10 cm with lower limit ≥ 65 cm having gleyic properties + reducing conditions; OR
3. Permanent saturation by water ≤ 40 cm.

v0.3.4 enforces path 1 (the dominant path) and path 3 via designation (W / saturated marker). Path 2 is deferred (requires a depth-of- saturation column that's not standard).

Usage

gleysol(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

glossic_subgroup_usda *Glossic Subgroup helper (Glossaqualfs, Glossocryalfs, Glossudalfs) Pass when interfingering of albic materials into argillic horizon is detected. v0.8 proxy: albic + argillic + lateral chroma ≤ 2 on argillic boundary.*

Description

Glossic Subgroup helper (Glossaqualfs, Glossocryalfs, Glossudalfs) Pass when interfingering of albic materials into argillic horizon is detected. v0.8 proxy: albic + argillic + lateral chroma ≤ 2 on argillic boundary.

Usage

glossic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

grapes-or-or-grapes *Default-value-for-NULL operator*

Description

Returns the left-hand side if it is non-NULL, otherwise the right-hand side. Re-exported so that downstream code can use the same idiom soilKey itself uses internally.

Usage

a %||% b

Arguments

a The candidate value.
b The fallback used when a is NULL.

Value

Either a or b.

grossarenic_subgroup_usda
Grossarenic Subgroup helper: sandy throughout, spodic >= 125 cm.

Description

Grossarenic Subgroup helper: sandy throughout, spodic >= 125 cm.

Usage

grossarenic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

GSM_DEPTHS	<i>Default GlobalSoilMap depth intervals (cm)</i>
------------	---------------------------------------------------

Description

GSM standard per Arrouays et al. (2014) "GlobalSoilMap: Toward a fine-resolution global grid of soil properties". Boundaries: 0-5, 5-15, 15-30, 30-60, 60-100, 100-200 cm.

Usage

GSM_DEPTHS

Format

An object of class `numeric` of length 7.

<code>gypsic</code>	<i>Gypsic horizon (WRB 2022)</i>
---------------------	----------------------------------

Description

Tests whether any horizon meets the gypsic horizon criteria. The gypsic horizon is a horizon of secondary gypsum accumulation, diagnostic for Gypsisols.

Usage

```
gypsic(pedon, min_thickness = 15, min_gypsum_pct = 5)
```

Arguments

`pedon` A [PedonRecord](#).
`min_thickness` Minimum thickness in cm (default 15).
`min_gypsum_pct` Minimum gypsum percent in fine earth (default 5).

Details

Sub-tests called:

- [test_caso4_concentration](#) – gypsum \geq 5%.
- [test_minimum_thickness](#) – thickness \geq 15 cm.

v0.2 limitations: the WRB rule that gypsum content must exceed the underlying horizon by 1% (absolute) is not enforced. Petrogypsic (cemented) horizons are not yet detected. Both deferred to v0.3.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022). *World Reference Base for Soil Resources*, 4th edition. International Union of Soil Sciences, Vienna. Chapter 3 – Gypsic horizon.

gypsic_horizon_usda *Gypsic horizon (USDA, delegates to WRB gypsic).*

Description

Gypsic horizon (USDA, delegates to WRB gypsic).

Usage

```
gypsic_horizon_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

gypsic_subgroup_usda *Gypsic Subgroup helper – delegates to gypsic_horizon_usda.*

Description

Gypsic Subgroup helper – delegates to gypsic_horizon_usda.

Usage

```
gypsic_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

gypsiric_material	<i>Gypsiric material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.7): $\geq 5\%$ gypsum that is primary (not secondary). Without a "secondary fraction" schema column, v0.3.3 treats any layer with caso4_pct ≥ 5 as gypsiric unless it explicitly carries gypsic-horizon designation.</i>
-------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Gypsiric material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.7): $\geq 5\%$ gypsum that is primary (not secondary). Without a "secondary fraction" schema column, v0.3.3 treats any layer with caso4_pct ≥ 5 as gypsiric unless it explicitly carries gypsic-horizon designation.

Usage

```
gypsiric_material(pedon, min_caso4_pct = 5)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_caso4_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

halaquept_qualifying_usda	<i>Halic helper for Halaquepts Pass when EC ≥ 8 dS/m within 100 cm.</i>
---------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Halic helper for Halaquepts Pass when EC ≥ 8 dS/m within 100 cm.

Usage

```
halaquept_qualifying_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

halic_subgroup_usda *Halic Subgroup helper (Haplosaprists)*

Description

Pass when EC \geq 30 dS/m through a 30+ cm layer for 6+ months (KST 13ed, Ch 10). v0.8 proxy: any layer with ec_dS_m \geq 30.

Usage

```
halic_subgroup_usda(pedon, min_ec = 30, min_thickness_cm = 30)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_ec	Default 30.
min_thickness_cm	Default 30.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

harmonize_to_gsm *Harmonise pedons to GlobalSoilMap depth intervals*

Description

Runs `mpspline2::mpspline_tidy()` on each requested numeric horizon attribute, producing a new `PedonRecord` per input pedon whose horizons table covers the canonical GSM intervals ([GSM_DEPTHS](#)). Categorical attributes (designation, Munsell hue) are propagated by mode-over-depth-overlap.

Usage

```
harmonize_to_gsm(
  pedons,
  attributes = c("clay_pct", "silt_pct", "sand_pct", "ph_h2o", "oc_pct", "cec_cmol",
    "base_saturation_pct", "munsell_value_moist", "munsell_chroma_moist",
    "redoximorphic_features_pct"),
  depths = GSM_DEPTHS,
  lam = 0.1,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

pedons	A list of PedonRecord objects.
attributes	Character vector of numeric horizon column names to harmonise. Default covers the chemistry / texture / Munsell numeric columns the soilKey diagnostics use.
depths	Numeric vector of GSM depth boundaries (n+1 values for n intervals). Default GSM_DEPTHS .
lam	Smoothing parameter for the spline (default 0.1, per Bishop et al. 1999 recommendation).
verbose	If TRUE (default), emits cli progress.

Value

A list of new [PedonRecord](#) objects with harmonised horizons.

Why mass-preserving

The Bishop et al. (1999) spline conserves the integral of the attribute over depth: if the original pedon has 30 g/kg OC over 0-15 cm, the harmonised pedon will report 30 g/kg integrated over 0-15 cm (split between 0-5 and 5-15 in proportion to the spline-implied gradient). This is a critical property for benchmark integrity: simple linear interpolation does not preserve mass and biases means upward / downward systematically.

Categorical handling

designation and munsell_hue_moist (and other character columns in the horizon schema) cannot be splined. Instead, for each target GSM interval, we pick the modal value weighted by the depth-overlap fraction with the input horizons. Ties broken by uppermost-input-horizon precedence.

References

Bishop, T.F.A., McBratney, A.B., Laslett, G.M. (1999). "Modelling soil attribute depth functions with equal-area quadratic smoothing splines." *Geoderma* 91: 27-45.

Arrouays, D. et al. (2014). "GlobalSoilMap: Toward a fine-resolution global grid of soil properties." *Advances in Agronomy* 125: 93-134.

See Also

`mpspline2::mpspline_tidy`, [GSM_DEPTHS](#).

hemico_subgroup_usda *Hemic Subgroup helper*

Description

Hemic Subgroup helper

Usage

```
hemico_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 130)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

hemico *Material organico hemico (SiBCS Cap 14)*

Description

Material organico em decomposicao intermediaria: 17-40% de fibras esfregadas OU indice de von Post H5-H6. Discrimina Organossolos Hemicos no 3o nivel.

Usage

```
hemico(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 14 (Organossolos), pp 224-226.

histel_qualifying_usda

Histels Suborder qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed)

Description

Pass when a Gelisol has organic soil materials that:

- Total \geq 40 cm cumulative thickness within 0-50 cm; OR
- Comprise \geq 80% (by volume) of 0-50 cm.

KST 13ed, Ch 9, p 189 (item AA in Key to Suborders).

Usage

histel_qualifying_usda(pedon, min_thickness_cm = 40, max_top_cm = 50)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness_cm	Default 40.
max_top_cm	Default 50.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 9, p 189.

histic_epipedon_usda *Histic epipedon (USDA Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition)*

Description

A surface horizon (or layers within 40 cm of the surface) that is periodically saturated with water and has sufficiently high organic carbon to be considered organic soil material. Diagnostic for the Histosols order, the Histels suborder of Gelisols, and the Hist- modifier in many other taxa.

Usage

```
histic_epipedon_usda(
  pedon,
  min_oc_pct = 12,
  min_thickness_cm = 20,
  min_ap_oc_pct = 8
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_oc_pct	Minimum organic carbon percent for organic soil material (default 12; equivalent to ~20% organic matter per KST conversion factor 0.58).
min_thickness_cm	Minimum thickness (default 20 cm).
min_ap_oc_pct	Minimum OC for the Ap-horizon shortcut (default 8 percent).

Details

KST 13ed required characteristics (Ch. 3, pp 13-15):

- Saturated 30+ days/year (or artificially drained); AND
- Organic soil material that is either:
 - 20-60 cm thick AND (Sphagnum \geq 75 percent OR bulk_density $<$ 0.1 g/cm³); OR
 - 20-40 cm thick (general); OR
- OR Ap horizon mixed to 25 cm with OC \geq 8 percent by weight.

Implementation notes (v0.8.x):

- Saturation is detected via a horizon designation starting with H (per KST notation) or via the WRB `horizonte_glei` as fallback when redoximorphic features are present.
- Sphagnum content uses the WRB `fiber_content_rubbed_pct` column (\geq 75 means very fibrous); refinement to a true Sphagnum-specific column is deferred.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022). *Keys to Soil Taxonomy*, 13th edition, USDA-NRCS, Washington DC. Ch. 3, pp. 13-15.

histic_horizon	<i>Histic horizon (WRB 2022)</i>
----------------	----------------------------------

Description

A surface (or near-surface, after drainage) horizon of organic material; diagnostic of Histosols. Two alternative qualifying paths per WRB 2022:

- **Contiguous:** a single layer of organic material (OC % \geq min_oc) reaching the surface and at least min_thickness cm thick (default 10 cm).
- **Cumulative:** organic material totalling cumulative_min_cm cm (default 40) within the upper cumulative_max_depth_cm (default 80). Relevant for folic / mossy Histosols on slopes.

Either path qualifies. The "after drainage" qualifier (recently drained organic soils) is treated as implicit since the same OC and thickness criteria apply.

Usage

```
histic_horizon(
  pedon,
  min_thickness = 10,
  min_oc = 12,
  surface_top_cm = 0,
  cumulative_min_cm = 40,
  cumulative_max_depth_cm = 80
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Minimum thickness (cm) for the contiguous path (default 10).
min_oc	Minimum organic carbon % (default 12, WRB 2022; equivalent to \geq 20% organic matter).
surface_top_cm	Maximum top depth (cm) for a layer to be considered "surface-related" in the contiguous path (default 0).
cumulative_min_cm	Minimum cumulative thickness (cm) for the cumulative path (default 40).
cumulative_max_depth_cm	Depth window (cm) for the cumulative path (default 80).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3, Histic horizon and organic material.

histic_subgroup_usda *Histic Subgroup helper (in Spodosols, Aquods) Pass when histic_epipedon_usda passes.*

Description

Histic Subgroup helper (in Spodosols, Aquods) Pass when histic_epipedon_usda passes.

Usage

histic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

histosol_qualifying_usda

Histosols Order qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed, Ch 2, p 7)

Description

Organic soils not meeting the Gelisols requirements (no permafrost within 100 cm). The KST defines Histosols as soils with organic soil materials that meet specific thickness/depth criteria (Ch 2, pp 7-9; see also Ch 3 organic soil materials).

Usage

histosol_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation: pass when cumulative organic-layer thickness (designation H or O) within 0-100 cm \geq 40 cm AND no permafrost within 100 cm.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 2, pp 7-9.

histosol_usda	<i>Histosols (USDA Cap 10): organic materials \geq 40 cm in 0-100. Refined v0.8.4 – now uses histosol_qualifying_usda (40 cm threshold) instead of WRB histic_horizon (10 cm).</i>
---------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Histosols (USDA Cap 10): organic materials \geq 40 cm in 0-100. Refined v0.8.4 – now uses histosol_qualifying_usda (40 cm threshold) instead of WRB histic_horizon (10 cm).

Usage

histosol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

horizonte_A_antropico	<i>Horizonte A antropico (SiBCS) (SiBCS Cap 2, p 53)</i>
-----------------------	----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Antropic surface formed by long human use; \geq 20 cm + P Mehlich-1 \geq 30 mg/kg + evidencias antropogenicas. Reuso de [hortic](#) (WRB) com criterios SiBCS-specific.

Usage

horizonte_A_antropico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

horizonte_A_chernozemico

Horizonte A chernozemico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 50-51)

Description

Horizonte mineral superficial relativamente espesso, escuro, com alta saturacao por bases ($V \geq 65\%$), $OC \geq 6$ g/kg, estrutura desenvolvida e espessura conforme criterio.

Usage

```
horizonte_A_chernozemico(
  pedon,
  min_oc_g_kg = 6,
  min_v_pct = 65,
  max_value_moist = 3,
  max_chroma_moist = 3,
  max_value_dry = 5,
  min_thickness_cm = 18
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_oc_g_kg	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_v_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_value_moist	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_chroma_moist	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_value_dry	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_thickness_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

horizonte_A_fraco

Horizonte A fraco (SiBCS Cap 2, p 53): cor clara + estrutura grao simples/macica + $OC < 6$ g/kg; OR espessura < 5 cm.

Description

Horizonte A fraco (SiBCS Cap 2, p 53): cor clara + estrutura grao simples/macica + $OC < 6$ g/kg; OR espessura < 5 cm.

Usage

```
horizonte_A_fraco(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

horizonte_A_humico *Horizonte A humico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 51-52)*

Description

Horizonte A com cor moderadamente escura (value/chroma ≤ 4), V < 65%, e C organico total $\geq 60 + 0.1 * \text{argila_media}$ (g/kg). Espessura \geq a do A chernozemico.

Usage

```
horizonte_A_humico(pedon, min_v_pct_max = 65, min_thickness_cm = 18)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_v_pct_max Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_thickness_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

horizonte_A_moderado *Horizonte A moderado (SiBCS Cap 2, p 53-54): catch-all. Returns TRUE quando o solo tem horizonte superficial mas nao se enquadra nas demais classes diagnosticas superficiais.*

Description

Horizonte A moderado (SiBCS Cap 2, p 53-54): catch-all. Returns TRUE quando o solo tem horizonte superficial mas nao se enquadra nas demais classes diagnosticas superficiais.

Usage

```
horizonte_A_moderado(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

horizonte_A_proeminente

Horizonte A proeminente (SiBCS Cap 2, p 52-53)

Description

Como A chernozemico (cor escura, OC \geq 6 g/kg) ****mas com V < 65%****.

Usage

horizonte_A_proeminente(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

horizonte_calcico

Horizonte calcico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 71-72; v0.7)

Description

Reuso direto de [calcic](#) (WRB Ch 3.1.5) – criterios identicos: 150 g/kg CaCO₃ + 50 g/kg a mais que sub-jacente + espessura \geq 15 cm.

Usage

horizonte_calcico(pedon, ...)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

... Reserved for future arguments.

horizonte_concrecionario

Horizonte concrecionario (SiBCS Cap 2, p 68-69; v0.7)

Description

\>= 50% volume material grosso (predominio petroplintita) numa matriz, espessura \>= 30 cm.
Designation Ac/Ec/Bc/Cc.

Usage

```
horizonte_concrecionario(  
  pedon,  
  min_petroplinthite_pct = 50,  
  min_thickness = 30  
)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_petroplinthite_pct Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_thickness Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

horizonte_E_albico *Horizonte E albico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 66-67; v0.7)*

Description

Reuso de [albic](#) (WRB Ch 3.1) com criterios identicos.

Usage

```
horizonte_E_albico(pedon, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
... Reserved for future arguments.

horizonte_glei *Horizonte glei (SiBCS Cap 2, p 69-71; v0.7)*

Description

Subsuperficial (ou eventualmente superficial) com cores neutras / azuladas / esverdeadas devido a reducao de Fe; espessura ≥ 15 cm. Reuso de [gleyic_properties](#) (WRB) com nomenclatura SiBCS.

Usage

```
horizonte_glei(pedon, min_thickness = 15)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_thickness Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

horizonte_histico *Horizonte histico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 49-50)*

Description

Horizonte O ou H de coloracao preta/cinza muito escura/brunada, ≥ 80 g/kg (8%) C organico, com:

- espessura ≥ 20 cm; OR
- espessura ≥ 40 cm se $\geq 75\%$ volume tecido vegetal; OR
- espessura ≥ 10 cm sobre contato litico/fragmentario OR camada com $\geq 90\%$ material > 2 mm.

Usage

```
horizonte_histico(pedon, min_oc_g_kg = 80)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_oc_g_kg Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

horizonte_litoplintico

Horizonte litoplintico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 69; v0.7)

Description

Petroplintita continua (ironstone). Reuso de [petroplinthic](#) (WRB), espessura \geq 10 cm.

Usage

```
horizonte_litoplintico(pedon, min_thickness = 10)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_thickness Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

horizonte_petrocalcico

Horizonte petrocalcico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 72; v0.7)

Description

Reuso de [petrocalcic](#) (WRB v0.3.3).

Usage

```
horizonte_petrocalcico(pedon, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
... Reserved for future arguments.

horizonte_plintico *Horizonte plintico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 67-68; v0.7)*

Description

Plintita $\geq 15\%$ volume, espessura ≥ 15 cm. Tem precedencia sobre B textural, latossolico, nitico, B incipiente, planico (sem carater sodico), e glei. Reuso de [plinthic](#) (WRB).

Usage

```
horizonte_plintico(pedon, min_plinthite_pct = 15, min_thickness = 15)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_plinthite_pct Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_thickness Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

horizonte_sulfurico *Horizonte sulfurico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 72-73; v0.7)*

Description

Reuso de [thionic](#) (WRB v0.3.3): $\text{pH} \leq 3.5$ + sulfidic material + espessura ≥ 15 cm.

Usage

```
horizonte_sulfurico(pedon, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
... Reserved for future arguments.

horizonte_vertico	<i>Horizonte vertico (SiBCS Cap 2, p 73; v0.7)</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------------

Description

Reuso de [vertic_horizon](#) (WRB Ch 3.1, v0.3.3) com criterios essencialmente identicos: clay \geq 30%, slickensides, fendas \geq 1 cm, espessura \geq 20 cm. v0.7 SiBCS additional gate: COLE \geq 0.06 (proxy via shrink-swell).

Usage

```
horizonte_vertico(pedon, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
...	Reserved for future arguments.

hortic	<i>Hortic horizon (WRB 2022): garden / kitchen-midden topsoil. Diagnostic criteria: thickness \geq 20 cm, dark colour (mollic-like), high P (Mehlich-3 P \geq 100 mg/kg or P2O5_1pct_citric \geq 175 mg/kg), high SOC.</i>
--------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hortic horizon (WRB 2022): garden / kitchen-midden topsoil. Diagnostic criteria: thickness \geq 20 cm, dark colour (mollic-like), high P (Mehlich-3 P \geq 100 mg/kg or P2O5_1pct_citric \geq 175 mg/kg), high SOC.

Usage

```
hortic(pedon, min_thickness = 20, min_oc = 1, min_p_mehlich3 = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_oc	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_p_mehlich3	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

humic_andisol_usda *Humic Andisols Subgroup helper Pass when mollic OR umbric epipedon present.*

Description

Humic Andisols Subgroup helper Pass when mollic OR umbric epipedon present.

Usage

humic_andisol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

humic_inceptisol_usda *Humic Inceptisol Suborder helper (Hum*) Pass when umbric or mollic epipedon present + thick (>= 25 cm).*

Description

Humic Inceptisol Suborder helper (Hum*) Pass when umbric or mollic epipedon present + thick (>= 25 cm).

Usage

humic_inceptisol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

humic_oxisol_usda	<i>Humic-Oxisol Subgroup helper Pass when cumulative organic carbon mass is ≥ 16 kg/m² between surface and 100 cm (computed as $SUM(OC\% * bulk_density * dz)$). v0.8 proxy: uses default $bulk_density$ 1.0 g/cm³ if unavailable.</i>
-------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Humic-Oxisol Subgroup helper Pass when cumulative organic carbon mass is ≥ 16 kg/m² between surface and 100 cm (computed as $SUM(OC\% * bulk_density * dz)$). v0.8 proxy: uses default $bulk_density$ 1.0 g/cm³ if unavailable.

Usage

humic_oxisol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

humic_spodic_usda	<i>Humic-spodic Suborder/GG check ($\geq 6\%$ OC in 10+ cm of spodic)</i>
-------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Humic-spodic Suborder/GG check ($\geq 6\%$ OC in 10+ cm of spodic)

Usage

humic_spodic_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

humic_subgroup_usda *Humic Subgroup helper (Humic Duricryods / Humic Placocryods)*
Pass when spodic horizon has >= 6% OC in 10+ cm.

Description

Humic Subgroup helper (Humic Duricryods / Humic Placocryods) Pass when spodic horizon has >= 6% OC in 10+ cm.

Usage

humic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

humilluvic_subgroup_usda
 Humilluvic Subgroup helper (Luvihemists)

Description

Pass when a horizon >= 2 cm thick has humilluvic material (humus translocated from above) >= 50% volume. v0.8 deferred (no specific column). Refinement to use a humilluvic_pct column or a designation marker is planned.

Usage

humilluvic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

humult_qualifying_usda

*Humult Suborder qualifier (Ultisols with thick humus accumulation)
Pass when 0.9% OC weighted average in 0-15 cm AND/OR organic carbon mass \geq 12 kg/m² in 0-100 cm (proxy via humic_oxisol_usda with lower threshold).*

Description

Humult Suborder qualifier (Ultisols with thick humus accumulation) Pass when 0.9% OC weighted average in 0-15 cm AND/OR organic carbon mass \geq 12 kg/m² in 0-100 cm (proxy via humic_oxisol_usda with lower threshold).

Usage

humult_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

hydragric

Hydragric horizon (WRB 2022): subsoil hydric horizon under anthraquic. v0.3.3 detects via designation pattern Bg|Brg immediately below an anthraquic-like topsoil.

Description

Hydragric horizon (WRB 2022): subsoil hydric horizon under anthraquic. v0.3.3 detects via designation pattern Bg|Brg immediately below an anthraquic-like topsoil.

Usage

hydragric(pedon, min_thickness = 20)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_thickness Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

hydraquent_qualifying_usda

Hydric Aquent helper (Hydraquents) Pass when surface 0-50 has high water content (n value high). v0.8 proxy: water_content_1500kpa >= 80% in surface.

Description

Hydric Aquent helper (Hydraquents) Pass when surface 0-50 has high water content (n value high). v0.8 proxy: water_content_1500kpa >= 80% in surface.

Usage

hydraquent_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

hydric_andisol_usda *Hydric (Andisols): 1500 kPa water retention >= 70% on undried samples throughout a 35+ cm layer within 100 cm.*

Description

Hydric (Andisols): 1500 kPa water retention >= 70% on undried samples throughout a 35+ cm layer within 100 cm.

Usage

hydric_andisol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

hydric_subgroup_usda *Hydric Subgroup helper (Histosols Cryofibrists / Sphagnofibrists / etc.)*

Description

Pass when there is a "layer of water" within the control section. Detected via designation containing "W" (water layer) or layer_origin == "water".

Usage

```
hydric_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 130)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Default 130.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

hypersulfidic_material *Hypersulfidic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.8): $\geq 0.01\%$ inorganic sulfidic S, pH ≥ 4 , capable of severe acidification on aerobic incubation.*

Description

Hypersulfidic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.8): $\geq 0.01\%$ inorganic sulfidic S, pH ≥ 4 , capable of severe acidification on aerobic incubation.

Usage

```
hypersulfidic_material(pedon, min_s_pct = 0.01, min_pH = 4)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_s_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pH	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

hyposulfidic_material *Hyposulfidic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.9): same S and pH as hypersulfidic but does NOT consist of hypersulfidic (i.e. not capable of severe acidification). v0.3.3: returns sulfidic layers that don't meet hypersulfidic.*

Description

Hyposulfidic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.9): same S and pH as hypersulfidic but does NOT consist of hypersulfidic (i.e. not capable of severe acidification). v0.3.3: returns sulfidic layers that don't meet hypersulfidic.

Usage

```
hyposulfidic_material(pedon, min_s_pct = 0.01, min_pH = 4)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_s_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pH	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

inceptisol_qualifying_usda
Inceptisol Order qualifier Pass when a cambic horizon is present (no argillic, no spodic, no mollic, etc. – enforced by prior order exclusion).

Description

Inceptisol Order qualifier Pass when a cambic horizon is present (no argillic, no spodic, no mollic, etc. – enforced by prior order exclusion).

Usage

```
inceptisol_qualifying_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

inceptisol_usda	<i>Inceptisols (USDA Cap 11): cambic horizon (or several alternative subsurface diagnostics: folistic/histic/mollic with thin sub, salic, sodium-affected sub).</i>
-----------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Inceptisols (USDA Cap 11): cambic horizon (or several alternative subsurface diagnostics: folistic/histic/mollic with thin sub, salic, sodium-affected sub).

Usage

```
inceptisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

inspect_bdsolos_csv	<i>Diagnostic inspection of a BDsolos CSV before loading</i>
---------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Reads the CSV header, attempts to map each column to the soilKey horizon schema via [.bdsolos_match_column](#), and prints three sections:

Usage

```
inspect_bdsolos_csv(path, sep = NULL)
```

Arguments

path	Path to the CSV downloaded from BDsolos.
sep	Field separator (default ", "; some BDsolos exports use "; " or tab).

Details

- **Mapped columns** – BDsolos name -> soilKey name
- **Unmapped columns** – columns the loader will ignore (review these before running `load_bdsolos_csv` to make sure no critical attribute is silently dropped)
- **Munsell coverage** – whether matiz / valor / croma are present in either umido or seco variants

Run this before [load_bdsolos_csv](#) on any new CSV from BDsolos, especially if the export schema looks unfamiliar (BDsolos has shipped multiple schema versions over the years).

Value

Invisibly, a list with mapped, unmapped, munsell_present, taxon_column.

irragric	<i>Irragic horizon (WRB 2022): topsoil thickened by irrigation deposits. v0.3.3: thickness >= 20 cm + sediment-derived structure proxied via designation Apk Apg Au.</i>
----------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Irragic horizon (WRB 2022): topsoil thickened by irrigation deposits. v0.3.3: thickness >= 20 cm + sediment-derived structure proxied via designation Apk|Apg|Au.

Usage

```
irragric(pedon, min_thickness = 20)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

kandic_horizon_usda	<i>Kandic horizon (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, p 45)</i>
---------------------	---------------------------------------------------

Description

Subsurface horizon with low-activity clays (CEC <= 16 cmol/kg clay, ECEC <= 12) and clay increase. Implementation: delegates to argic with additional CEC/clay check.

Usage

```
kandic_horizon_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

kandic_oxisol_usda	<i>Kandic Suborder helper for Oxisols (Kandiperox/Kandiudox/Kandiustox) Delegates to kandic_horizon_usda.</i>
--------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Kandic Suborder helper for Oxisols (Kandiperox/Kandiudox/Kandiustox) Delegates to kandic_horizon_usda.

Usage

kandic_oxisol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

kanhapl_qualifying_usda	<i>Kanhapl qualifying helper (Kanhapludults / Kanhaplustults / etc.) Pass when kandic horizon present BUT NOT meeting Pale criteria (i.e. younger / less developed kandic).</i>
-------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Kanhapl qualifying helper (Kanhapludults / Kanhaplustults / etc.) Pass when kandic horizon present BUT NOT meeting Pale criteria (i.e. younger / less developed kandic).

Usage

kanhapl_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

kastanozem	<i>Kastanozem RSG diagnostic (WRB 2022)</i>
------------	---------------------------------------------

Description

Tests whether a profile satisfies the Kastanozem RSG criteria: a mollic horizon plus secondary carbonates plus NOT-Chernozem colour (chroma (moist) > 2 in the upper 20 cm).

Usage

```
kastanozem(pedon, max_chroma_upper = 2)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_chroma_upper	Maximum moist chroma to qualify as Chernozem (default 2). Kastanozem requires the upper-20-cm chroma to EXCEED this value.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Kastanozems.

kastanozem_strict	<i>Kastanozem RSG gate (strengthened, WRB 2022 Ch 4, p 112)</i>
-------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Same structure as [chernozem_strict](#) but using the mollic horizon (no chernic gate) and starting ≤ 70 cm of mineral soil surface.

Usage

```
kastanozem_strict(pedon, min_bs = 50, max_top_cm = 70)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_bs	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

kst13_canonical	<i>Keys to Soil Taxonomy 13th edition canonical reference</i>
-----------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Convenience wrapper for `canonical_reference("ST_criteria_13th")`. Returns a nested list of 3,153 parsed Keys-to-Soil-Taxonomy clauses per chapter / page / key / taxon / code / clause / logic.

Usage

```
kst13_canonical(prefer_pkg = TRUE)
```

Arguments

<code>prefer_pkg</code>	If TRUE (default), prefer the installed SoilTaxonomy package over the vendored copy. Set to FALSE to force the vendored copy (e.g. for reproducibility of a specific soilKey release).
-------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Details

Source: NCSS-tech SoilTaxonomy R package. Original: [USDA-NRCS \(2022\). Keys to Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition.](#)

kst13_codes	<i>Load the canonical KST 13ed code -> taxon-name lookup table</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Returns the 3,153-row data.frame from `inst/rules/usda/canonical/2022_KST_codes.json`, vendored from NCSS-tech/SoilKnowledgeBase. Each row is a (code, name) pair.

Usage

```
kst13_codes()
```

Details

Code structure:

- Single letter ("A"- "L"): Soil Order (Gelisols, Histosols, ..., Entisols)
- Two letters ("AB", "AC", ...): Suborder
- Three letters: Great Group
- Four letters: Subgroup

Value

A data.frame with columns code, name.

See Also

[kst13_criteria](#), [kst13_canonical](#).

kst13_criteria	<i>Load the canonical KST 13ed criteria for a single taxon code</i>
----------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Returns the parsed clause data.frame for one code (e.g. "A" for Gelisols, "ABA" for Histels.Folistels, etc.). Each row is one clause of the diagnostic text with content, chapter, page columns.

Usage

```
kst13_criteria(code)
```

Arguments

code	Character. Taxon code in the KST 13ed code system (e.g. "A" for Gelisols, "ABCD" for the Lithic Folistels subgroup).
------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Details

For the full 3,153-element nested list (all codes), use [kst13_canonical](#) (which loads the SoilTaxonomy R-package RDA equivalent).

Value

A data.frame with the parsed clauses for that code, or NULL if the code is not present.

See Also

[kst13_codes](#), [kst13_canonical](#).

 lamellic_subgroup_usda

Lamellic Subgroup helper (Spodosols Haplorthods)

Description

Pass when 2+ lamellae (clay-rich bands < 7.5 cm thick) are present below the spodic horizon. v0.8: detected via designation containing "&" (lamella notation in KST) OR multiple thin clay-bumps in clay_pct.

Usage

```
lamellic_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

 latossolo

Latossolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 113; conceito Cap 3, p 93-94)

Description

Horizonte B latossolico imediatamente abaixo de qualquer tipo de A (exceto histico), dentro de 200 cm (ou 300 se A > 150 cm).

Usage

```
latossolo(pedon, max_top_cm = 200)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

latossolo_amarelo	<i>Latossolos Amarelos (Cap 10): matiz $\geq 7.5YR$ (mais amarelo).</i>
-------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Latossolos Amarelos (Cap 10): matiz $\geq 7.5YR$ (mais amarelo).

Usage

latossolo_amarelo(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

latossolo_bruno	<i>Latossolos Brunos (Cap 10): matiz $\geq 7.5YR$ + valor ≤ 4 + cromas ≤ 5 (cores brunadas) OR caracter retratil.</i>
-----------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Latossolos Brunos (Cap 10): matiz $\geq 7.5YR$ + valor ≤ 4 + cromas ≤ 5 (cores brunadas) OR caracter retratil.

Usage

latossolo_bruno(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

latossolo_ki_kr *Ki/Kr para Latossolos (SiBCS Cap 10, p 173-176)*

Description

Diagnostico SiBCS estrito sobre o B latossolico: requer $Ki \leq \text{max_ki}$ em todos os horizontes B avaliados, e $Kr \leq \text{max_kr}$ quando Fe2O3 estiver disponivel. Sub-classes acricas (Latossolos Acricos) e acriferricas adicionalmente exigem [carater_acrico](#).

Usage

```
latossolo_ki_kr(pedon, max_ki = 2.2, max_kr = 1.7)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_ki	Ki limite superior (default 2.2 – limite kaolinitico SiBCS Cap 10).
max_kr	Kr limite superior (default 1.7).

Details

Quando os campos de ataque sulfurico (sio2_sulfuric_pct, al2o3_sulfuric_pct, fe2o3_sulfuric_pct) estao todos NA, o diagnostico retorna passed = NA com missing explicito.

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 10 (Latossolos), pp 173-176.

latossolo_vermelho *Latossolos Vermelhos (Cap 10): matiz \<= 2.5YR (mais vermelho).*

Description

Latossolos Vermelhos (Cap 10): matiz \<= 2.5YR (mais vermelho).

Usage

```
latossolo_vermelho(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

latossolo_vermelho_amarelo

Latossolos Vermelho-Amarelos (catch-all).

Description

Latossolos Vermelho-Amarelos (catch-all).

Usage

latossolo_vermelho_amarelo(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

leptic_features

Leptic features (WRB 2022)

Description

Tests whether continuous rock or rock-like material occurs within max_depth cm of the surface. Two alternative paths qualify per WRB 2022:

1. **Designation:** a layer at depth \leq max_depth with designation matching "^R" or "^{Cr}" (continuous rock or weathered rock-like substrate).
2. **Coarse fragments:** a layer at depth \leq max_depth with coarse_fragments_pct \geq min_coarse_pct (default 90% by volume), interpreted as rock-dominated even when not R / Cr-designated.

Either path qualifies.

Usage

leptic_features(pedon, max_depth = 25, min_coarse_pct = NULL, engine = NULL)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_depth Maximum depth (cm) at which continuous rock or rock-dominated material must appear (default 25).

min_coarse_pct Minimum coarse-fragment percent for the coarse-fragments path (default 90 in soilkey engine, 50 in aqp engine; NULL picks a default per engine).

engine One of "soilkey" (default; strict 90\ cfvo threshold) or "aqp" (LUCAS-friendly relaxed 50\ requiring positive evidence of rock contact – v0.9.66 tightening). The thin-topsoil path fires only when a horizon ending within max_depth also satisfies *at least one* of: (a) designation contains "R" (e.g.\ AR, BR, Cr, R, Rk), (b) coarse_fragments_pct >= 30 (gravelly), or (c) a deeper horizon is R/Cr-designated. Users with a strong external prior (e.g.\ a parent-material survey that documents rock < 25 cm but did not record it in the horizon table) can opt back into the original v0.9.65 loose behaviour with options(soilKey.leptic_assume_rock_below = TRUE). NULL (the default) reads getOption("soilKey.diagnostic_engine").

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Leptosols.

limnic_material	<i>Limnic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.10): subaquatic deposits (coprogenous earth, diatomaceous earth, marl, gyttja). v0.3.3: detects via rock_origin %in% c("lacustrine", "marine") or designation pattern.</i>
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Limnic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.10): subaquatic deposits (coprogenous earth, diatomaceous earth, marl, gyttja). v0.3.3: detects via rock_origin %in% c("lacustrine", "marine") or designation pattern.

Usage

```
limnic_material(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

limnic_usda	<i>Limnic Subgroup helper (Histels)</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------

Description

Pass when one or more limnic layers (coprogenous earth / diatomaceous earth / marl) with cumulative thickness ≥ 5 cm occur within the control section (KST 13ed, p 190).

Usage

```
limnic_usda(pedon, min_thickness_cm = 5, max_top_cm = 130)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness_cm	Default 5.
max_top_cm	Default 130 cm (control section).

Details

Implementation: detects designation containing 'L' (KST notation for limnic) OR layer_origin == "lacustrine".

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, p 45; Ch. 9 Hemistels / Sapristels.

limonic	<i>Limonic horizon (WRB 2022 Ch 3.1)</i>
---------	------------------------------------------

Description

From Greek *leimon* = meadow. A subaqueous / wet-meadow horizon showing accumulation of secondary Fe/Mn (oxi)hydroxides from fluctuating redox cycles. Distinct from *limnic material* (Ch 3.3.10), which is the parent material; the limonic horizon is the *soil* horizon derived from such material plus subsequent pedogenesis.

Usage

```
limonic(pedon, min_thickness = 5, min_redox_pct = 5)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_redox_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

Details

v0.3.5 detection: redoximorphic_features_pct \geq 5 AND designation pattern Bm / Bjm / m as proxy for past meadow wetness.

lithic_contact_usda *Lithic contact within X cm of the surface (USDA Subgroup helper)*

Description

Pass when a horizon designation matches an R contact within max_top_cm. Default 50 cm (Subgroup-level depth bound). For Gelisols organic soil materials (Folistels), the depth is 50 cm; for Fibristels/Hemistels/Sapristels and other Gelisols, it is 100 cm (KST 13ed, p 46).

Usage

```
lithic_contact_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 50)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Default 50 cm.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, p 45; Ch. 9 various Subgroups.

lithic_discontinuity *Lithic discontinuity (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.7)*

Description

Significant abrupt change in parent material between two layers. v0.3.3 simplified: detects via large discontinuity in coarse_fragments_pct (≥ 10 pp absolute jump) OR rock_origin difference between consecutive layers.

Usage

lithic_discontinuity(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

lixisol *Lixisol RSG diagnostic (WRB 2022)*

Description

argic + CEC < 24 cmol_c/kg clay + BS $\geq 50\%$.

Usage

lixisol(pedon, max_cec = 24, min_bs = 50)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_cec Maximum CEC per kg clay (default 24).
min_bs Minimum base saturation % (default 50).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Lixisols.

load_afsp_pedons	<i>Load Africa Soil Profiles (AfSP) v1.2 as PedonRecord objects</i>
------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Reads the AfSP DBase tables shipped inside AF-AfSP1.2.zip (downloadable from <https://files.isric.org/public/afsp/AF-AfSP1.2.zip>) and converts each profile + its horizons to a soilKey `PedonRecord`. Filters to profiles with a populated WRB 2006 RSG code (i.e. \classifiable; AfSP has ~7000 of these of the total 18,533).

Usage

```
load_afsp_pedons(  
  afsp_dir,  
  max_n = NULL,  
  countries = NULL,  
  wrb_codes = NULL,  
  verbose = TRUE  
)
```

Arguments

<code>afsp_dir</code>	Directory containing the extracted AfSP DBase tables (AfSP012Qry_Profiles.dbf, AfSP012Qry_Layers.dbf).
<code>max_n</code>	Optional integer; take a random sample of this size from the classifiable profiles.
<code>countries</code>	Optional character vector of ISO country codes to keep (e.g. \ c("MW", "ET", "TZ")).
<code>wrb_codes</code>	Optional character vector of WRB 2006 RSG codes to keep (e.g. \ c("VR", "FR", "AC")).
<code>verbose</code>	Print progress.

Value

A list of `PedonRecord` objects.

References

Leenaars, J. G. B., van Oostrum, A. J. M., & Ruiperez Gonzalez, M. (2014). Africa Soil Profiles Database, Version 1.2. ISRIC Report 2014/01. ISRIC – World Soil Information, Wageningen. Project page: <https://isric.org/projects/africa-soil-profiles-database-afsp>.

load_afsp_sample *Load the bundled AfSP stratified sample (v0.9.77)*

Description

Returns a 130-profile snapshot from AfSP v1.2 stratified by WRB RSG (5 profiles per RSG x 26 RSGs), pre-built so users can run the African WRB benchmark offline without the 35 MB ZIP download.

Usage

```
load_afsp_sample()
```

Details

This is the African analogue of [load_wosis_stratified_sample](#) (global WoSIS) and [load_kssl_nasis_sample](#) (US KSSL+NASIS).

Value

A list with pedons, pulled_on, source, filter.

Reference

Leenaars, J. G. B., van Oostrum, A. J. M., & Ruyter Gonzalez, M. (2014). Africa Soil Profiles Database, Version 1.2. ISRIC Report 2014/01.

load_bdsolos_csv *Load a BDsolos CSV export as a list of PedonRecord objects*

Description

Reads the long-format BDsolos CSV (one row per horizon, with a profile-id key) and returns a list of [PedonRecord](#) objects. Auto-detects the column-name convention via [inspect_bdsolos_csv](#) and maps to the soilKey horizon schema. Texture (argila / silte / areia) is converted from g/kg to percent (BDsolos canonical unit).

Usage

```
load_bdsolos_csv(path, sep = NULL, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

path	Path to the BDsolos CSV.
sep	Field separator. Default ", "; BDsolos sometimes exports with ";" or tab – pass it explicitly.
verbose	If TRUE (default), prints a one-line summary.

Details

Profile-id columns are auto-detected: looks for any column whose normalised name matches "id_perfil|profile_id|cod_" falls back to the first column when none match.

Value

A list of `PedonRecord` objects. Each pedon has `site$id` from the profile-id column, the taxonomic reference (when present) at `site$reference_sibcs`, and one horizon row per CSV row matching the profile id.

See Also

[inspect_bdsolos_csv](#), [download_bdsolos](#).

load_embrapa_pedons *Load Embrapa dadosolos pedons with reference SiBCS classification*

Description

Reads the Embrapa BDsolos CSV export (or the dadosolos R package data frame, if present). Assembles a list of `PedonRecord` objects with the SiBCS classification attached as `pedon$site$reference_sibcs`.

Usage

```
load_embrapa_pedons(csv_path, head = NULL, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

csv_path	Path to the BDsolos CSV (long format: one row per horizon, with a profile-id key and per-profile classification).
head	Optional integer for parser validation.
verbose	If TRUE (default), emits a summary.

Details

The dadosolos / BDsolos archive ships with ~5k profiles in PT-BR with full SiBCS classification, lab data, and horizon morphology – the primary validation set for Brazilian-context use. Available from <https://www.bdsolos.cnptia.embrapa.br/>.

Value

A list of `PedonRecord` objects.

load_febr_pedons	<i>Load the Embrapa FEBR superconjunto into a list of PedonRecords</i>
------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Reads the FEBR febr-superconjunto.txt export (one row per camada / horizon, with the profile-level classification denormalised onto every row), groups rows by (dataset_id, observacao_id), and returns a list of [PedonRecord](#) objects with all three reference taxa attached on \$site: reference_sibcs (raw FEBR string, e.g. "LATOSSOLO VERMELHO"), reference_usda, reference_wrb.

Usage

```
load_febr_pedons(
  path,
  head = NULL,
  require_classification = c("sibcs", "any", "wrb", "usda"),
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

path	Path to febr-superconjunto.txt.
head	Optional integer; if not NULL, return only the first head unique profiles after grouping.
require_classification	One of c("any", "sibcs", "wrb", "usda"). Default "sibcs": drop profiles whose chosen classification is NA. "any" keeps profiles with at least one of the three.
verbose	If TRUE (default), summarises the load.

Details

Drops profiles whose taxon_sibcs is NA (no usable reference). Drops camadas with no horizon-depth information (no profund_sup / profund_inf).

Value

A list of [PedonRecord](#) objects.

```
load_kssl_nasis_sample
```

Load the bundled KSSL + NASIS morphological-enriched sample (v0.9.75)

Description

Returns a 99-profile snapshot built by joining the NCSS Lab Data Mart (`ncss_labdata.gpkg`) with the companion NASIS Morphological sqlite (`NASIS_Morphological_*.sqlite`) via `load_kssl_pedons_with_nasis`. Pre-annotated with derived WRB Reference Soil Group via `usda_to_wrb_rsg`.

Usage

```
load_kssl_nasis_sample()
```

Details

Compared to `load_kssl_sample` (KSSL lab tables only), this sample carries the morphological evidence that several WRB diagnostic horizons need:

```
| Field | KSSL-only | KSSL + NASIS | |-----|-----:|-----:| | munsell_hue_moist | 0 | munsell_value_moist | 0 | munsell_chroma_moist | 0 | munsell_hue_dry | 0 | structure_grade | 0 | structure_type | 0 | clay_films_amount | 0 | slickensides | 0
```

First-ever benchmark on this enriched sample (soilKey v0.9.75, full v0.9.69-72 fallback stack):

- Top-1 baseline: 19.1\ **+3.5pp lift purely from NASIS morphology**)
- Top-1 full stack: 20.6\
- Phaeozem: 1/33 -> 2/33 (Munsell-driven mollic detection)
- Podzol: 0/15 -> 1/15

Remaining ceiling driven by attributes neither dataset preserves: Solonetz needs Na/ESP, Vertisols need slickensides + cracks (NASIS records 1.7 on subsoil samples NASIS often lacks).

Value

A list with pedons, pulled_on, source, join_helper, cross_walk.

Reference

Beaudette, D., Skovlin, J., Roecker, S., Brown, A. (2024). aqp: Algorithms for Quantitative Pedology. R package version 2.x. <https://github.com/ncss-tech/aqp>.

Examples

```
s <- try(load_kssl_nasis_sample(), silent = TRUE)
if (!inherits(s, "try-error")) {
  length(s$pedons)
  # Munsell now populated (KSSL-only sample had 0%):
  mean(vapply(s$pedons,
             function(p) any(!is.na(p$horizons$munsell_hue_moist)),
             logical(1)))
}
```

load_kssl_pedons	<i>Load NCSS / KSSL pedons with reference USDA Soil Taxonomy classification</i>
------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Reads the KSSL pedon CSV export (typically named NCSS_Pedon_Layer.csv or similar) plus the lab-data CSV, joins on pedon_key, and assembles a list of PedonRecord objects. The published USDA Soil Taxonomy classification (from the Series or Subgroup field) is attached as pedon\$site\$reference_usda.

Usage

```
load_kssl_pedons(pedon_csv, layer_csv, head = NULL, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

pedon_csv	Path to the pedon-level CSV (one row per profile, with site-level metadata + classification).
layer_csv	Path to the layer-level CSV (one row per horizon, with horizon properties).
head	Optional integer; if not NULL, returns only the first head pedons (useful for parser validation).
verbose	If TRUE (default), emits a summary of the load.

Details

KSSL is the de-facto standard for validating USDA Soil Taxonomy keys (~50k profiles, lab-grade analytical data, professional pedon descriptions). Get the export from <https://ncsslabdatamart.sc.egov.usda.gov/>.

Value

A list of `PedonRecord` objects.

load_kssl_pedons_gpkg *Load KSSL / NCSS pedons from the ncss_labdata GeoPackage*

Description

Reads the ‘lab_combine_nasis_ncss’ / ‘lab_site’ / ‘lab_layer’ / ‘lab_chemical_properties’ / ‘lab_physical_properties’ views from the NCSS Lab Data Mart GeoPackage and assembles a list of [PedonRecord](#) objects. Each pedon has its USDA Soil Taxonomy Order attached as `site$reference_usda`, normalised to match ‘classify_usda()’ output ("Mollisols", "Alfisols", ...).

Usage

```
load_kssl_pedons_gpkg(
  gpkg,
  head = NULL,
  require_b_horizon = TRUE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gpkg	Path to ncss_labdata.gpkg.
head	Optional integer; load only the first N classified pedons. Useful for parser validation.
require_b_horizon	If TRUE (default), drops pedons whose deepest horizon’s bottom_cm < 30. Most non-Entisol Order gates need a B horizon.
verbose	If TRUE (default), emits progress messages.

Value

A list of [PedonRecord](#) objects.

load_kssl_pedons_with_nasis
Load KSSL pedons enriched with NASIS morphology

Description

Joins the NCSS Lab Data Mart GeoPackage with the NASIS Morphological SQLite to produce [PedonRecord](#) objects whose horizons table has BOTH lab chemistry + physics AND field morphology (Munsell, structure, clay films, slickensides, cracks). Required for the morphological-evidence diagnostics ([argic](#) clay-films, [vertic_horizon](#) slickensides, [mollic_epipedon_usda](#) Munsell, etc.) to fire on KSSL profiles – the lab gpkg alone has none of those.

Usage

```
load_kssl_pedons_with_nasis(
  gpkg,
  sqlite,
  head = NULL,
  require_b_horizon = TRUE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

gpkg	Path to ncss_labdata.gpkg.
sqlite	Path to NASIS_Morphological_*.sqlite.
head	Optional integer; load only the first N classified pedons. Useful for parser validation / scaling.
require_b_horizon	If TRUE (default), drops pedons whose deepest horizon's bottom_cm < 30.
verbose	If TRUE (default), emits progress messages.

Value

A list of [PedonRecord](#) objects.

load_kssl_sample	<i>Load the bundled KSSL/NCSS lab-data sample (v0.9.74)</i>
------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Returns a 100-profile snapshot from the NCSS Lab Data Mart (KSSL gpkg, head = 100) pre-annotated with derived WRB Reference Soil Group via [usda_to_wrb_rsg](#).

Usage

```
load_kssl_sample()
```

Details

This is the bundled offline counterpart to [load_kssl_pedons_gpkg](#) – use this for tests and demos when the 5.5 GB gpkg is not available locally.

Each pedon has BOTH:

- site\$reference_usda (Order, Suborder, Greatgroup, Subgroup) – the canonical KSSL classification.
- site\$reference_wrb_from_usda – the derived WRB RSG via the IUSS WRB 2022 Annex 6 cross-walk.

First-ever KSSL WRB benchmark (soilKey v0.9.74, full v0.9.69-72 fallback stack):

- Top-1 accuracy: 20.1\
- Calcisol 69\
- Phaeozem / Kastanozem / Solonetz 0\ data not in KSSL lab tables (in companion NASIS).

Value

A list with pedons, pulled_on, source, cross_walk.

Reference

Beaudette, D., Skovlin, J., Roecker, S., Brown, A. (2024). aqp: Algorithms for Quantitative Pedology. R package version 2.x. <https://github.com/ncss-tech/aqp>.

Examples

```
s <- try(load_kssl_sample(), silent = TRUE)
if (!inherits(s, "try-error")) {
  length(s$pedons)
  table(vapply(s$pedons, function(p) p$site$reference_wrb_from_usda,
              character(1)))
}
```

load_lucas_pedons *Load EU-LUCAS / ESDB pedons with reference WRB classification*

Description

Reads the EU-LUCAS topsoil dataset joined with the ESDB profile archive (the v3 release produced by JRC). Assembles a list of PedonRecord objects with the WRB Reference Soil Group attached as pedon\$site\$reference_wrb.

Usage

```
load_lucas_pedons(lucas_csv, head = NULL, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

lucas_csv	Path to the LUCAS topsoil CSV.
head	Optional integer for parser validation.
verbose	If TRUE (default), emits a summary.

Details

LUCAS is harvested every 3-6 years on a regular grid; the ESDB classification is updated synchronously. ~28k profile cells with WRB labels in the 2015-2018 release.

Value

A list of [PedonRecord](#) objects.

load_lucas_soil_2018 *Load the LUCAS Soil 2018 Topsoil release as a list of PedonRecord objects*

Description

Reads the canonical European Soil Data Centre (ESDAC) release of LUCAS Soil 2018 Topsoil chemistry as published in the JRC report (ESDAC dataset <https://esdac.jrc.ec.europa.eu/content/lucas-2018-topsoil-data>). The release ships ~18,984 European topsoil samples at 0-20 cm with pH (H₂O and CaCl₂), EC, OC, CaCO₃, P, N, K and oxalate-extractable Al / Fe; a separate BulkDensity_2018_final-2.csv carries bulk density at 0-10 / 10-20 / 20-30 / 0-20 cm for ~6,272 of those points and is joined automatically when present.

Usage

```
load_lucas_soil_2018(
  path,
  attach_bulk_density = TRUE,
  countries = NULL,
  max_n = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

path	Folder containing LUCAS-SOIL-2018.csv (typically <root>/LUCAS-SOIL-2018-data-report-readme-
attach_bulk_density	If TRUE (default), joins the BulkDensity_2018_final-2.csv sister file on POINTID when present.
countries	Optional character vector of NUTS_0 codes (e.g. c("ES", "FR")) to filter pedons. Default NULL (all countries).
max_n	Optional integer cap on the number of pedons returned (after country filter). Useful for development.
verbose	If TRUE (default), prints a summary line.

Details

What's NOT in the release (and how to fill it):

- **Texture (clay / sand / silt)** – not in this CSV. Pass `benchmark_lucas_2018(..., fill_texture_from = "soilgrids")` to fill from ISRIC SoilGrids 250m via [lookup_soilgrids](#).
- **Munsell colors** – not collected by LUCAS Soil 2018. If the user has Vis-NIR spectra (release separate ~83 GB), use [predict_munsell_from_spectra](#) (v0.9.47).

- **Vis-NIR spectra** – distributed separately by ESDAC. Once downloaded and attached to the pedon's \$spectra, [predict_from_spectra](#) (v0.9.46) fills clay / sand / silt / pH / OC / CEC.
- **Taxonomic reference** – not in the LUCAS release; [benchmark_lucas_2018](#) attaches the canonical WRB Reference Soil Group via [lookup_esdb](#) (v0.9.44) at the pedon's coordinates.

Unit conversions applied (LUCAS -> soilKey schema):

- OC, N, CaCO₃, Ox_Al, Ox_Fe: g/kg ->
- EC: mS/m -> dS/m (* 0.01)
- P, K: mg/kg unchanged
- pH: unitless

Special LUCAS string values "< LOD", "<LOD", empty cells and "n.d." / "ND" are converted to NA before numeric coercion.

Value

A list of [PedonRecord](#) objects (one per LUCAS point). Each pedon has a site\$id matching the LUCAS POINTID, site\$lat / site\$lon in WGS84, and either one or two horizons (the second being 20-30 cm when the subsoil OC / CaCO₃ columns are populated). Provenance entries from the loader use source = "measured".

See Also

[benchmark_lucas_2018](#), [lookup_esdb](#), [lookup_soilgrids](#).

Examples

```
path <- file.path(tempdir(), "LUCAS-SOIL-2018-v2")
if (dir.exists(path)) {
  pedons <- load_lucas_soil_2018(path, countries = c("ES", "PT"),
                                max_n = 100)

  length(pedons)
  pedons[[1]]
}
```

load_redape_pedons *Load curated soil profiles from the Embrapa Redape GeoTab dataset*

Description

Reads the structured JSON files (one profile per file) published by Vaz et al. 2023 at the Embrapa Redape repository (DOI 10.48432/PYKKA7) and converts each one to a soilKey [PedonRecord](#).

Usage

```
load_redape_pedons(json_dir, max_n = NULL, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

json_dir	Directory containing the GeoTab JSON files (or a character vector of file paths).
max_n	If non-NULL, take a random sample of this size.
verbose	Print progress (default TRUE).

Details

The dataset is unique in two ways:

- Every profile was hand-reviewed by experienced pedologists (the curation note and author list are preserved on each pedon site record), so it is suitable as a gold-standard benchmark.
- Unlike Bdsolos, all profiles ship the full exchange complex (Ca, Mg, K, Na, Al *and* H), so cec_cmol (Valor T = S + H + Al) is computed directly without any fallback option.

Value

A list of [PedonRecord](#) objects.

Reference

Vaz, G. J., Silva Jr, A. F., & Silva Neto, L. de F. da (2023). Brazilian soil data for taxonomic classification. Redape, V1. doi:10.48432/PYKKA7.

See Also

[download_redape_dataset](#), [benchmark_redape](#).

load_rules	<i>Load a soilKey rule set (YAML)</i>
------------	---------------------------------------

Description

Load a soilKey rule set (YAML)

Usage

```
load_rules(system = c("wrb2022", "usda", "sibcs5"), package = "soilKey")
```

Arguments

system	One of "wrb2022" (full WRB 2022 key, v0.2 wires 16/32 RSGs), "usda" (USDA Soil Taxonomy, v0.2 scaffold with one delegating diagnostic), or "sibcs5" (SiBCS 5th edition, v0.2 scaffold with one delegating diagnostic).
package	Package owning the rule files (default "soilKey").

Value

A parsed YAML list with elements version, source, and a system-specific taxa list (rsgs, orders, or ordens).

load_wosis_sample	<i>Load the bundled WoSIS South-America sample</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------------

Description

Returns a 40-profile snapshot of WoSIS GraphQL data pulled on 2026-05-03 with `continent = "South America"`. The data is a frozen artefact – do NOT use it for current paper-grade benchmarks (the WoSIS database is updated periodically; the bundled snapshot is for reproducible tests and offline development only).

Usage

```
load_wosis_sample()
```

Details

For up-to-date benchmarks, call `run_wosis_benchmark_graphql()` directly against the live ISRIC GraphQL endpoint.

Value

A list as described above.

Returned data

A list with elements:

- `profiles_raw` – the parsed GraphQL response (one element per profile; nested layer arrays).
- `pedons` – PedonRecord objects ready for classification (one per profile).
- `pulled_on` – Date of the snapshot.
- `endpoint`, `filter`, `n_pulled` – metadata.

Examples

```
sample <- try(load_wosis_sample(), silent = TRUE)
if (!inherits(sample, "try-error")) {
  length(sample$pedons)
  classify_wrb2022(sample$pedons[[1]])$rsg_or_order
}
```

load_wosis_stratified_sample

Load the bundled WoSIS stratified RSG-balanced sample (v0.9.73)

Description

Returns a 130-profile snapshot of WoSIS GraphQL data pulled on 2026-05-09 with ****stratified sampling by WRB Reference Soil Group****: 5 profiles per RSG across 26 RSGs (Acrisol, Andosol, Arenosol, Calcisol, Cambisol, Chernozem, Cryosol, Ferralsol, Fluvisol, Gleysol, Gypsisol, Histosol, Kastanozem, Leptosol, Luvisol, Nitisol, Phaeozem, Planosol, Plinthosol, Podzol, Regosol, Solonchak, Solonetz, Stagnosol, Umbrisol, Vertisol).

Usage

```
load_wosis_stratified_sample()
```

Details

This is the recommended cache for global WRB benchmarking. Compared to `load_wosis_sample()` (40 SA-only profiles, mostly Solonetz and Phaeozem from Argentina), the stratified sample provides:

- Even coverage across the 26 most important RSGs.
- Richer analytical attributes – CEC available on 26 ECEC on 37 in the SA snapshot).
- Geographic diversity (Angola, Brazil, USA, China, Russia, South Africa, Indonesia, Argentina, etc.).

First-ever benchmark on this sample (soilKey v0.9.73, full v0.9.69-72 fallback stack):

- Overall top-1 accuracy: 16.2%
- Histosol 100% from 20% Cambisol 60%
- 18 RSGs at 0% expose (Munsell colours, base saturation, sodium for Solonetz, slickensides for Vertisols, etc.). Documented data ceiling.

For the live API, call `run_wosis_benchmark_graphql()` or the `read_wosis_profiles_graphql(wrb_rsg = "...", n_max = N)` helper (small RSG-filtered queries are tractable; large unfiltered pulls time out as of 2026-05).

Value

A list with:

- `pedons`: list of 130 `PedonRecord` objects.
- `meta`: named integer vector of profiles per RSG.
- `pulled_on`: pull date.
- `endpoint`: ISRIC GraphQL endpoint URL.
- `filter`: pull strategy metadata.
- `n_pulled`: 130.

Reference

Batjes, N. H., Ribeiro, E., van Oostrum, A. (2020). Standardised soil profile data to support global mapping and modelling (WoSIS snapshot 2019). *Earth System Science Data*, 12, 299-320. doi:10.5194/essd122992020.

Examples

```
s <- try(load_wosis_stratified_sample(), silent = TRUE)
if (!inherits(s, "try-error")) {
  length(s$pedons)
  table(vapply(s$pedons, function(p) p$site$wosis_rsg, character(1)))
}
```

 lookup_esdb

Look up an ESDB raster value at WGS84 coordinates

Description

Loads the requested attribute raster, reprojects WGS84 lat/lon input to the raster's native CRS (typically LAEA Europe, EPSG:3035), and extracts the value(s). When a Value Attribute Table ('vat.dbf') is available, the integer raster value is decoded to its coded string (e.g. '21' -> "LV" -> Luvisol).

Usage

```
lookup_esdb(coords, attribute, raster_root, decode = TRUE)
```

Arguments

coords	A two-column matrix or data.frame with 'lon' and 'lat' (WGS84 decimal degrees) – in that order. A single c(lon, lat) vector is also accepted.
attribute	Name of the ESDB attribute folder, e.g. "WRBLV1" or "WRBFU". See available_esdb_attributes .
raster_root	Path to the unpacked ESDB raster directory.
decode	If TRUE (default), decode the integer raster value to the VAT-coded string (e.g. "21" -> "LV"). If FALSE, return the raw integer.

Details

Coordinates outside the European raster footprint return 'NA' silently (rather than erroring) so vectorised calls degrade gracefully.

Value

Character vector (decoded codes) or numeric vector (raw values) of the same length as nrow(coords). NA for points outside the raster footprint.

See Also

[available_esdb_attributes](#)

Examples

```
root <- file.path(tempdir(), "ESDB-Raster-Library-1k-GeoTIFF-20240507")
if (dir.exists(root) && requireNamespace("terra", quietly = TRUE)) {
  # Single point: Wageningen, Netherlands (5.66 E, 51.97 N)
  lookup_esdb(c(5.66, 51.97), "WRBLV1", root)

  # Vector: Lisbon + Berlin + Helsinki
  coords <- rbind(c(-9.14, 38.72), c(13.40, 52.52), c(24.94, 60.17))
  lookup_esdb(coords, "WRBLV1", root)
}
```

lookup_mapbiomas_solos

Look up a MapBiomias Solos raster value at WGS84 coordinates

Description

MapBiomias Solos (Project MapBiomias, Brazil) distributes a national raster of SiBCS classes at 30 m, downloadable from <https://mapbiomas.org/en/produtos>. This helper mirrors the shape of [lookup_esdb](#) but is local-file only: pass the path of the unpacked GeoTIFF and the function reprojects the user's WGS84 lat/lon to the raster's native CRS, extracts the pixel and (optionally) decodes the integer class code via a user-supplied legend.

Usage

```
lookup_mapbiomas_solos(coords, raster_path, legend = NULL)
```

Arguments

coords	A 2-column matrix or data.frame with lon, lat (WGS84 decimal degrees), or a length-2 numeric vector for a single query.
raster_path	Path to the unpacked MapBiomias Solos GeoTIFF.
legend	Optional two-column data.frame (first column = numeric value, second = SiBCS class name). When provided, the integer raster value is decoded; when NULL, the raw integer is returned.

Details

MapBiomias does not bundle a `.vat.dbf`; the canonical legend is published as a CSV / dictionary on their website. Pass it via `legend` as a two-column data.frame (`value`, `class_name`) to enable decoding.

Value

Character vector of decoded class names (when legend is supplied) or numeric vector of raster values. Same length as `nrow(coords)`. NA for points outside the raster footprint.

See Also

[lookup_esdb](#), [lookup_soilgrids](#).

Examples

```
tif <- file.path(tempdir(), "mapbiomas_solos_collection2_2023.tif")
if (file.exists(tif)) {
  legend <- data.frame(
    value = c(1L, 2L, 3L, 4L, 5L, 6L, 7L, 8L, 9L, 10L, 11L, 12L, 13L),
    class_name = c("Latossolo Vermelho-Amarelo",
                  "Latossolo Amarelo",
                  "Argissolo Vermelho-Amarelo",
                  "Argissolo Amarelo",
                  "Neossolo Quartzarenico",
                  "Cambissolo Haplico",
                  "Espodosolo",
                  "Gleissolo",
                  "Nitossolo",
                  "Planossolo",
                  "Plintossolo",
                  "Vertisol",
                  "Outros")
  )
  lookup_mapbiomas_solos(c(-43.0, -22.0), tif, legend)
}
```

lookup_soilgrids

Look up a SoilGrids 250m soil property at WGS84 coordinates

Description

Reads ISRIC SoilGrids 250m (Hengl et al. 2017, 2021) directly from the ISRIC Cloud-Optimized GeoTIFF (COG) endpoint at <https://files.isric.org/soilgrids/latest/data/> – no download required, only the pixel under each query coordinate is transferred over HTTPS.

Usage

```
lookup_soilgrids(
  coords,
  property = c("clay", "sand", "silt", "phh2o", "soc", "cec", "bdod", "nitrogen", "ocd",
              "ocs", "cfvo"),
  depth = c("0-5cm", "5-15cm", "15-30cm", "30-60cm", "60-100cm", "100-200cm"),
  quantile = c("mean", "Q0.05", "Q0.5", "Q0.95", "uncertainty"),
```

```

  baseurl = "https://files.isric.org/soilgrids/latest/data",
  raw = FALSE
)

```

Arguments

coords	A 2-column matrix or data.frame with lon, lat (WGS84 decimal degrees), or a length-2 numeric vector for a single query.
property	One of the SoilGrids 250m predicted properties: "clay", "sand", "silt", "phh2o", "soc", "cec", "bdod", "nitrogen", "ocd", "ocs", "cfvo".
depth	Depth interval. One of "0-5cm", "5-15cm", "15-30cm", "30-60cm", "60-100cm", "100-200cm".
quantile	Output quantile. One of "mean" (default), "Q0.05", "Q0.5", "Q0.95", "uncertainty".
baseurl	Base URL of the SoilGrids COG endpoint. Default is the canonical ISRIC location; override only for a local mirror.
raw	If TRUE, returns the integer raster value without scaling. Default FALSE (returns the value in conventional units).

Details

SoilGrids stores integer rasters scaled per property; this helper applies the canonical conversion factor so the returned value is in conventional soil units (% , pH, g/kg, cmol(c)/kg, g/cm³).

Value

Numeric vector of length nrow(coords). NA outside the SoilGrids footprint or on network errors.

See Also

[lookup_esdb](#), [lookup_mapbiomas_solos](#).

Examples

```

if (requireNamespace("terra", quietly = TRUE)) {
  # Single point (needs internet -- guarded via try())
  try(lookup_soilgrids(c(-43.0, -22.0),
    property = "phh2o",
    depth = "0-5cm",
    quantile = "mean"), silent = TRUE)

  # Vector + multiple properties
  coords <- rbind(c(-43.0, -22.0), c(-9.14, 38.72))
  try(lookup_soilgrids(coords, "clay", "0-5cm", "mean"), silent = TRUE)
  try(lookup_soilgrids(coords, "phh2o", "0-5cm", "mean"), silent = TRUE)
}

```

luvisol	<i>Luvisol RSG diagnostic (WRB 2022)</i>
---------	------------------------------------------

Description

argic + CEC \geq 24 cmol_c/kg clay + Al saturation < 50%.

Usage

```
luvisol(pedon, min_cec = 24, max_al_sat = 50)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_cec	Minimum CEC per kg clay (default 24).
max_al_sat	Maximum Al saturation % (default 50).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Luvisols.

luvissolo	<i>Luvissolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 113; conceito Cap 3, p 95-96)</i>
-----------	-----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Horizonte B textural com argila ativ alta E saturacao por bases alta ($V \geq 50\%$) na maior parte dos primeiros 100 cm do B (incl. BA), abaixo de A ou E.

Usage

```
luvissolo(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

luvissolo_cromico	<i>Luvisolos Cromicos (Cap 11): caracter cromico (cores fortes em B). Aplicado pela presenca de Munsell vermelho-amarelado em B com cromas altos.</i>
-------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Luvisolos Cromicos (Cap 11): caracter cromico (cores fortes em B). Aplicado pela presenca de Munsell vermelho-amarelado em B com cromas altos.

Usage

```
luvissolo_cromico(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

luvissolo_haplico	<i>Luvisolos Haplicos (catch-all).</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------

Description

Luvisolos Haplicos (catch-all).

Usage

```
luvissolo_haplico(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_acrisol_canonical`*Build the canonical Acrisol fixture*

Description

Synthetic tropical-humid Acrisol on weathered gneiss: argic horizon at Bt1 with low-activity clay (CEC/clay ~ 17 cmol_c/kg clay) and low base saturation (BS ~ 25%). By construction:

- [argic](#): PASSES on Bt1.
- [acrisol](#): PASSES (CEC low, BS low).
- [lixisol](#), [alisol](#), [luvisol](#): FAIL.
- Other diagnostics: FAIL.

Usage`make_acrisol_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_alisol_canonical` *Build the canonical Alisol fixture*

Description

Synthetic humid-tropical Alisol on weathered shale: argic horizon at Bt1 with high-activity clay (CEC/clay ~ 34) AND high Al saturation (Al sat ~ 70%); the canonical "young weathering on a 2:1 clay parent that has not yet released enough Al into the precipitate-stabilised pool". By construction:

- [argic](#): PASSES on Bt1.
- [alisol](#): PASSES (CEC high, Al sat high).
- [acrisol](#), [lixisol](#), [luvisol](#): FAIL.

Usage`make_alisol_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

make_andosol_canonical

Build the canonical Andosol fixture

Description

Synthetic Andosol on volcanic tephra: very dark surface with low bulk density (0.7 g/cm^3) and high active Al + Fe ($\text{Al}_{\text{ox}} + 0.5 * \text{Fe}_{\text{ox}} = 2.25\%$). By construction [andic_properties](#) passes.

Usage

make_andosol_canonical()

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

make_anthrosol_canonical

Build the canonical Anthrosol fixture

Description

Synthetic Anthrosol with a hortic horizon – a long-cultivated dark surface from sustained organic-matter additions (typical of centuries-old kitchen-garden / homegarden soils). By construction [anthric_horizons](#) passes via the designation pattern.

Usage

make_anthrosol_canonical()

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_arenosol_canonical`*Build the canonical Arenosol fixture*

Description

Synthetic coastal-dune Arenosol: sandy throughout the upper 100 cm (silt + 2*clay < 30). By construction [arenic_texture](#) passes uniformly while every clay-dependent diagnostic fails.

Usage`make_arenosol_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_argissolo_canonical`*Perfil canonico de Argissolo (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 5)*

Description

B textural com gradiente significativo, argila ativ baixa ou alta + V baixa. Catch-all final na chave – típica do Brasil tropical.

Usage`make_argissolo_canonical()`

`make_calcisol_canonical`*Build the canonical Calcisol fixture*

Description

Synthetic semi-arid Calcisol on calcareous loess: A horizon with modest secondary carbonate; a thick Bk1 with the diagnostic calcic horizon (35% CaCO₃ over 40 cm); deepening accumulation in Bk2. By construction:

- [calcic](#): PASSES on Bk1 and Bk2.
- [gypsic](#), [salic](#): FAIL.
- [argic](#), [ferralic](#), [mollic](#): FAIL.

Usage

```
make_calcisol_canonical()
```

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

```
make_cambisol_canonical
```

Build the canonical Cambisol fixture

Description

Synthetic temperate-zone Cambisol on weathered colluvium: modest subsurface alteration in Bw without meeting argic clay-increase or ferralic CEC criteria. By construction:

- [cambic](#): PASSES on Bw (thickness 35 cm, sandy clay loam, no argic / no ferralic).
- [argic](#), [ferralic](#), [mollic](#), [calcic](#), [gypsic](#), [salic](#): FAIL.

Usage

```
make_cambisol_canonical()
```

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

```
make_cambissolo_canonical
```

Perfil canonico de Cambissolo (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 6)

Description

Reusa fixture WRB Cambisol – B incipiente sem ser plintico, vertico, planico, etc.

Usage

```
make_cambissolo_canonical()
```

`make_chernossolo_canonical`*Perfil canonico de Chernossolo (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 7)*

Description

Reusa fixture WRB Chernozem – A chernozemico + Bk com argila Ta + V alta. SiBCS strictos exigem (a) Bi/Bt + Ta + V alta, OR (b) calcico/etrocalcico/carbonatico + A chernozemico.

Usage`make_chernossolo_canonical()`

`make_chernozem_canonical`*Build the canonical Chernozem fixture*

Description

Synthetic Ukrainian / Russian steppe Chernozem on loess: thick dark Ah, granular structure, secondary carbonates accumulating in the Bk. By construction:

- **mollic**: PASSES on horizon Ah1 (moist value 2, chroma 1, dry value 3; SOC 4%; BS 89%; thickness 30 cm; strong granular structure).
- **argic**: FAILS (essentially no clay differentiation; ratios all close to 1).
- **ferralic**: FAILS (CEC/clay ~ 120 cmol_c/kg clay – high-activity 2:1 clay).

Usage`make_chernozem_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_cryosol_canonical`*Build the canonical Cryosol fixture*

Description

Synthetic Arctic Cryosol on weathered shale with permafrost at 50 cm: thawed A horizon over a frozen Bf horizon. By construction [cryic_conditions](#) passes via the designation pattern.

Usage`make_cryosol_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_durisol_canonical`*Build the canonical Durisol fixture*

Description

Synthetic semi-arid Durisol with a Si-cemented subsurface horizon (35% duripan nodules over 45 cm). By construction [duric_horizon](#) passes on Bdu.

Usage`make_durisol_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

make_empty_horizons *Build an empty horizons data.table with the canonical schema*

Description

Build an empty horizons data.table with the canonical schema

Usage

```
make_empty_horizons(n = 0L)
```

Arguments

n Number of rows (default 0).

Value

A data.table with all canonical horizon columns filled with NAs of the correct type.

Examples

```
h <- make_empty_horizons(3)
nrow(h)
```

make_espodossolo_canonical
Perfil canonico de Espodossolo (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 8)

Description

Reusa fixture WRB Podzol – B espodico imediatamente abaixo de E.

Usage

```
make_espodossolo_canonical()
```

`make_ferralsol_canonical`*Build the canonical Ferralsol fixture*

Description

Synthetic but realistic Brazilian Latossolo Vermelho (Ferralsol per WRB 2022): deeply weathered, kaolinitic / oxidic, with the canonical "low-activity clay" signature. Diagnostic outcomes are deterministic by construction:

- **ferralic**: PASSES on horizons Bw1 and Bw2 (CEC/clay = 8.3 cmol_c/kg clay; ECEC/clay = 3.6 cmol_c/kg clay; texture sandy clay / clay; thickness \geq 30 cm).
- **argic**: FAILS (gradual clay increase, all pairwise ratios $<$ 1.2; absolute increment too small for the \geq 40% rule).
- **mollic**: FAILS (chroma $>$ 3, BS $<$ 50%, A horizon $<$ 20 cm thick).

Usage`make_ferralsol_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_fluvisol_canonical`*Build the canonical Fluvisol fixture*

Description

Synthetic floodplain Fluvisol: stratified textures across consecutive C horizons, OC pattern non-monotone with depth (because C2 is more recently deposited, OC-richer than C1). By construction [fluvic_material](#) passes.

Usage`make_fluvisol_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_gleissolo_canonical`*Perfil canonico de Gleissolo (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 9)*

Description

Reusa fixture WRB Gleysol – horizonte glei dentro de 50 cm.

Usage`make_gleissolo_canonical()`

`make_gleysol_canonical`*Build the canonical Gleysol fixture*

Description

Synthetic Gleysol from a high-water-table floodplain: A with low chroma but no explicit redox features (so gleyic test is anchored on Bg); Bg with diagnostic redoximorphic features (35% by volume) within the upper 50 cm. By construction:

- `gleyic_properties`: PASSES on Bg.
- `argic`, `ferralic`, `mollic`, `cambic`, `plinthic`, `spodic`, `calcic`, `gypsic`, `salic`: FAIL.

Usage`make_gleysol_canonical()`**Value**

A `PedonRecord`.

make_gypsisol_canonical

Build the canonical Gypsisol fixture

Description

Synthetic Gypsisol on gypsiferous parent material: shallow A; gypsum accumulation rising sharply in the By1 horizon (35% gypsum over 50 cm) – the diagnostic gypsic horizon. By construction:

- [gypsic](#): PASSES on By1 and By2.
- [calcic](#), [salic](#): FAIL.
- [argic](#), [ferralic](#), [mollic](#): FAIL.

Usage

make_gypsisol_canonical()

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

make_histosol_canonical

Build the canonical Histosol fixture

Description

Synthetic boreal-mire Histosol: thick (50 cm) surface organic horizon with OC ~ 35%, low chroma, no exchangeable-base data reported (typical of histic profiles where laboratory chemistry on organic material is reported separately). By construction:

- [histic_horizon](#): PASSES on Oa.
- Mineral horizons below; mollic / umbric NA (no BS reported).

Usage

make_histosol_canonical()

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_kastanozem_canonical`*Build the canonical Kastanozem fixture*

Description

Synthetic continental-semiarid Kastanozem on loess-like substrate: mollic surface (chroma 3, value 3) – dark enough for mollic but not dark enough for Chernozem (chroma 3 > 2 in the upper 20 cm); secondary carbonates accumulating in the Bk. By construction:

- `mollic`: PASSES.
- `kastanozem`: PASSES.
- `chernozem, phaeozem`: FAIL.

Usage`make_kastanozem_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_latossolo_canonical`*Perfil canonico de Latossolo (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 10)*

Description

Reusa fixture WRB Ferralsol – B latossolico imediatamente abaixo de A, sem horizonte argilico acima.

Usage`make_latossolo_canonical()`

```
make_leptosol_canonical
```

Build the canonical Leptosol fixture

Description

Synthetic mountain-slope Leptosol on metamorphic rock: a thin A (10 cm) directly over continuous rock. By construction:

- [leptic_features](#): PASSES (R at 10 cm \leq 25).
- Other diagnostics fail on thickness, missing data, or absent diagnostic features.

Usage

```
make_leptosol_canonical()
```

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

```
make_lixisol_canonical
```

Build the canonical Lixisol fixture

Description

Synthetic Mediterranean / sub-tropical Lixisol on weathered calcareous parent material: argic horizon at Bt1 with low-activity clay (CEC/clay ~ 20) but high base saturation (BS ~ 70%) thanks to carbonate-buffered weathering. By construction:

- [argic](#): PASSES on Bt1.
- [lixisol](#): PASSES (CEC low, BS high).
- [acrisol](#), [alisol](#), [luvisol](#): FAIL.

Usage

```
make_lixisol_canonical()
```

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_luvisol_canonical`*Build the canonical Luvisol fixture*

Description

Synthetic temperate-zone Luvisol on loess: clear textural differentiation, Bt with clay coatings, high base saturation, high- activity clay. By construction:

- **argic**: PASSES on horizon Bt1 (clay increase from E (18%) to Bt1 (35%) gives ratio 1.94 in the 15-40% band; thickness 25 cm; texture clay loam; no glossic features).
- **ferralic**: FAILS (CEC/clay ~ 45 cmol_c/kg clay in the Bt – well above the 16 cmol_c/kg threshold).
- **mollic**: FAILS (A horizon: moist value 4 > 3, thickness 10 cm < 20 cm).

Usage`make_luvisol_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_luvisso_lo_canonical`*Perfil canonico de Luvisso_lo (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 11)*

Description

Solo com B textural argila Ta + V alta. Tipico do semiarido com rocha basica.

Usage`make_luvisso_lo_canonical()`

`make_neossolo_canonical`*Perfil canonico de Neossolo Litolico (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 12)*

Description

Solo raso sobre rocha continua dura. Sem horizonte B diagnostico.

Usage`make_neossolo_canonical()`

make_nitisol_canonical

Build the canonical Nitisol fixture

Description

Synthetic East-African Nitisol on weathered basalt: clay-rich ($\geq 50\%$), Fe-rich (DCB $\sim 6\%$), polyhedral structure with shiny ped surfaces. By construction [nitic_horizon](#) passes.

Usage

make_nitisol_canonical()

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

make_nitossolo_canonical

Perfil canonico de Nitossolo Vermelho (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 13)

Description

Solo argiloso ($\geq 35\%$ argila desde superficie) com B nitico (estrutura forte em blocos + cerosidade), gradiente textural baixo ($B/A \leq 1.5$).

Usage

make_nitossolo_canonical()

make_organossolo_canonical

Perfil canonico de Organossolo (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 14)

Description

Solo organico saturado, com horizonte H historico ≥ 60 cm e SOC alto. Tipico de varzea / brejo.

Usage

make_organossolo_canonical()

`make_phaeozem_canonical`*Build the canonical Phaeozem fixture*

Description

Synthetic humid-temperate Phaeozem on non-calcareous loess: mollic (chroma 2, value 2-3) and high BS, but no secondary carbonates anywhere – typical of more leached / less-arid steppe-forest transition. By construction:

- `mollic`: PASSES.
- `phaeozem`: PASSES.
- `chernoze`m, `kastanoze`m: FAIL (no carbonates).

Usage`make_phaeozem_canonical()`**Value**

A `PedonRecord`.

`make_planosol_canonical`*Build the canonical Planosol fixture*

Description

Synthetic temperate Planosol with abrupt textural change: sandy E (clay 12%) overlies a clay-rich Bt (35%) at 25 cm with an abrupt boundary. By construction `planic_features` passes.

Usage`make_planosol_canonical()`**Value**

A `PedonRecord`.

make_planossolo_canonical

Perfil canonico de Planossolo (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 15)

Description

Solo com horizonte E sobrejacente a B planico (mudanca textural abrupta + cores neutras + cromas baixos).

Usage

make_planossolo_canonical()

make_plinthosol_canonical

Build the canonical Plinthosol fixture

Description

Synthetic seasonally-saturated tropical Plinthosol: A horizon with typical Cerrado SOC; Btv with diagnostic plinthite (25% by volume over 60 cm); persistent plinthite at depth. By construction:

- **plinthic**: PASSES on Btv and Cv.
- **argic, ferralic, mollic, spodic, calcic, gypsic, salic**: FAIL.

Usage

make_plinthosol_canonical()

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

make_plintossolo_canonical

Perfil canonico de Plintossolo (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 16)

Description

Reusa fixture WRB Plinthosol – horizonte plintico iniciando dentro de 40 cm.

Usage

make_plintossolo_canonical()

make_podzol_canonical *Build the canonical Podzol fixture*

Description

Synthetic boreal / temperate-coniferous Podzol: bleached E (low clay, low CEC), illuvial Bs with diagnostic Al/Fe oxalate accumulation, weathered C. By construction:

- [spodic](#): PASSES on Bs ($Al_{ox} + 0.5 * Fe_{ox} = 0.6$, pH 4.5, 40 cm thick).
- [argic](#), [ferralic](#), [mollic](#), [cambic](#), [plinthic](#), [calcic](#), [gypsic](#), [salic](#): FAIL.

Usage

```
make_podzol_canonical()
```

Details

E horizon Munsell is set to chroma 3 (rather than canonical 1-2 of a true albic) to keep `gleyic_properties` clearly negative under the conservative v0.2 criterion.

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

make_retisol_canonical
Build the canonical Retisol fixture

Description

Synthetic temperate Retisol on loess over clay-rich substrate: bleached E with glossic tongues penetrating the underlying argic Bt. By construction [retic_properties](#) passes via the "glossic" designation pattern; [argic](#) also passes (this is correct – Retisols are argic + retic features, and the WRB key tests RT before AC/LX/AL/LV).

Usage

```
make_retisol_canonical()
```

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_solonchak_canonical`*Build the canonical Solonchak fixture*

Description

Synthetic Solonchak from a coastal-arid setting: surface salt accumulation gives the diagnostic salic horizon (EC 25 dS/m over 25 cm); EC declines but stays elevated in the Bz; non-saline C below. By construction:

- [salic](#): PASSES on Az.
- [gyptic](#), [calcic](#): FAIL.
- [argic](#), [ferrallic](#), [mollic](#): FAIL.

Usage`make_solonchak_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_solonetz_canonical`*Build the canonical Solonetz fixture*

Description

Synthetic Solonetz on saline-sodic substrate: argic Btn with columnar structure and high exchangeable Na (ESP ~ 28%). By construction [natric_horizon](#) passes.

Usage`make_solonetz_canonical()`**Value**

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_stagnosol_canonical`*Build the canonical Stagnosol fixture*

Description

Synthetic Stagnosol: redoximorphic features in a perched layer (Bg, 15-50 cm; redox 25%) but the deeper subsoil is well-drained (BC redox 2%, C redox 0). The decay-with-depth contrast is what distinguishes stagnic from gleyic. By construction [stagnic_properties](#) passes and [gleyic_properties](#) also passes (the surface redox qualifies for both); the WRB key tests Stagnosols (#16) and Gleysols (#9), so a real Stagnosol-typed fixture lands at Gleysols if both pass – the criteria differ in depth pattern, which is enough for the diagnostic functions but not for key precedence in v0.3. This is documented in the test as known overlap; v0.4 will add a stronger discriminator.

Usage

```
make_stagnosol_canonical()
```

Value

A [PedonRecord](#).

`make_synthetic_pedon_with_spectra`*Build a synthetic PedonRecord with attached spectra (testing aid)*

Description

Generates a small, deterministic [PedonRecord](#) with `n_horizons` horizons and a Vis-NIR spectral matrix (350:2500 nm). Useful for exercising [fill_from_spectra](#) in tests and vignettes.

Usage

```
make_synthetic_pedon_with_spectra(  
  n_horizons = 5L,  
  wavelengths = 350:2500,  
  seed = 1L  
)
```

Arguments

<code>n_horizons</code>	Integer number of horizons (default 5).
<code>wavelengths</code>	Integer vector of wavelengths (default 350:2500).

seed Integer applied through `with_seed` so the synthetic spectra are reproducible *without* mutating the caller's global RNG state (the prior stream is restored on exit). Pass NULL to draw from the current RNG stream untouched. Default 1L keeps the bit-for-bit identical output that earlier `soilKey` releases produced, but does so via `with_seed()` (CRAN policy: never call `set.seed()` on the caller's RNG).

Value

A `PedonRecord` with a `$spectra$vnir` matrix attached.

make_technosol_canonical

Build the canonical Technosol fixture

Description

Synthetic urban / industrial Technosol: surface horizon with 30% anthropogenic artefacts (brick, glass, slag, plastic). By construction `technic_features` passes.

Usage

`make_technosol_canonical()`

Value

A `PedonRecord`.

make_umbrisol_canonical

Build the canonical Umbrisol fixture

Description

Synthetic humid-temperate Umbrisol on weathered acidic schist: deep organic-rich dark surface with low base saturation – the acid analogue of a Phaeozem. By construction `umbric_horizon` passes; `mollic` fails on BS < 50.

Usage

`make_umbrisol_canonical()`

Value

A `PedonRecord`.

`make_vertisol_canonical`*Build the canonical Vertisol fixture*

Description

Synthetic Vertisol from a smectite-rich plain: deep clay (50-55%) with strong slickensides in the Bss horizon. Surface chroma 4 (above the mollic cap) so that vertic_properties is the only v0.2 diagnostic that passes. By construction:

- `vertic_properties`: PASSES on Bss and BC.
- `argic`, `ferralic`, `mollic`, `cambic`, `plinthic`, `spodic`, `calcic`, `gypsic`, `salic`: FAIL.

Usage`make_vertisol_canonical()`**Value**

A `PedonRecord`.

`make_vertissolo_canonical`*Perfil canonico de Vertissolo (SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 17)*

Description

Solo argiloso ($\geq 30\%$ argila desde superficie) com horizonte vertico (slickensides + fendas + clay alto) iniciando dentro de 100 cm. Reusa structure / fixture do WRB Vertisol.

Usage`make_vertissolo_canonical()`

melanic_andisol_usda *Melanic Andisols: melanic_epipedon present.*

Description

Melanic Andisols: melanic_epipedon present.

Usage

melanic_andisol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

melanic_epipedon_usda *Melanic epipedon (USDA Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition)*

Description

A thick, very dark, andic, organic-rich surface horizon associated with volcanic-ash-derived soils in cool, humid environments. Diagnostic for the Melanists / Melanudands great groups of Andisols.

Usage

melanic_epipedon_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

KST 13ed required characteristics (Ch. 3, pp 15-16):

- Upper boundary at or within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface (or organic layer with andic properties);
- Cumulative thickness ≥ 30 cm within 40 cm with all of:
 - Andic soil properties throughout;
 - Color value ≤ 2.5 moist AND chroma ≤ 2 throughout;
 - Melanic index ≤ 1.70 (deferred – specialized lab measurement);
 - OC ≥ 6 percent (weighted) AND ≥ 4 percent (each layer).

Implementation notes (v0.8.x):

- Andic soil properties are tested via `andic_properties_usda` (v0.9; for v0.8 we approximate with `bulk_density ≤ 0.9 g/cm3 AND phosphate_retention $\geq 85\%$`).
- Melanic index ($= 100 / (OC * 100 + 1)$ per KST appendix) is deferred – requires UV-Vis spectroscopy.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, pp 15-16.

mineral_material	<i>Mineral material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.11): < 20% SOC AND < 35% volume artefacts containing >= 20% organic carbon. The complement of organic_material / organotechnic_material.</i>
------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Mineral material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.11): < 20% SOC AND < 35% volume artefacts containing >= 20% organic carbon. The complement of organic_material / organotechnic_material.

Usage

```
mineral_material(pedon, max_oc = 20, max_organotechnic = 35)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_oc	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_organotechnic	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

mollic	<i>Mollic horizon (WRB 2022)</i>
--------	----------------------------------

Description

Tests whether any near-surface horizon meets the mollic horizon criteria. The mollic horizon is the diagnostic surface horizon of Chernozems, Phaeozems, Kastanozems, and several other RSGs; it indicates a thick, dark, base-rich, organic-matter-enriched topsoil formed under steppe or comparable vegetation.

Usage

```
mollic(
  pedon,
  min_thickness = 20,
  min_oc = 0.6,
  min_bs = 50,
  surface_top_cm = 5
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Minimum thickness in cm (default 20).
min_oc	Minimum SOC % (default 0.6).
min_bs	Minimum base saturation % (default 50).
surface_top_cm	Maximum top depth (cm) for a horizon to be considered "surface-related" (default 5). v0.1 uses this as a proxy for the WRB rule that mollic must form continuously from the soil surface (after mixing of upper 20 cm if required).

Details

Sub-tests called:

- [test_mollic_color](#) – moist value ≤ 3 , moist chroma ≤ 3 , dry value ≤ 5 .
- [test_mollic_organic_carbon](#) – SOC $\geq 0.6\%$.
- [test_mollic_base_saturation](#) – BS (NH₄OAc, pH 7) $\geq 50\%$.
- [test_mollic_thickness](#) – horizon thickness ≥ 20 cm.
- [test_mollic_structure](#) – not simultaneously massive AND very hard when dry.

v0.1 limitations: cumulative thickness across contiguous mollic- qualifying horizons is not yet supported – this matters for profiles where mollic criteria are met by an A1+A2 sequence but no single horizon is ≥ 20 cm thick. Mixing of upper 20 cm before the test (per WRB) is also deferred to v0.2.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022). *World Reference Base for Soil Resources*, 4th edition. International Union of Soil Sciences, Vienna. Chapter 3 – Mollic horizon.

mollic_epipedon_usda *Mollic epipedon (USDA Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition)*

Description

A thick, dark-colored, base-rich mineral surface horizon. The principal diagnostic horizon of the Mollisols order; also qualifies many subgroups of other orders as "Mollic" or "Pachic".

Usage

```
mollic_epipedon_usda(pedon, min_bs = 50, min_oc_pct = 0.6)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_bs	Default 50 percent.
min_oc_pct	Default 0.6 percent.

Details

KST 13ed required characteristics (Ch. 3, pp 15-17):

- Color: dominant color value ≤ 3 (moist) AND ≤ 5 (dry) AND chroma ≤ 3 (moist), with adjustments for CaCO₃ content (deferred to v0.9);
- Base saturation (NH₄OAc, pH 7) ≥ 50 percent throughout;
- Organic carbon ≥ 0.6 percent (or 2.5 percent if value is 4-5 moist; or 0.6 absolute > C horizon);
- Thickness: 18 cm general, 25 cm if texture is loamy fine sand or coarser, 10 cm if directly above lithic/densic/ paralithic contact (`thin_lithic_overlay` branch);
- Structure: peds ≤ 30 cm OR rupture-resistance \leq moderately hard;
- Some part moist 90+ days when soil temp at 50 cm is ≥ 5 C (deferred – requires climatic data).

Implementation notes (v0.8.x):

- Thickness rule is computed dynamically based on texture and presence of underlying lithic/paralithic contact.
- N value < 0.7 / fluidity nonfluid is assumed (laboratory tests rarely available);
- 90-day moisture condition is deferred to v0.9.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, pp 15-17.

mollisol_qualifying_usda

Mollisol Order qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed, Ch 12) Pass when mollic_epipedon AND BS (NH₄OAc) $\geq 50\%$ in upper 100 cm.

Description

Mollisol Order qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed, Ch 12) Pass when mollic_epipedon AND BS (NH₄OAc) $\geq 50\%$ in upper 100 cm.

Usage

mollisol_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

mollisol_usda *Mollisols (USDA Cap 12): mollic epipedon + base saturation >= 50%.*

Description

Mollisols (USDA Cap 12): mollic epipedon + base saturation >= 50%.

Usage

mollisol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

mudanca_textural_abrupta
Mudanca textural abrupta (SiBCS Cap 1, p 30-31)

Description

Aumento consideravel de argila em pequena distancia vertical (≤ 7.5 cm) na transicao A/E -> B:

- argila A < 200 g/kg: argila B $\geq 2x$ A; OR
- argila A 200-400 g/kg: incremento absoluto ≥ 200 g/kg (i.e. de 300 -> 500); OR
- argila A ≥ 400 g/kg: incremento absoluto ≥ 220 g/kg (i.e. de 420 -> 640).

Reuso de [abrupt_textural_difference](#) (WRB Ch 3.2.1) que ja codifica criterios essencialmente equivalentes.

Usage

mudanca_textural_abrupta(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

mulmic_material	<i>Mulmic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.12): mineral material developed from organic material; \geq 8% SOC, with low BD, structural / chroma criteria.</i>
-----------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Mulmic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.12): mineral material developed from organic material; \geq 8% SOC, with low BD, structural / chroma criteria.

Usage

```
mulmic_material(pedon, min_oc = 8, max_chroma = 2)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_oc	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_chroma	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

natric_horizon	<i>Natric horizon (WRB 2022)</i>
----------------	----------------------------------

Description

Tests for the natric horizon: an argic horizon with diagnostic sodium accumulation (ESP \geq 15%) within at least one argic layer. Diagnostic of Solonetz.

Usage

```
natric_horizon(pedon, min_esp = 15, min_pH_h2o = 7)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_esp	Minimum ESP % (default 15).
min_pH_h2o	Minimum pH(H ₂ O) for the ESP-only path (default 7.0; alkaline gate to exclude false-positive acidic Bt horizons).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

v0.9.76 designation + ESP-only inference (opt-in)

Field-described Solonetz profiles in NCSS / KSSL data routinely reach the natric ESP threshold (computed from `na_cmol / cec_cmol`) without satisfying the strict `argic()` clay-increase test, because surveyors record Btk-suffix designations (carbonates dominate the horizon designation choice) rather than Btn/Bn or `clay_pct` is missing.

With `options(soilKey.natric_designation_inference = TRUE)` the function accepts a layer as natric when the canonical `argic` test returns NA or FALSE AND *either*:

1. the designation matches `[A-Z][a-z0-9]*n` (an n master-letter modifier in the horizon name – e.g. `Btn`, `Btnz`, `Bn`, the curator’s direct assertion that natric features are present), OR
2. `ESP >= min_esp` on a B-prefixed subsoil layer (`top_cm > 20`) AND the layer’s `pH(H2O) >= 7` (alkaline – typical of true natric, excludes acidic Bt horizons that happen to read high Na from sea-spray).

Default is FALSE (canonical behaviour preserved).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3, Natric horizon.

`natric_horizon_usda` *Natric horizon helper (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3)*

Description

Pass when `natric_horizon` (WRB natric: argillic + `ESP > 15`) is present.

Usage

```
natric_horizon_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

`pedon` A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

natric_subgroup_usda *Natric Subgroup helper for Natraquerts.*

Description

Natric Subgroup helper for Natraquerts.

Usage

natric_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

neossolo *Neossolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 111-112; conceito Cap 3, p 96-97)*

Description

Solos pouco evoluídos: SEM horizonte B diagnóstico + ausência de: (a) glei dentro 150 cm, (b) plintico dentro 40 cm, (c) vertico imediatamente abaixo de A, (d) A chernozêmico conjugado com carbonático ou cálcico.

Usage

neossolo(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

neossolo_fluvico *Neossolos Fluvicos (Cap 12): caracter fluvico em < 150 cm.*

Description

Neossolos Fluvicos (Cap 12): caracter fluvico em < 150 cm.

Usage

neossolo_fluvico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

neossolo_litolico *Neossolos Litolicos (Cap 12): contato litico ou litico fragmentario
 \<= 50 cm.*

Description

v0.9.29 adds an "implicit lithic contact" heuristic for the FEBR / BDsolos snapshot, where the surveyor often documents Neossolos Litolicos by simply stopping the profile description at the rock boundary (max profile depth \leq 50 cm with no horizon explicitly marked R / Cr / Rk and no B horizon described). Per SiBCS Cap 12 (p 219), Neossolos Litolicos are defined by lithic contact within 50 cm of the surface; in FEBR, this is signalled by the depth of the deepest described horizon rather than by an explicit pseudo-R record.

Usage

neossolo_litolico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

The heuristic fires only when:

1. the deepest bottom_cm value is \leq 50 cm,
2. no horizon designation begins with B (so we don't accidentally flag shallow Argissolos / Latossolos / etc. that have a Bt or Bw within 50 cm), AND
3. the canonical contato_litico / contato_litico_fragmentario tests have NOT explicitly returned FALSE (i.e. the surveyor did not describe a non-rock material deeper than 50 cm).

Empirically, the heuristic flips ~190 of the 191 FEBR Litolicos from "neossolos regoliticos" (catch-all) to "neossolos litolicos" (correct), at the cost of a few false-positive Regoliticos that happen to be shallow (the FEBR confusion analysis showed only ~30 shallow Regoliticos).

neossolo_quartzarenico *Neossolos Quartzarenicos (Cap 12): textura areia/areia franca em todos os horizontes ate 150 cm + 95% quartzo.*

Description

Neossolos Quartzarenicos (Cap 12): textura areia/areia franca em todos os horizontes ate 150 cm + 95% quartzo.

Usage

```
neossolo_quartzarenico(pedon)
```

Arguments

```
pedon          A PedonRecord.
```

```
neossolo_regolitico  Neossolos Regolíticos (catch-all dos Neossolos).
```

Description

Neossolos Regolíticos (catch-all dos Neossolos).

Usage

```
neossolo_regolitico(pedon)
```

Arguments

```
pedon          A PedonRecord.
```

```
nitic_horizon      Nitic horizon (WRB 2022)
```

Description

Tests for the nitic horizon: a clay-rich ($\geq 30\%$), Fe-rich (DCB Fe $\geq 4\%$) subsurface horizon at least 30 cm thick. Diagnostic of Nitisols. WRB 2022 additionally requires polyhedral / nutty structure with shiny ped surfaces and a gradual (non-abrupt) clay decrease with depth.

Usage

```
nitic_horizon(  
  pedon,  
  min_clay = 30,  
  min_fe_dcb = 4,  
  min_thickness = 30,  
  max_clay_drop_pct = 8,  
  max_decrease_depth = 50  
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_clay	Minimum clay % (default 30).
min_fe_dcb	Minimum DCB-extractable Fe % (default 4).
min_thickness	Minimum thickness in cm (default 30).
max_clay_drop_pct	Maximum clay drop (percentage points) between adjacent layers within max_decrease_depth before failing the gradual-decrease test (default 8).
max_decrease_depth	Depth window (cm) for the gradual-decrease check (default 50).

Details

Required (AND-combined) sub-tests:

- Profile does not have a ferralic horizon (Ferralsol path is canonical for the clay-rich + low-CEC corner).
- clay % \geq min_clay.
- fe_dcb_pct \geq min_fe_dcb.
- thickness \geq min_thickness.

Supplementary (soft-AND) sub-tests – evaluated when evidence is present in the pedon, evaluate to NA (not a fail) when missing:

- structure_type matches polyhedral / nutty / (sub)angular blocky.
- slickensides / shiny ped surfaces present (proxy for WRB's "shiny ped surfaces").
- clay does not decrease abruptly between adjacent layers within 50 cm of the surface (gradual-decrease pattern; drop > 8 percentage points fails).

Supplementary tests fail (return passed = FALSE) only when evidence actively contradicts the criterion; missing evidence is permissive.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3, Nitic horizon.

nitossolo	<i>Nitossolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 114; conceito Cap 3, p 97-98)</i>
-----------	-----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

≥ 350 g/kg argila incluindo no horizonte A, com B nítico abaixo do A, com argila ativ baixa OR ativ alta + carater alumínico, na maior parte dos primeiros 100 cm do B (incl. BA).

Usage

nitossolo(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

nitossolo_bruno	<i>Nitossolos Brunos (Cap 13): matiz $\geq 7.5YR$ + valor ≤ 4 + croma ≤ 5.</i>
-----------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Nitossolos Brunos (Cap 13): matiz $\geq 7.5YR$ + valor ≤ 4 + croma ≤ 5 .

Usage

nitossolo_bruno(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

nitossolo_haplico	<i>Nitossolos Haplicos (catch-all).</i>
-------------------	-----------------------------------------

Description

Nitossolos Haplicos (catch-all).

Usage

nitossolo_haplico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

nitossolo_vermelho *Nitossolos Vermelhos (Cap 13): matiz \<= 2.5YR.*

Description

Nitossolos Vermelhos (Cap 13): matiz \<= 2.5YR.

Usage

nitossolo_vermelho(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

nitric_subgroup_usda *Nitric Subgroup helper (Anhyturbels / Anhyorthels)*

Description

Pass when a horizon ≥ 15 cm thick has nitrate concentration ≥ 118 mmol(-)/L AND (thickness * concentration) ≥ 3500 . (Nitrate is not in the schema; v0.8 returns NA with missing flag.)

Usage

nitric_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

normalise_febr_sibcs *Canonicalise FEBR SiBCS names to match soilKey rule outputs.*

Description

FEBR ships SiBCS labels in mixed legacy/modern form ("Podzolicos" for old name of Argissoles, singular vs plural, Portuguese accents). This helper folds them to the form produced by `run_sibcs_key()` so that benchmark accuracies can be computed without false negatives.

Usage

```
normalise_febr_sibcs(x, level = c("order", "subordem"))
```

Arguments

`x` Character vector of FEBR SiBCS names.
`level` One of "order" (default) or "subordem".

Value

Character vector of normalised SiBCS names; NA for labels that are out-of-scope for the comparison (e.g.\ legacy "Solos" category).

See Also

[normalise_febr_wrb](#), [normalise_febr_usda](#)

normalise_febr_usda *Normalise FEBR USDA taxon strings to USDA Soil Taxonomy Order*

Description

FEBR ships USDA Soil Taxonomy labels at the subgroup or great-group granularity (e.g. "TYPIC HAPLUDULT", "ACRUSTOX"). The suffix of the final word encodes the Order: `...OX` -> Oxisols, `...ULT` -> Ultisols, `...EPT` -> Inceptisols, etc. This helper extracts the Order from the suffix so the benchmark can compare against `classify_usda()`\$`rsg_or_order` at `level = "order"`.

Usage

```
normalise_febr_usda(x)
```

Arguments

`x` Character vector of FEBR USDA names.

Value

Character vector of normalised Order names ("Oxisols", "Ultisols", "Inceptisols", ...).

normalise_febr_wrb *Normalise FEBR WRB taxon strings to RSG-only*

Description

FEBR ships WRB names with full qualifier strings, e.g. "HUMIC FERRALSOL", "HAPLIC ACRISOL (ALUMIC, HYPERDYSTRIC, ...)". The trailing word (before any qualifier parens) is the RSG. This helper extracts and normalises it to soilKey's plural Title Case form ("Ferralsols", "Acrisols"), matching ClassificationResult\$rsg_or_order.

Usage

```
normalise_febr_wrb(x)
```

Arguments

x Character vector of FEBR WRB names.

Value

Character vector of normalised RSG names.

normalise_kssl_subgroup
 Normalise KSSL USDA subgroup labels for benchmark comparison

Description

KSSL stores 'samp_taxsubgrp' in lower-case, space-separated form ("typic hapludalfs", "aquic argiudolls"). soilKey's 'classify_usda()' returns Title Case names ("Typic Hapludalfs"). The benchmark runner at 'level = "subgroup"' lowercases both sides and trims whitespace, but this helper makes the normalisation explicit when users want to compare KSSL labels against arbitrary classifier output. Idempotent.

Usage

```
normalise_kssl_subgroup(x)
```

Arguments

x Character vector of KSSL subgroup names.

Value

Lowercase, single-space-separated vector.

ochric_epipedon_usda *Ochric epipedon (USDA Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition)*

Description

The catch-all surface epipedon: any A horizon (or surface horizon with pedogenic alteration) that does NOT meet the specific requirements of histic, folistic, melanic, mollic, umbric, anthropic or plaggen.

Usage

```
ochric_epipedon_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

KST 13ed (Ch 3, p 17): "The ochric epipedon fails to meet the definitions for any of the other seven epipedons because it is too thin or too dry, has too high a color value or chroma, contains too little organic carbon, has too high an n value, has too high a fluidity class or melanic index, or is both massive and hard or harder when dry."

Implementation: pass when none of the 6 implemented epipedons (histic, folistic, melanic, mollic, umbric – v0.8 implements 5; anthropic / plaggen are deferred to v0.9 but rare) pass AND the profile has at least one surface A horizon.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, p 17.

ollama_is_running *Is the local Ollama HTTP API reachable?*

Description

Probes <http://127.0.0.1:11434/api/tags> (the standard Ollama endpoint) with a short HTTP HEAD-style GET. Returns TRUE only if the request returns HTTP 200 in under `timeout_s` seconds. Used by [vlm_pick_provider](#) for the provider = "auto" fallback chain. Override the URL via `options(soilKey.ollama_url = "http://host:port")`.

Usage

```
ollama_is_running(url = NULL, timeout_s = 1.5)
```

Arguments

url	Override URL to probe (default reads <code>getOption("soilKey.ollama_url", default = "http://127.0.0.1:11434/api/tags")</code>).
timeout_s	Request timeout in seconds (default 1.5).

Value

Logical scalar.

organic_material	<i>Organic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.13): \geq 20% SOC + recognisability criteria. v0.3.3: SOC threshold only.</i>
------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Organic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.13): \geq 20% SOC + recognisability criteria. v0.3.3: SOC threshold only.

Usage

```
organic_material(pedon, min_oc = 20)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_oc	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

organossolo	<i>Organossolos (SiBCS Cap 4, chave do 1o nivel; conceito Cap 3, p 99-101)</i>
-------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Solos com horizonte hístico atendendo a um dos criterios de espessura: \geq 20 cm sobre rocha, \geq 40 cm continuo OR cumulativo nos 80 cm superficiais, OR \geq 60 cm se \geq 75% volume tecido vegetal.

Usage

```
organossolo(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

organossolo_folico	<i>Organossolos Folicos (Cap 14): horizonte O histico (drenado). Detectado via designation pattern \'^O\'</i> .
--------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Organossolos Folicos (Cap 14): horizonte O histico (drenado). Detectado via designation pattern \'^O\'

Usage

organossolo_folico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

organossolo_haplico	<i>Organossolos Haplicos (catch-all).</i>
---------------------	-------------------------------------------

Description

Organossolos Haplicos (catch-all).

Usage

organossolo_haplico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

organossolo_tiomorfico

Organossolos Tiomorficos (Cap 14): materiais sulfidricos OR horizonte sulfurico em < 100 cm.

Description

Organossolos Tiomorficos (Cap 14): materiais sulfidricos OR horizonte sulfurico em < 100 cm.

Usage

organossolo_tiomorfico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

organotechnic_material

Organotechnic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.14): \geq 35% volume of artefacts that themselves contain \geq 20% organic C. Soil itself has < 20% SOC.

Description

Organotechnic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.14): \geq 35% volume of artefacts that themselves contain \geq 20% organic C. Soil itself has < 20% SOC.

Usage

organotechnic_material(pedon, min_artefacts = 35, max_oc = 20)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 min_artefacts Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 max_oc Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

ornithogenic_material *Ornithogenic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.15): bird-influenced topsoil. Mehlich-3 P >= 750 mg/kg + designation pattern Aornit|Bornit.*

Description

Ornithogenic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.15): bird-influenced topsoil. Mehlich-3 P >= 750 mg/kg + designation pattern Aornit|Bornit.

Usage

```
ornithogenic_material(pedon, min_p_mehlich3 = 750)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 min_p_mehlich3 Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

ossl_demo_sa *Synthetic OSSL South America demo subset*

Description

A small, deterministic, OSSL-shaped artefact for use in vignettes, examples and tests when the real Open Soil Spectral Library data is not available (no network, sensitive deployment, CI). The object has the canonical list(Xr, Yr, metadata) shape consumed by [predict_ossl_mbl](#) / [fill_from_spectra](#), so the in-package demo path is identical to the real-data path.

Usage

```
ossl_demo_sa
```

Format

A list with three elements:

Xr Numeric matrix, 80 rows (synthetic profiles) x 2151 columns (wavelengths 350-2500 nm). Reflectance values in [0.05, 0.85].

Yr Data frame, 80 rows x 9 columns (clay_pct, sand_pct, silt_pct, cec_cmol, bs_pct, ph_h2o, oc_pct, fe_dcb_pct, caco3_pct). Property ranges follow the OSSL global summary statistics.

metadata Named list with provenance information (region, n_profiles, snapshot, seed, note, ...).

Details

This is a **synthetic** placeholder: the spectra are generated from a tropical-soil baseline plus property-correlated absorption bands (1400 nm OH-water, 1900 nm clay-OH, 2200 nm Al-OH, 900 nm Fe-oxide) with deterministic noise. It is *not* a substitute for real OSSL measurements. For paper-grade work, populate a real OSSL artefact via:

```
ossl_lib <- download_ossl_subset(region = "south_america")
```

Re-build the demo with `source("data-raw/build_ossl_demo.R")`.

Source

Synthetic; built by `data-raw/build_ossl_demo.R` with seed 20260430. The OSSL property ranges that drove the simulation come from Sanderman, J. *et al.* (2024), *Open Soil Spectral Library*, <https://soilspectroscopy.org/>.

Examples

```
data(ossl_demo_sa)
dim(ossl_demo_sa$Xr)
#> [1] 80 2151
head(ossl_demo_sa$Yr)
```

```
# Use it as the ossl_library argument to predict_ossl_mbl():
pedon <- make_synthetic_pedon_with_spectra()
fill_from_spectra(pedon,
  library      = "ossl",
  method       = "mbl",
  ossl_library = ossl_demo_sa)
```

ossl_library_template *Canonical schema for an 'ossl_library' object*

Description

`predict_ossl_mbl` and `predict_ossl_plsr_local` take an `ossl_library` argument that must be a list with two named elements:

Usage

```
ossl_library_template(
  wavelengths = 350:2500,
  properties = c("clay_pct", "sand_pct", "silt_pct", "cec_cmol", "bs_pct", "ph_h2o",
    "oc_pct", "fe_dcb_pct", "caco3_pct")
)
```

Arguments

wavelengths	Integer vector of wavelengths (default 350:2500 nm for Vis-NIR/SWIR).
properties	Character vector of property column names to seed the empty Yr data.frame with.

Details

- Xr: numeric matrix, rows = OSSL training spectra, columns = wavelengths. Must align (after preprocessing) with the column space used by the spectra you predict on.
- Yr: data.frame keyed by property name (e.g. clay_pct, cec_cmol), one row per training spectrum.

This function returns an empty template you can populate from a real OSSL extract (e.g. via the `ossl-import` Python package or the public S3 mirror at <https://storage.googleapis.com/soilspec4gg-public/>).

`soilKey` does **not** bundle OSSL data; until you populate this template with real values, all `'predict_ossl_*'` calls fall back to the deterministic synthetic predictor (which prints a warning).

Value

A list with Xr (a 0-row matrix of the right column dimension) and Yr (an empty data.frame with the requested columns).

oxic_horizon_usda *Oxic horizon (USDA, KST 13ed, Ch 3) Delegates to WRB ferralic.*

Description

Oxic horizon (USDA, KST 13ed, Ch 3) Delegates to WRB ferralic.

Usage

```
oxic_horizon_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

oxic_usda	<i>Oxic horizon (USDA Soil Taxonomy)</i>
-----------	------------------------------------------

Description

The USDA oxic horizon is the diagnostic of Oxisols. Its central criteria match the WRB 2022 ferralic horizon closely enough that v0.2 simply delegates: every fixture that classifies as Oxisol via USDA also classifies as Ferralsol via WRB and vice-versa. The fine-grained differences (USDA's water-dispersible-clay test, the sand-fraction weatherable-mineral cut-offs) are tracked in the diagnostics.yaml for v0.8 refinement.

Usage

```
oxic_usda(pedon, ...)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
...	Passed to ferralic .

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#) (with name = "oxic_usda").

References

Soil Survey Staff (2014). *Keys to Soil Taxonomy*, 12th edition. USDA-NRCS, Washington DC. Chapter 3 – Diagnostic Horizons; oxic.

oxisol_usda	<i>Oxisol (USDA Cap 13): oxic horizon, excluding profiles with an argillic horizon overlying the oxic.</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

v0.9.17 fix: KST 13ed Ch 13 (p 295) excludes from Oxisols any profile whose argillic horizon's upper boundary lies within 100 cm of the surface AND whose argillic base lies within 30 cm of the upper boundary of the oxic. Operationally we use the simpler and more defensible "argillic above oxic" check: if argillic exists and starts strictly shallower than the oxic, the profile is NOT an Oxisol (route to Ultisols / Alfisols instead). The previous v0.8 implementation lacked this exclusion and was responsible for misclassifying 144 Embrapa FEBR Ultisols as Oxisols in the v0.9.16 benchmark.

Usage

```
oxisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

oxyaquic_subgroup_usda

Oxyaquic Subgroup helper (Spodosols, Mollisols, etc.)

Description

Pass when the soil is saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for either or both:

- 20+ consecutive days; OR
- 30+ cumulative days.

Usage

oxyaquic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

v0.8 proxy: pass when redoximorphic features OR low chroma in any layer within 100 cm (subset of full aquic conditions).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

pachic_subgroup_usda *Pachic Subgroup helper (Andisols, Mollisols) Pass when mollic OR umbric epipedon is >= 50 cm thick.*

Description

Pachic Subgroup helper (Andisols, Mollisols) Pass when mollic OR umbric epipedon is >= 50 cm thick.

Usage

pachic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

pale_qualifying_usda *Pale qualifying helper (Paleudults / Paleustults / Palixerults / Palehumults / Paleaquults)*

Description

Pass when an argillic horizon has either:

- clay \geq 35% in upper 30 cm of argillic; OR
- lithologic discontinuity NOT followed by argic; OR
- argillic that does NOT decrease in clay \geq 20% relative from its maximum.

v0.8 proxy: clay_pct \geq 35% in upper argillic.

Usage

pale_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

paleargid_qualifying_usda
Paleargid qualifying helper Pass when argillic horizon has continuous clay films AND clay \geq 35% in upper 10 cm (proxy for old, well-developed argillic). v0.8 proxy: argillic + clay_pct \geq 35 in upper 30 cm.

Description

Paleargid qualifying helper Pass when argillic horizon has continuous clay films AND clay \geq 35% in upper 10 cm (proxy for old, well-developed argillic). v0.8 proxy: argillic + clay_pct \geq 35 in upper 30 cm.

Usage

paleargid_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

panpaic	<i>Panpaic horizon (WRB 2022 Ch 3.1)</i>
---------	------------------------------------------

Description

From Quechua *p'anpay* = "to bury". A buried diagnostic horizon (any horizon whose original surface was subsequently overlain by younger material). Used by the Panpaic qualifier and by the Cambisols / Anthrosols branches.

Usage

```
panpaic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

v0.3.5 detection: designation pattern starting with a digit other than 1 (e.g. 2A, 2Bw, 3C) – the WRB / FAO convention for buried horizons – OR a b suffix in the designation (e.g. Ahb, Bwb).

pedon_json_schema	<i>JSON Schema for a soilKey PedonRecord</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------

Description

Returns a Draft-2020-12 JSON Schema describing the canonical PedonRecord structure: a site object with site-level metadata plus a horizons array where each element matches the canonical horizon schema documented by [horizon_column_spec](#).

Usage

```
pedon_json_schema(as = c("list", "json"), pretty = TRUE)
```

Arguments

as One of "list" (default; returns a structured R list ready to serialise) or "json" (returns a JSON string; requires the `jsonlite` package).

pretty Logical, only used for as = "json".

Value

A list (default) or a JSON string.

Examples

```

schema <- pedon_json_schema()
names(schema)

# Validate a JSON profile against the schema:
if (requireNamespace("jsonvalidate", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("jsonlite", quietly = TRUE)) {
  schema_json <- pedon_json_schema(as = "json")
  p <- make_ferralsol_canonical()
  p_json <- jsonlite::toJSON(list(site = p$site,
                                horizons = list()),
                             auto_unbox = TRUE, null = "null")
  jsonvalidate::json_validate(p_json, schema_json, engine = "ajv")
}

```

pedon_to_spc

Convert a soilKey PedonRecord to an aqp SoilProfileCollection

Description

The mapping respects aqp's expected column conventions and sets the metadata required by `getArgillicBounds()`, `getCambicBounds()`, and `mollicEpipedon()`:

Usage

```
pedon_to_spc(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

- id from pedon\$site\$id
- top / bottom from top_cm / bottom_cm
- name (designation) from designation
- texcl (texture class) derived via [texture_class_from_pct](#)
- clay, silt, sand from clay_pct / silt_pct / sand_pct
- m_hue, m_value, m_chroma, d_value, d_chroma from munsell_*_moist and munsell_*_dry

Internal use; the soilKey diagnostics call this on the fly when engine = "aqp". Direct use is supported for users who want to plug additional aqp algorithms (slab, slice, glom) into a soilKey workflow.

Value

A `aqp::SoilProfileCollection` with one site (the pedon) and one row per horizon.

 PedonRecord

PedonRecord: structured representation of a single pedon

Description

PedonRecord: structured representation of a single pedon

PedonRecord: structured representation of a single pedon

Details

The central data carrier in soilKey. A PedonRecord bundles everything we know about one soil profile: site metadata, the horizons table (with a fixed canonical schema — see [horizon_column_spec](#)), optional Vis-NIR/MIR spectra, profile photographs, source documents, and a provenance log that records, per (horizon, attribute) pair, where each value came from (measured, extracted_vlm, predicted_spectra, inferred_prior, user_assumed).

All diagnostic functions ([argic](#), [ferralic](#), [mollic](#), ...) consume a PedonRecord directly. The provenance log is what allows the final [ClassificationResult](#) to assign a meaningful evidence grade.

Public fields

site List. Site-level metadata: lat, lon, crs (default 4326), date, country, elevation_m, slope_pct, aspect_deg, landform, parent_material, land_use, vegetation, drainage_class, plus an arbitrary id.

horizons data.table with the canonical horizon schema.

spectra List with optional vnir matrix (rows = horizons, cols = wavelengths in nm), mir matrix, and metadata list.

images List of named lists describing profile photographs.

documents List of named lists describing source documents.

provenance data.table with columns horizon_idx, attribute, source, confidence, notes.

Methods

Public methods:

- [PedonRecord\\$new\(\)](#)
- [PedonRecord\\$validate\(\)](#)
- [PedonRecord\\$to_aqp\(\)](#)
- [PedonRecord\\$from_aqp\(\)](#)
- [PedonRecord\\$add_measurement\(\)](#)
- [PedonRecord\\$summary\(\)](#)
- [PedonRecord\\$print\(\)](#)
- [PedonRecord\\$clone\(\)](#)

Method [new\(\)](#): Construct a PedonRecord.

Usage:

```
PedonRecord$new(
  site = NULL,
  horizons = NULL,
  spectra = NULL,
  images = NULL,
  documents = NULL,
  provenance = NULL
)
```

Arguments:

site List of site-level metadata.

horizons data.frame/data.table of horizons.

spectra Optional list with vnir, mir, metadata.

images Optional list of image descriptors.

documents Optional list of document descriptors.

provenance Optional provenance data.table; if NULL, an empty one is created.

Method `validate()`: Validate the record against soil-physical sanity rules.

Checks: top < bottom for every horizon; no overlapping depths; clay+silt+sand sum to 100 ± 2 where all three are reported; pH values plausible (1..12); CEC \geq sum of exchangeable bases (Ca, Mg, K, Na); Munsell value/chroma in plausible ranges; coarse fragments percent in [0, 100]; OC geographic ranges. Returns a list with valid, errors, warnings, n_horizons.

Usage:

```
PedonRecord$validate(strict = FALSE, verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments:

strict If TRUE, throws on errors instead of returning.

verbose If TRUE, prints messages via cli.

Returns: Invisibly, a list summarising the validation outcome.

Method `to_aqp()`: Coerce to an aqp SoilProfileCollection.

Usage:

```
PedonRecord$to_aqp()
```

Returns: A SoilProfileCollection. Requires the aqp package.

Method `from_aqp()`: Populate this record from an aqp SoilProfileCollection.

Usage:

```
PedonRecord$from_aqp(spc, top_col = "top_cm", bottom_col = "bottom_cm")
```

Arguments:

spc A SoilProfileCollection.

top_col Name of the top-depth column in spc (mapped to top_cm).

bottom_col Name of the bottom-depth column (mapped to bottom_cm).

Returns: Invisibly self (mutated in place).

Method `add_measurement()`: Add a measurement (or extracted/predicted value) and record its provenance.

Usage:

```
PedonRecord$add_measurement(
  horizon_idx,
  attribute,
  value,
  source = "measured",
  confidence = 1,
  notes = NA_character_,
  overwrite = FALSE
)
```

Arguments:

`horizon_idx` Integer horizon index (1-based).
`attribute` Name of the horizon column to set.
`value` New value for that cell.
`source` One of "measured", "extracted_vlm", "predicted_spectra", "inferred_prior", "user_assumed".
`confidence` Numeric in [0, 1].
`notes` Optional free-text note.
`overwrite` If FALSE (default) and the cell already has a value from a more authoritative source, leave it alone. If TRUE, overwrite.

Returns: Invisibly self.

Method `summary()`: Compact summary list (for serialization or testing).

Usage:

```
PedonRecord$summary(...)
```

Arguments:

`...` Ignored (S3 summary signature compatibility).

Method `print()`: Pretty-print the record.

Usage:

```
PedonRecord$print(...)
```

Arguments:

`...` Ignored (S3 print signature compatibility).

Method `clone()`: The objects of this class are cloneable with this method.

Usage:

```
PedonRecord$clone(deep = FALSE)
```

Arguments:

`deep` Whether to make a deep clone.

permafrost_within_usda

Permafrost (USDA Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition)

Description

"Permafrost is defined as a thermal condition in which a material (including soil material) remains below 0 C for 2 or more years in succession." – KST 13ed, Ch 3, p 47.

Usage

```
permafrost_within_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Maximum depth where permafrost must occur (default 100 cm – Gelisols criterion at Order level).

Details

Permafrost is the defining characteristic of the Gelisols order (within 100 cm of the soil surface) and qualifies many subgroups across Histosols (Histels), Inceptisols, and others.

Implementation: Uses permafrost_temp_C from schema. A layer qualifies as permafrost when its permafrost_temp_C is ≤ 0 C. The function checks whether any qualifying layer occurs within max_top_cm of the surface.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, p 47.

petrocalcic

Petrocalcic horizon (WRB 2022)

Description

A continuously cemented variant of the calcic horizon. Same chemistry ($\text{CaCO}_3 \geq 15\%$) plus moderate-or-greater cementation in at least 50% of the layer.

Usage

```
petrocalcic(pedon, min_thickness = 10, min_caco3_pct = 15)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_caco3_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

petrocalcic_subgroup_usda

Petrocalcic Subgroup helper (Aridisols Petrocalcids) Cemented calcic horizon with cementation_class >= "strongly".

Description

Petrocalcic Subgroup helper (Aridisols Petrocalcids) Cemented calcic horizon with cementation_class >= "strongly".

Usage

```
petrocalcic_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

petroduric

Petroduric horizon (WRB 2022): cemented duric.

Description

Petroduric horizon (WRB 2022): cemented duric.

Usage

```
petroduric(pedon, min_thickness = 10, min_duripan_pct = 10)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_duripan_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

petroferric_contact_usda

Petroferric contact helper (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, p 48)

Description

Ironstone-like layer with >50% Fe oxides, indurated. v0.8 proxy: cementation_class in {strongly, indurated} AND plinthite_pct >= 50 (Fe-rich) AND coarse_fragments_pct >= 50.

Usage

```
petroferric_contact_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 125)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Default 125.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

petrogypsic

Petrogypsic horizon (WRB 2022): cemented gypsic.

Description

Petrogypsic horizon (WRB 2022): cemented gypsic.

Usage

```
petrogypsic(pedon, min_thickness = 10, min_gypsum_pct = 5)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_gypsum_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

petrogypsic_horizon_usda

Petrogypsic horizon helper (USDA)

Description

Pass when a horizon has cementation_class in {strongly, indurated} AND caso4_pct >= 5 within max_top_cm.

Usage

```
petrogypsic_horizon_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Default 100.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

petrogypsic_subgroup_usda

Petrogypsic Subgroup helper – delegate to petrogypsic_horizon_usda

Description

Petrogypsic Subgroup helper – delegate to petrogypsic_horizon_usda

Usage

```
petrogypsic_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

petronodic_subgroup_usda

Petronodic Subgroup helper (Aridisols) Pass when 5%+ rock fragments cemented by carbonates within 100 cm. v0.8 proxy: caco3_pct >= 15 AND coarse_fragments_pct >= 5.

Description

Petronodic Subgroup helper (Aridisols) Pass when 5%+ rock fragments cemented by carbonates within 100 cm. v0.8 proxy: caco3_pct >= 15 AND coarse_fragments_pct >= 5.

Usage

```
petronodic_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

petroplinthic

Petroplinthic horizon (WRB 2022): cemented plinthic.

Description

Petroplinthic horizon (WRB 2022): cemented plinthic.

Usage

```
petroplinthic(pedon, min_thickness = 10, min_plinthite_pct = 15)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_plinthite_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

phaeozem	<i>Phaeozem RSG diagnostic (WRB 2022)</i>
----------	-------------------------------------------

Description

Tests whether a profile satisfies the Phaeozem RSG criteria: a mollic horizon AND no secondary carbonate accumulation anywhere in the profile.

Usage

```
phaeozem(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Phaeozems.

pi_to_confidence	<i>Map a 95% prediction interval to a [0, 1] confidence score</i>
------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Tightens confidence as the prediction interval narrows relative to the predicted value: $\text{confidence} = 1 - (\text{PI95_width} / |\text{value}|) / 4$, floored at 0 and capped at 1. When value is near zero we fall back to an absolute-width heuristic so we never blow up.

Usage

```
pi_to_confidence(pi95_low, pi95_high, value = NULL)
```

Arguments

pi95_low Lower 2.5% quantile of the prediction.
pi95_high Upper 97.5% quantile of the prediction.
value Optional point prediction. When supplied, normalisation is by $|\text{value}|$; otherwise by $|\text{midpoint}|$.

Details

Properties of the mapping:

- Zero-width interval -> confidence = 1.
- Interval whose width equals $|value| * 4$ -> confidence = 0.
- NA value or NA bounds -> confidence = 0.5 (neutral).

Value

Numeric in $[\emptyset, 1]$.

pick_engine

Choose the best diagnostic engine for a single pedon

Description

Per-pedon heuristic: returns "aqp" if the pedon's horizon table has the morphological richness that makes aqp's canonical NRCS dispatch reliable, otherwise returns "soilkey" (the more permissive hand-coded path).

Usage

```
pick_engine(pedon, min_score = 3L)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

min_score Integer (1-5). Minimum completeness score for "aqp" engine to fire (default 3).

Value

Character: "aqp" or "soilkey".

Heuristic

We score each pedon on a 0-5 morphology-completeness scale; aqp fires when $score \geq min_score$ (default 3). The five axes:

1. **Designation present** (any layer has a non-blank designation, e.g. "A1", "Bt2", "Bw").
2. **Texture quantitative** (any layer has both clay_pct and sand_pct populated).
3. **Munsell complete** (any layer has all three of munsell_hue_moist, munsell_value_moist, munsell_chroma_moist populated).
4. **Structure recorded** (any layer has a non-blank structure_grade).
5. **Clay films / argic evidence** (any layer has a non-blank clay_films_amount or designation pattern matching Bt).

Why this matters

On BDsolos RJ (data-rich), the heuristic recommends aqp for ~99 canonical thresholds). On LUCAS topsoil-only (data-sparse), it recommends aqp for ~0 clay-films / designation axes are unfilled. Calling `classify_*(pedon)` routed through the heuristic gives the correct engine per pedon, recovering both the BDsolos RJ lift AND the LUCAS robustness.

See Also

[argic](#), [cambic](#).

pick_engine_batch	<i>Per-pedon batch engine recommendation</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------

Description

Vectorised version of [pick_engine](#) returning the recommended engine for each pedon in a list.

Usage

```
pick_engine_batch(pedons, min_score = 3L)
```

Arguments

pedons	A list of PedonRecord objects.
min_score	Integer; forwarded to <code>pick_engine</code> .

Value

Character vector of length(`pedons`) with values "aqp" or "soilkey".

pisoplinthic	<i>Pisoplinthic horizon (WRB 2022): pisolitic plinthic. v0.3.3 detects via designation pattern Bspl / Bvpi or via plinthite \>= 15% AND structure_type containing 'pisol'.</i>
--------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Pisoplinthic horizon (WRB 2022): pisolitic plinthic. v0.3.3 detects via designation pattern Bspl / Bvpi or via plinthite $\geq 15\%$ AND structure_type containing 'pisol'.

Usage

```
pisoplinthic(pedon, min_thickness = 15, min_plinthite_pct = 15)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 min_thickness Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 min_plinthite_pct Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

plagic_horizon_usda *Plagic horizon (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, pp 47-48)*

Description

Pass when a thin (1-25 mm) Fe/Mn-cemented horizon is present. Detected via designation containing 'm' (cemented) AND cementation_class in {strongly, indurated} AND thickness between 1 mm and 25 mm.

Usage

plagic_horizon_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 max_top_cm Default 100.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

plaggic *Plaggic horizon (WRB 2022): sod-derived topsoil >= 20 cm with low BD AND independent evidence of human input.*

Description

v0.9.2.C tightening: the v0.3.3 implementation accepted ANY thick, low-BD, OC-rich A horizon, which over-fired across natural mollic / umbric / chernic surfaces. The diagnostic now requires, in addition to the OC + BD + thickness baseline, at least one independent anthropogenic-input marker:

- p_mehlich3_mg_kg >= 50 (sustained sod / manure additions concentrate Mehlich-3 P in the topsoil), OR
- artefacts_pct > 0 (any human artefact volume fraction is sufficient as a presence signal), OR
- designation pattern Ap1 / Ap1g / Apk / explicit "plagg".

Without one of those markers the diagnostic returns FALSE even when OC + BD + thickness pass. This mirrors the v0.9.1 qual_plaggic gate but enforces the rule at the diagnostic level so any caller (SiBCS, USDA, future modules) inherits the protection.

Usage

```
plaggic(
  pedon,
  min_thickness = 20,
  max_bd = 1.5,
  min_oc = 0.6,
  min_p_mehlich3 = 50
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_bd	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_oc	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_p_mehlich3	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

planic_features	<i>Planic features (WRB 2022)</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------------

Description

Tests whether the profile shows an abrupt textural change between adjacent horizons (clay-doubling within 7.5 cm vertical distance, typically at the E/Bt boundary). Diagnostic of Planosols.

Usage

```
planic_features(pedon, min_ratio = 2, require_abrupt_boundary = TRUE)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_ratio	Minimum clay ratio (default 2.0).
require_abrupt_boundary	If TRUE (default), the upper horizon must have boundary_distinctness matching "abrupt".

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Planosols.

 planosol

Planosol RSG gate (WRB 2022 Ch 4, p 107)

Description

WRB-canonical: abrupt textural difference ≤ 75 cm AND, in 5 cm directly above or below the abrupt textural difference, stagnic properties ($\geq 50\%$ redoximorphic features) AND reducing conditions.

Usage

planosol(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

v0.3.4 enforces all three components. The 5-cm-window restriction is relaxed to "the layer immediately above or below the abrupt textural difference satisfies stagnic + reducing".

 planossolo

Planossolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 112; conceito Cap 3, p 101-102)

Description

Horizonte B planico nao coincidente com plintico (sem carater sodico), imediatamente abaixo de A ou E.

Usage

planossolo(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

planossolo_haplico *Planossolos Haplicos (catch-all).*

Description

Planossolos Haplicos (catch-all).

Usage

planossolo_haplico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

planossolo_natrico *Planossolos Natricos (Cap 15): caracter sodico em \< 100 cm.*

Description

Planossolos Natricos (Cap 15): caracter sodico em \< 100 cm.

Usage

planossolo_natrico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

plinth_subgroup_usda *Plinth qualifying helper (Plinth*ults) Pass when plinthite >= 5% in 50%+ of layers within 150 cm.*

Description

Plinth qualifying helper (Plinth*ults) Pass when plinthite >= 5% in 50%+ of layers within 150 cm.

Usage

plinth_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 150)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

plinthaquox_qualifying_usda

*Plinthaquox qualifying helper (Aquox: continuous plinthite phase)
Pass when plinthite \geq 50% in some 10+ cm layer (continuous phase proxy).*

Description

Plinthaquox qualifying helper (Aquox: continuous plinthite phase) Pass when plinthite \geq 50% in some 10+ cm layer (continuous phase proxy).

Usage

```
plinthaquox_qualifying_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 125)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

plinthic

Plinthic horizon (WRB 2022)

Description

Tests whether any horizon meets the plinthic horizon criteria. Plinthite is Fe-rich material that hardens irreversibly on repeated wetting and drying; the plinthic horizon is the diagnostic of Plinthosols.

Usage

```
plinthic(pedon, min_thickness = 15, min_plinthite_pct = 15)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Minimum thickness in cm (default 15).
min_plinthite_pct	Minimum volume % plinthite (default 15).

Details

Sub-tests:

- `test_plinthite_concentration` – plinthite volume % \geq 15
- `test_minimum_thickness` – thickness \geq 15 cm

v0.2 limitations: WRB 2022 also accepts profiles with \geq 40% red Fe-rich mottles as alternative criterion – not yet wired. The "irreversibly hardens" criterion is conceptual and requires field observation; v0.2 takes `plinthite_pct` as already representing true plinthite (as opposed to soft mottles).

Value

A `DiagnosticResult`.

v0.9.72 designation morphological inference (opt-in)

Field-described Brazilian Plintossolos profiles (e.g. the Embrapa Redape curated dataset) routinely encode plinthite via the designation suffix `f` in the master letter sequence (e.g. `Btf`, `2Btf`, `Cf`) – the curator's direct assertion that plinthite is present – without recording `plinthite_pct` as a numeric volume percent.

With `options(soilKey.plinthic_designation_inference = TRUE)` the function accepts a layer as plinthic when:

1. the canonical `plinthite_pct` test is NA for that layer, AND
2. the designation matches `[A-Z]+[A-Za-z]*f[0-9]?` (a `f` master-letter modifier in any sub-position).

Default is FALSE (canonical behaviour preserved).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3, Plinthic horizon.

`plinthic_subgroup_usda`

Plinthic Subgroup helper (Oxisols) Pass when plinthite \geq 5% in any horizon within 125 cm.

Description

Plinthic Subgroup helper (Oxisols) Pass when plinthite \geq 5% in any horizon within 125 cm.

Usage

```
plinthic_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 125)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

plintossolo *Plintossolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 113; conceito Cap 3, p 102-104)*

Description

Horizonte plintico (nao coincidente com B planico de carater sodico), OR litoplintico, OR concrecionario, iniciando dentro de 40 cm OR dentro de 200 cm precedido de glei OR A/E OR horizonte com cores palidas / variegadas / mosqueados.

Usage

plintossolo(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

plintossolo_argiluvico *Plintossolos Argiluvicos (Cap 16): horizonte plintico + B textural OR carater argiluvico.*

Description

Plintossolos Argiluvicos (Cap 16): horizonte plintico + B textural OR carater argiluvico.

Usage

plintossolo_argiluvico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

plintossolo_haplico *Plintossolos Haplicos (catch-all).*

Description

Plintossolos Haplicos (catch-all).

Usage

plintossolo_haplico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

plintossolo_petrico *Plintossolos Petricos (Cap 16): horizonte concrecionario OR litoplintico (sem horizonte plintico precedendo).*

Description

Plintossolos Petricos (Cap 16): horizonte concrecionario OR litoplintico (sem horizonte plintico precedendo).

Usage

plintossolo_petrico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

posterior_classify *Bayesian posterior classifier (optional)*

Description

Combines a deterministic `ClassificationResult` with a spatial prior. The deterministic key remains authoritative – this function reports only an alternative probabilistic view useful for downstream uncertainty quantification.

Usage

```
posterior_classify(result, prior, epsilon = 0.001)
```

Arguments

result	A <code>ClassificationResult</code> from <code>classify_wrb2022</code> .
prior	A spatial-prior <code>data.table</code> (as returned by <code>spatial_prior</code>).
epsilon	Small smoothing constant added to all prior entries before normalising, so RSGs unseen by the prior do not receive zero posterior.

Details

Posterior is computed under the simple model:

$$P(rsg|site, evidence) \propto L(rsg|evidence) \times P(rsg|site)$$

where the likelihood L is concentrated on the deterministic assignment (delta-1 at that code) by default, optionally smoothed if `key_passed_others` is supplied.

Value

A `data.table` with columns `rsg_code`, `prior`, `likelihood`, `posterior`.

predict.soilKey_pls_model
Predict from a soilKey_pls_model

Description

S3 method that applies a trained PLSR model from `train_pls_from_oss1` to a (pre-processed) numeric matrix and returns predictions plus a 95 built from the cross-validated training RMSE.

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'soilKey_pls_model'
predict(object, X, ...)
```

Arguments

object	A soilKey_pls_model object.
X	A pre-processed numeric matrix (rows = samples, columns = wavelengths). Must have the same column count used at training time.
...	Reserved.

Value

A data.frame with columns value, pi95_low, pi95_high, one row per sample.

predict_from_spectra *Predict soil properties from spectra*

Description

Ergonomic, named entry point for the OSSSL-backed predictive pipeline. Accepts either a [PedonRecord](#) or a numeric spectra matrix, applies the same preprocessing used at training time (recorded on each model), and returns predictions in the canonical long-form schema.

Usage

```
predict_from_spectra(
  pedon_or_spectra,
  models = NULL,
  properties = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

pedon_or_spectra	A PedonRecord (predictions merged into the pedon) OR a numeric matrix / vector of raw Vis-NIR spectra (rows = horizons, columns = wavelengths).
models	A named list of soilKey_pls_model objects (output of train_pls_from_oss1). Required.
properties	Character vector of property names to predict. Defaults to all properties in models.
overwrite	Passed to fill_from_spectra when pedon_or_spectra is a PedonRecord.
verbose	Verbosity passed downstream.
...	Ignored (reserved for future backends).

Details

When `pedon_or_spectra` is a `PedonRecord`, this function delegates to `fill_from_spectra` with `method = "pretrained"` and the predictions are written back to the pedon (with `source = "predicted_spectra"` provenance). When `pedon_or_spectra` is a numeric matrix or vector, this function returns the prediction `data.table` directly without touching any pedon.

Value

Either the mutated `PedonRecord` (invisibly) or a `data.table` with columns `horizon_idx`, `property`, `value`, `pi95_low`, `pi95_high`, `n_neighbors`.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("pls", quietly = TRUE)) {
  data(oss1_demo_sa)
  models <- try(train_pls_from_oss1(oss1_demo_sa,
                                properties = c("clay_pct", "ph_h2o"),
                                min_n = 10L,
                                validation = "none"),
              silent = TRUE)
  # Prediction step needs a synthetic pedon with spectra attached.
  # predict_from_spectra(my_pedon, models = models)
}
```

`predict_lab_from_spectra`

Predict CIE Lab from Vis-NIR reflectance spectra

Description

Convenience wrapper: `predict_xyz_from_spectra` followed by the standard CIE Lab transform under D65 / 2-degree observer.

Usage

```
predict_lab_from_spectra(spectra, wavelengths)
```

Arguments

<code>spectra</code>	Reflectance values, in 0..1 or 0..100. A numeric vector (one sample), a numeric matrix (rows = samples, cols = wavelengths) or a <code>data.frame</code> .
<code>wavelengths</code>	Numeric vector of the wavelengths (in nm) corresponding to the columns of <code>spectra</code> . Must cover at least 400-700 nm; values outside 380-780 are ignored.

Value

A `data.frame` with columns L, a, b.

 predict_munsell_from_spectra

Predict Munsell hue / value / chroma from Vis-NIR reflectance spectra

Description

Combines [predict_xyz_from_spectra](#) with the Munsell renotation interpolation in **munsellinterpol** (CRAN, GPL). Returns hue (e.g. "7.5YR"), value (0..10) and chroma (0..20) per sample, plus the soilKey fields munsell_hue_moist, munsell_value_moist, munsell_chroma_moist ready to write into a [PedonRecord](#) via the pedon's add_measurement method (see also [fill_munsell_from_spectra](#)).

Usage

```
predict_munsell_from_spectra(spectra, wavelengths, round_chip = TRUE)
```

Arguments

spectra	Reflectance values, in 0..1 or 0..100. A numeric vector (one sample), a numeric matrix (rows = samples, cols = wavelengths) or a data.frame.
wavelengths	Numeric vector of the wavelengths (in nm) corresponding to the columns of spectra. Must cover at least 400-700 nm; values outside 380-780 are ignored.
round_chip	If TRUE (default), snaps the predicted HVC to the nearest standard Munsell chip grid via <code>munsellinterpol::roundHVC()</code> . FALSE returns continuous HVC (useful for further numeric work).

Details

This is the v0.9.47 unblock for the v0.9.35 Argissolo Vermelho / Amarelo / Vermelho-Amarelo color-confusion case: when a user has Vis-NIR spectra (which Embrapa's BDsolos / FEBR do not include but the OSSL does), the Munsell hue can be recovered physically without waiting for the surveyor's morphological description.

Value

A data.frame with columns munsell_hue_moist, munsell_value_moist, munsell_chroma_moist, munsell_string (e.g. "7.5YR 4/6"), X, Y, Z, one row per sample.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("munsellinterpol", quietly = TRUE)) {
  # White reflector across the visible: should map to a near-neutral
  # high-value Munsell color.
  wl <- seq(380, 780, by = 5)
  R <- rep(0.9, length(wl))
  predict_munsell_from_spectra(R, wavelengths = wl)
}
```

predict_ossl_mbl *Memory-based learning prediction against the OSSL library*

Description

Predicts a set of soil properties from pre-processed Vis-NIR or MIR spectra using *memory-based learning* (MBL) – the recommended OSSL workflow for heterogeneous libraries. Defaults follow the literature (Ramirez-Lopez et al., 2013): $k = 100$ neighbours, PLS-score dissimilarity, local PLS regression with 5 components, internal leave-one-out validation.

Usage

```
predict_ossl_mbl(
  X,
  properties,
  region = "global",
  k = 100L,
  ossl_library = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

X	A pre-processed numeric matrix (rows = horizons, columns = wavelengths).
properties	Character vector of OSSL-supported property names.
region	One of "global", "south_america", "north_america", "europe", "africa".
k	Integer number of neighbours.
ossl_library	Optional list with the OSSL training spectra (Xr) and reference values (Yr, a data.frame keyed by properties). When NULL, the synthetic path is used.
...	Additional arguments forwarded to resemble::mbl.

Details

If resemble::mbl is installed and an ossl_library artefact is supplied (a list with elements Xr, Yr) the function delegates to resemble::mbl(); otherwise it returns a deterministic synthetic prediction conditioned on the input spectra so that downstream code, tests and vignettes run without external dependencies. The fallback is annotated via the notes attribute on the returned data.table.

Value

A data.table with columns horizon_idx, property, value, pi95_low, pi95_high, n_neighbors. The "backend" attribute records which path was taken ("resemble" or "synthetic").

References

Ramirez-Lopez, L., Behrens, T., Schmidt, K., Stevens, A., Demattê, J. A. M., & Scholten, T. (2013). The spectrum-based learner: A new local approach for modeling soil Vis-NIR spectra of complex datasets. *Geoderma*, 195–196, 268–279.

predict_oss1_plsr_local

Local PLSR prediction against the OSS1 library

Description

Selects the k nearest neighbours to each test spectrum in the OSS1 training set and fits a local PLS regression. Like [predict_oss1_mbl](#), this function dispatches to `resemble::mbl` (with a `local_algorithm = "pls"` setting) when the dependency is available; otherwise it falls back to the synthetic predictor.

Usage

```
predict_oss1_plsr_local(
  X,
  properties,
  region = "global",
  k = 100L,
  oss1_library = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

X	A pre-processed numeric matrix (rows = horizons, columns = wavelengths).
properties	Character vector of OSS1-supported property names.
region	One of "global", "south_america", "north_america", "europe", "africa".
k	Integer number of neighbours.
oss1_library	Optional list with the OSS1 training spectra (Xr) and reference values (Yr, a data.frame keyed by properties). When NULL, the synthetic path is used.
...	Additional arguments forwarded to <code>resemble::mbl</code> .

Value

A data.table with the same schema as [predict_oss1_mbl](#).

predict_oss1_pretrained

Pre-trained OSSL prediction

Description

Applies the OSSL-distributed pre-trained PLSR / Cubist models for a set of soil properties to pre-processed spectra. Pre-trained models are loaded from `oss1_models`, a named list of property models that each must implement a `predict(model, X)` interface returning a `data.frame` with columns `value`, `pi95_low`, `pi95_high`. When `oss1_models` is `NULL`, the synthetic predictor is used.

Usage

```
predict_oss1_pretrained(
  X,
  properties,
  region = "global",
  oss1_models = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

<code>X</code>	A pre-processed numeric matrix (rows = horizons, columns = wavelengths).
<code>properties</code>	Character vector of OSSL-supported property names.
<code>region</code>	One of "global", "south_america", "north_america", "europe", "africa".
<code>oss1_models</code>	Optional named list of pre-trained models, keyed by property name.
<code>...</code>	Reserved.

Value

A `data.table` with columns `horizon_idx`, `property`, `value`, `pi95_low`, `pi95_high`, `n_neighbors`. `n_neighbors` is `NA_integer_` for pre-trained models. The "backend" attribute records which path was taken.

predict_xyz_from_spectra

Predict CIE XYZ tristimulus values from Vis-NIR reflectance spectra

Description

Numerically integrates user reflectance against the CIE 1931 2-degree Standard Observer color-matching functions, weighted by the D65 illuminant. Returns the tristimulus values X, Y, Z on the standard scale where $Y = 100$ for a perfect diffuse white.

Usage

```
predict_xyz_from_spectra(spectra, wavelengths)
```

Arguments

spectra	Reflectance values, in 0..1 or 0..100. A numeric vector (one sample), a numeric matrix (rows = samples, cols = wavelengths) or a data.frame.
wavelengths	Numeric vector of the wavelengths (in nm) corresponding to the columns of spectra. Must cover at least 400-700 nm; values outside 380-780 are ignored.

Value

A data.frame with columns X, Y, Z, one row per sample.

See Also

[predict_lab_from_spectra](#), [predict_munsell_from_spectra](#).

preprocess_spectra *Pre-process Vis-NIR or MIR spectra*

Description

Applies a chosen pre-processing pipeline to a numeric matrix of soil spectra. Rows are samples (typically horizons) and columns are wavelengths. Returns a numeric matrix; SG-based methods shorten the spectrum by $w - 1$ columns at the edges (default $w = 5$ so two columns are dropped from each side).

Usage

```
preprocess_spectra(X, method = c("snv+sg1", "snv", "sg1"), w = 5L, p = 2L)
```

Arguments

X	Numeric matrix or data.frame of spectra (rows = samples, columns = wavelengths). Wavelengths should be evenly spaced.
method	One of "snv", "sg1", "snv+sg1". Default "snv+sg1".
w	Window size for the SG filter. Must be odd; default 5.
p	Polynomial order for the SG filter. Default 2.

Details

Supported method values:

"snv" Standard Normal Variate. Each row is centered on its own mean and divided by its own standard deviation.

"sg1" Savitzky-Golay 1st derivative with a window of five wavelengths and a quadratic polynomial.

"snv+sg1" SNV followed by SG1 (default; the standard pipeline used by OSSL pretrained models for Vis-NIR).

If `prospectr` is available, we use `prospectr::standardNormalVariate` and `prospectr::savitzkyGolay` (Repp implementation, faster and supports arbitrary window/polynomial). The native fallback uses the classical 5-point first-derivative coefficients $(-2, -1, 0, 1, 2) / 10$, which is the closed-form Savitzky-Golay solution for window 5 / polynomial 2 / derivative 1.

Value

A numeric matrix. Column names (wavelengths) are preserved where possible; SG trimming drops $(w - 1) / 2$ columns from each edge.

References

Savitzky, A., & Golay, M. J. E. (1964). Smoothing and differentiation of data by simplified least squares procedures. *Analytical Chemistry*, 36(8), 1627–1639.

Barnes, R. J., Dhanoa, M. S., & Lister, S. J. (1989). Standard Normal Variate transformation and de-trending of near-infrared diffuse reflectance spectra. *Applied Spectroscopy*, 43(5), 772–777.

Stevens, A., & Ramirez-Lopez, L. (2024). *prospectr*: Misc. functions for processing and sample selection of spectroscopic data. R package version 0.2.7.

Examples

```
set.seed(1)
X <- matrix(runif(5 * 2151, 0, 1), nrow = 5)
colnames(X) <- 350:2500
Xp <- preprocess_spectra(X, method = "snv+sg1")
dim(Xp) # 5 x 2147 (4 columns dropped by SG window 5)
```

```
pretic
```

Pretic horizon (WRB 2022): "Amazonian Dark Earth" (terra preta de indio) horizon – thick anthropogenic surface with high P, SOC, and incorporated charcoal / pottery.

Description

Pretic horizon (WRB 2022): "Amazonian Dark Earth" (terra preta de indio) horizon – thick anthropogenic surface with high P, SOC, and incorporated charcoal / pottery.

Usage

```
pretic(pedon, min_thickness = 20, min_oc = 1.5, min_p_mehlich3 = 30)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_oc	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_p_mehlich3	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

```
print.soilKey_pls_model
```

Print method for soilKey_pls_model

Description

Print method for soilKey_pls_model

Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'soilKey_pls_model'
print(x, ...)
```

Arguments

x	A soilKey_pls_model object.
...	Reserved.

Value

The object, invisibly.

```
prior_consistency_check
```

Check consistency between a deterministic RSG assignment and a spatial prior

Description

Returns a list describing whether the assigned RSG is plausible under the given prior. The deterministic classification is never overridden – this is purely a sanity-check signal.

Usage

```
prior_consistency_check(rsg_code, prior, threshold = 0.01)
```

Arguments

rsg_code	Two-letter RSG code (e.g. "FR"). Either the rsg_or_order from a ClassificationResult (in which case it must be the RSG name; we try to translate via the trace) or the bare code from a key trace entry.
prior	A spatial-prior data.table from spatial_prior .
threshold	Probability below which an assignment is flagged inconsistent (default 0.01).

Value

A list with elements:

- consistent: TRUE / FALSE / NA.
- p: probability of the assigned RSG in the prior (or NA_real_ if not found).
- threshold: the threshold used.
- status: a short status string – "consistent", "inconsistent", or "no_data".
- note: human-readable explanation.
- top_prior: data.table with the top three classes from the prior (for messages).

protocalcic_properties

Protocalcic properties (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.8)

Description

Visible secondary carbonate accumulations, less than the calcic gate. Detects via caco3_pct between 0.5 and the calcic threshold (15) AND designation effervescence pattern (k).

Usage

```
protocalcic_properties(pedon, min_caco3_pct = 0.5, max_caco3_pct = 15)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_caco3_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_caco3_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

 protogypsic_properties

Protogypsic properties (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.9): visible secondary gypsum \geq 1% but below the gypsic gate.

Description

Protogypsic properties (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.9): visible secondary gypsum \geq 1% but below the gypsic gate.

Usage

```
protogypsic_properties(pedon, min_caso4_pct = 1, max_caso4_pct = 5)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_caso4_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_caso4_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

protovertic

Protovertic horizon (WRB 2022 Ch 3.1)

Description

A weakly developed vertic horizon – the swelling/shrinking machinery is present but does not reach the full vertic intensity (cracks too narrow, or slickensides only "few", or thickness too small). Used by the Protovertic qualifier; relevant for soils that would be Vertisols if the cracks/slickensides were a notch stronger.

Usage

```
protovertic(pedon, min_clay = 30, min_thickness = 15)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_clay	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

Details

v0.3.5 detection: clay \geq 30% AND any positive vertic evidence (slickensides at \geq "few" OR cracks_width_cm \geq 0.2 OR a wedge/lenticular structure_type) AND thickness \geq 15 cm. The positive cases that pass the strict [vertic_horizon](#) test are explicitly excluded so the two diagnostics partition the vertic-spectrum cleanly.

psamment_qualifying_usda

*Psamment Suborder qualifier (sandy texture: clay + 2*silt < 30 AND no clay films / argillic).*

Description

Psamment Suborder qualifier (sandy texture: clay + 2*silt < 30 AND no clay films / argillic).

Usage

psamment_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

psammentic_subgroup_usda

Psammentic Subgroup helper (Aquorthels)

Description

Pass when, in particle-size control section: < 35% rock fragments AND texture class loamy fine sand or coarser in all layers.

Usage

psammentic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

qual_abruptic	<i>Abruptic qualifier (ap): abrupt textural difference within 100 cm.</i>
---------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Abruptic qualifier (ap): abrupt textural difference within 100 cm.

Usage

qual_abruptic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_aceric	<i>Aceric qualifier (ae): pH (1:1 H₂O) ≤ 5 in some layer within the upper 50 cm. Used for sub-aerially exposed acid-sulfate soils (Solonchaks, Gleysols on former tidal flats). v0.9.1: numeric pH gate only; v0.9.2 adds the cross-check against thionic / sulfidic material to disambiguate from naturally acidic Histosols.</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Aceric qualifier (ae): pH (1:1 H₂O) ≤ 5 in some layer within the upper 50 cm. Used for sub-aerially exposed acid-sulfate soils (Solonchaks, Gleysols on former tidal flats). v0.9.1: numeric pH gate only; v0.9.2 adds the cross-check against thionic / sulfidic material to disambiguate from naturally acidic Histosols.

Usage

qual_aceric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_acric	<i>Acric qualifier (ac): argic horizon + low CEC + high Al. v0.9: argic + CEC < 24 cmolc/kg clay + exch Al > Ca+Mg+K+Na.</i>
------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Acric qualifier (ac): argic horizon + low CEC + high Al. v0.9: argic + CEC < 24 cmolc/kg clay + exch Al > Ca+Mg+K+Na.

Usage

qual_acric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_acroxic	<i>Acroxic qualifier (ax): andic + extremely low effective exchange complex (Ca + Mg + K + Na exch + 1 N KCl Al-exch <= 2 cmol+/kg fine earth) in some layer of the andic part within 100 cm.</i>
--------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Acroxic qualifier (ax): andic + extremely low effective exchange complex (Ca + Mg + K + Na exch + 1 N KCl Al-exch <= 2 cmol+/kg fine earth) in some layer of the andic part within 100 cm.

Usage

qual_acroxic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_activic	<i>Activic supplementary qualifier (av): active aluminium ≥ 5 cmol/kg WRB 2022 Ch 5: "KCl-extractable Al (al_kcl_cmol) ≥ 5 cmol(c)/kg in any layer in upper 100 cm." Proxy via existing al_cmol (exchangeable Al) when al_kcl_cmol absent.</i>
--------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Activic supplementary qualifier (av): active aluminium ≥ 5 cmol/kg WRB 2022 Ch 5: "KCl-extractable Al (al_kcl_cmol) ≥ 5 cmol(c)/kg in any layer in upper 100 cm." Proxy via existing al_cmol (exchangeable Al) when al_kcl_cmol absent.

Usage

```
qual_activic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_albic	<i>Albic qualifier (ab): albic horizon ≤ 100 cm.</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Albic qualifier (ab): albic horizon ≤ 100 cm.

Usage

```
qual_albic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_alcalic	<i>Alcalic supplementary qualifier (ac): pH (H2O) >= 9.0 WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Strongly alkaline reaction (pH H2O >= 9 in any layer within 100 cm of the soil surface)."</i>
--------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Alcalic supplementary qualifier (ac): pH (H2O) >= 9.0 WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Strongly alkaline reaction (pH H2O >= 9 in any layer within 100 cm of the soil surface)."

Usage

qual_alcalic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_alic	<i>Alic qualifier (al): argic + high CEC + high Al saturation.</i>
-----------	--------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Alic qualifier (al): argic + high CEC + high Al saturation.

Usage

qual_alic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_aluandic	<i>Aluandic qualifier (aa): andic properties + Al-dominant active component ($Al / (Al + 0.5 Si) \geq 0.5$ in mass).</i>
---------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Aluandic qualifier (aa): andic properties + Al-dominant active component ($Al / (Al + 0.5 Si) \geq 0.5$ in mass).

Usage

qual_aluandic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_andic	<i>Andic qualifier (an): andic OR vitric properties combined ≥ 30 cm. v0.9 simplification: passes if andic_properties or vitric_properties passes within 100 cm.</i>
------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Andic qualifier (an): andic OR vitric properties combined ≥ 30 cm. v0.9 simplification: passes if andic_properties or vitric_properties passes within 100 cm.

Usage

qual_andic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_anofluvic	<i>Anofluvic qualifier (af): fluvic material only at depth \geq 50 cm</i>
----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Fluvisols): "Fluvic material starting \geq 50 cm from the soil surface." Depth modifier of [fluvic_material](#).

Usage

qual_anofluvic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_anthraquic	<i>Anthraquic qualifier (aq): anthraquic horizon (puddled-rice surface).</i>
-----------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Anthraquic qualifier (aq): anthraquic horizon (puddled-rice surface).

Usage

qual_anthraquic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_anthric	<i>Anthric qualifier (ak): anthric properties.</i>
--------------	----------------------------------------------------

Description

Anthric qualifier (ak): anthric properties.

Usage

qual_anthric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_anthromollic	<i>Anthromollic qualifier (am): anthric horizon overlying spodic</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Podzols): "Having an anthric (irrigation / Plaggic-like) surface horizon directly over spodic / albic / diagnostic horizon." Combines [anthric_horizons](#) + overlying-spodic check.

Usage

qual_anthromollic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_archaic	<i>Archaic supplementary qualifier (ah): archeological context</i>
--------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Soil developed in or affected by ancient cultural material (>1000 yr old)." Detects via contamination_type matching "archaeological" or site-level cultural-period field.

Usage

qual_archaic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_arenic	<i>Arenic qualifier (ar): texture sand or loamy sand ≥ 30 cm in ≤ 100 cm.</i>
-------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Arenic qualifier (ar): texture sand or loamy sand ≥ 30 cm in ≤ 100 cm.

Usage

qual_arenic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_arenicollic	<i>Arenicollic supplementary qualifier (an): faunal sand burrows</i>
------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing layers with extensive sand-grade bioturbation (faunal burrows from earthworms / ants / termites)." Implementation: bioturbation_density \geq "common".

Usage

qual_arenicollic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_aric	<i>Aric qualifier (ar): mineral surface horizon homogenised by ploughing – designation pattern Ap, Apk, Apc, etc., starting within the upper 30 cm.</i>
-----------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Aric qualifier (ar): mineral surface horizon homogenised by ploughing – designation pattern Ap, Apk, Apc, etc., starting within the upper 30 cm.

Usage

qual_aric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_bathyspodic	<i>Bathyspodic supplementary qualifier (bs): spodic at 100-200 cm depth</i>
------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Bathyspodic supplementary qualifier (bs): spodic at 100-200 cm depth

Usage

qual_bathyspodic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_biocrustic	<i>Biocrustic supplementary qualifier (bk): biological soil crust</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Surface biological crust (cyanobacteria, algae, lichens, mosses)." Implementation: surface_crust_type matching biological pattern in upper 5 cm.

Usage

qual_biocrustic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_brunic	<i>Brunic qualifier (br): incipient-only subsurface alteration – cambic horizon within the upper 100 cm AND no argic, spodic, ferralic, or nitic horizon present. Used by WRB 2022 Ch 4 for Arenosols that have begun to develop a weak Bw without crossing into Cambisol / Acrisol / Lixisol / Ferralsol territory; in those RSGs the cambic alone is the gating diagnostic and Brunic would be redundant.</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Brunic qualifier (br): *incipient-only* subsurface alteration – cambic horizon within the upper 100 cm AND no argic, spodic, ferralic, or nitic horizon present. Used by WRB 2022 Ch 4 for Arenosols that have begun to develop a weak Bw without crossing into Cambisol / Acrisol / Lixisol / Ferralsol territory; in those RSGs the cambic alone is the gating diagnostic and Brunic would be redundant.

Usage

```
qual_brunic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_bryic *Bryic supplementary qualifier (by): bryophyte cover at surface*

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Predominant bryophyte (moss / liverwort) ground cover." Implementation: layer_origin matches moss / lichen pattern OR vegetation_cover site field >= 50.

Usage

```
qual_bryic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_calcaric *Calcaric qualifier (cl): calcaric material >= 25 cm in upper 100 cm.*

Description

Calcaric qualifier (cl): calcaric material >= 25 cm in upper 100 cm.

Usage

```
qual_calcaric(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_calcic	<i>Calcic qualifier (cc): calcic horizon <= 100 cm.</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Calcic qualifier (cc): calcic horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_calcic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_cambic	<i>Cambic qualifier (cm): cambic horizon <= 50 cm.</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Cambic qualifier (cm): cambic horizon <= 50 cm.

Usage

qual_cambic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_capillaric	<i>Capillarie supplementary qualifier (cp): capillary rise zone WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Capillary rise from a shallow water table to within 50 cm of the soil surface; flagged via redox concentrations (>=2%) + fine texture (clay+silt > 50%)."</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Capillarie supplementary qualifier (cp): capillary rise zone WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Capillary rise from a shallow water table to within 50 cm of the soil surface; flagged via redox concentrations (>=2%) + fine texture (clay+silt > 50%)."

Usage

qual_capillaric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_carbic	<i>Carbic qualifier (cb): spodic horizon dominated by humus illuviation. v0.9.1: spodic + OC >= 6% in some spodic layer (the WRB threshold for Carbic / "humus-Podzol" expression).</i>
-------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Carbic qualifier (cb): spodic horizon dominated by humus illuviation. v0.9.1: spodic + OC >= 6% in some spodic layer (the WRB threshold for Carbic / "humus-Podzol" expression).

Usage

qual_carbic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_carbonatic	<i>Carbonatic supplementary qualifier (cn): >= 50% carbonates</i>
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Carbonatic supplementary qualifier (cn): >= 50% carbonates

Usage

qual_carbonatic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_carbonic	<i>Carbonic supplementary qualifier (cb): high SOC content ($\geq 6\%$)</i>
---------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Carbonic supplementary qualifier (cb): high SOC content ($\geq 6\%$)

Usage

qual_carbonic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_chernic	<i>Chernic qualifier (ch): chernic horizon (intensely worm-mixed mollic-like) within 100 cm.</i>
--------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Chernic qualifier (ch): chernic horizon (intensely worm-mixed mollic-like) within 100 cm.

Usage

qual_chernic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_chloridic	<i>Chloridic supplementary qualifier (cl): high chloride WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing ≥ 4 cmol(c)/kg chloride OR EC ≥ 8 dS/m within 100 cm." Proxy via electrical conductivity field (ec_ds_m) when chloride is unavailable.</i>
----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Chloridic supplementary qualifier (cl): high chloride WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing ≥ 4 cmol(c)/kg chloride OR EC ≥ 8 dS/m within 100 cm." Proxy via electrical conductivity field (ec_ds_m) when chloride is unavailable.

Usage

qual_chloridic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_chromic	<i>Chromic qualifier (cr): hue redder than 7.5YR + chroma > 4 (in upper subsoil 25-150 cm).</i>
--------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Chromic qualifier (cr): hue redder than 7.5YR + chroma > 4 (in upper subsoil 25-150 cm).

Usage

qual_chromic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_clayic	<i>Clayic qualifier (ce): clay >= 60% texture for a layer >= 30 cm in the upper 100 cm.</i>
-------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Clayic qualifier (ce): clay >= 60% texture for a layer >= 30 cm in the upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_clayic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_coarsic	<i>Coarsic qualifier (cr): $\geq 70\%$ coarse fragments by volume in upper 100 cm</i>
--------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing layers (in total ≥ 30 cm thick) with $\geq 70\%$ by volume coarse fragments and/or technic hard material averaged over a depth of 100 cm from the soil surface."

Usage

qual_coarsic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Applies to: HISTOSOLS, TECHNOSOLS, CRYOSOLS, LEPTOSOLS, PODZOLS, PLINTHOSOLS, DURISOLS, GYPSISOLS, CALCISOLS.

Implementation: weighted mean of coarse_fragments_pct over the upper 100 cm; passes if ≥ 70 (or NA if no measurements).

qual_cohesic	<i>Cohesive supplementary qualifier (co): cohesive horizon (extra-firm dry) WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing layers with extreme dry consistence AND moist consistence very firm." Implementation: matches via consistence_dry ("extremely hard") OR consistence_moist ("very firm"), within 100 cm.</i>
--------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Cohesive supplementary qualifier (co): cohesive horizon (extra-firm dry) WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing layers with extreme dry consistence AND moist consistence very firm." Implementation: matches via consistence_dry ("extremely hard") OR consistence_moist ("very firm"), within 100 cm.

Usage

qual_cohesic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_columnic	<i>Columnic supplementary qualifier (cm): columnar / prismatic structure WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Columnar or strong prismatic structure (associated with natric horizons)."</i>
---------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Columnic supplementary qualifier (cm): columnar / prismatic structure WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Columnar or strong prismatic structure (associated with natric horizons)."

Usage

qual_columnic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_cordic	<i>Cordic supplementary qualifier (cd): cordic horizon</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Cemented horizon NOT meeting duripan / petrocalcic / petrogypsic criteria but slacks moderately in water." Detection via cordic_horizon TRUE/FALSE schema flag.

Usage

qual_cordic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_cryic	<i>Cryic qualifier (cy): cryic horizon <= 100 cm.</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Cryic qualifier (cy): cryic horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_cryic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_cumulic	<i>Cumulic qualifier (cu): a layer of recent depositional material added on top of an existing soil. v0.9.3.B proxy: layer_origin is fluvic / aeolic / solimovic at the top of the profile, OR the uppermost mineral horizon's designation matches <code>^[AC]u?\d?</code> (cumulic-style suffix).</i>
--------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Cumulic qualifier (cu): a layer of recent depositional material added on top of an existing soil. v0.9.3.B proxy: layer_origin is fluvic / aeolic / solimovic at the top of the profile, OR the uppermost mineral horizon's designation matches `^[AC]u?\d?` (cumulic-style suffix).

Usage

qual_cumulic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_cutanic	<i>Cutanic qualifier (ct): visible illuvial clay coatings on argic- horizon ped surfaces (the "Cutanic Luvisol" / "Cutanic Argissol" signature). v0.9.1: argic horizon passes AND the schema column clay_films_amount contains "common", "many", or "continuous" (or "shiny" – common Brazilian descriptor for nitic surfaces) in some argic layer.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Cutanic qualifier (ct): visible illuvial clay coatings on argic- horizon ped surfaces (the "Cutanic Luvisol" / "Cutanic Argissol" signature). v0.9.1: argic horizon passes AND the schema column clay_films_amount contains "common", "many", or "continuous" (or "shiny" – common Brazilian descriptor for nitic surfaces) in some argic layer.

Usage

```
qual_cutanic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_densic	<i>Densic qualifier (dn): bulk density ≥ 1.8 g/cm³ in some root- restricting layer within 100 cm.</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Densic qualifier (dn): bulk density ≥ 1.8 g/cm³ in some root- restricting layer within 100 cm.

Usage

```
qual_densic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_differentic	<i>Differentic supplementary qualifier (df): contrasting layers WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Strong differences (texture, mineralogy, color) between adjacent layers without abrupt textural transition (mild clay-increase 1.2-1.4x ratio)."</i>
------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Differentic supplementary qualifier (df): contrasting layers WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Strong differences (texture, mineralogy, color) between adjacent layers without abrupt textural transition (mild clay-increase 1.2-1.4x ratio)."

Usage

qual_differentic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_dolomitic	<i>Dolomitic qualifier (do): dolomitic material in upper 100 cm.</i>
----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Dolomitic qualifier (do): dolomitic material in upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_dolomitic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_dorsic	<i>Dorsic supplementary qualifier (do): dorsal-ridge microrelief</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Dorsic supplementary qualifier (do): dorsal-ridge microrelief

Usage

```
qual_dorsic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_drainic	<i>Drainic qualifier (dr): artificially drained organic soil. v0.9.1: site\$drainage_class or site\$land_use carries an explicit artificial drainage marker AND organic_material passes. Natural drainage classes (e.g. "very poorly drained", "well drained") do NOT trigger Drainic on their own.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Drainic qualifier (dr): artificially drained organic soil. v0.9.1: site\$drainage_class or site\$land_use carries an explicit *artificial* drainage marker AND organic_material passes. Natural drainage classes (e.g. "very poorly drained", "well drained") do NOT trigger Drainic on their own.

Usage

```
qual_drainic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_duric	<i>Duric qualifier (du): duric horizon <= 100 cm.</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Duric qualifier (du): duric horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_duric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_dystric	<i>Dystric qualifier (dy): low base saturation throughout. v0.9: BS < 50% from 20 to 100 cm in mineral material.</i>
--------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Dystric qualifier (dy): low base saturation throughout. v0.9: BS < 50% from 20 to 100 cm in mineral material.

Usage

qual_dystric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_ekranic	<i>Ekranic qualifier (ek): impervious cover (asphalt, concrete) starting within 5 cm of the surface. v0.9.1: technic_hard_material with top depth <= 5 cm.</i>
--------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Ekranic qualifier (ek): impervious cover (asphalt, concrete) starting within 5 cm of the surface.
v0.9.1: technic_hard_material with top depth <= 5 cm.

Usage

qual_ekranic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_endic	<i>Endic supplementary qualifier (ec): generic "in deep horizon" marker</i>
------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: generic "Endo-X" prefix marker for any qualifier that takes a depth window 50-100 cm. Without a base diagnostic it returns NA; in practice it is composed with another qualifier.

Usage

qual_endic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_endoabruptic	<i>Endoabruptic supplementary qualifier (eea): abrupt textural change deep</i>
-------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Endoabruptic supplementary qualifier (eea): abrupt textural change deep

Usage

qual_endoabruptic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_endocalcaric	<i>Endocalcaric qualifier (cae): calcaric only at depth \geq 50 cm</i>
-------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Umbrisols / Retisols): "Calcaric material starting \geq 50 cm from the soil surface."
Modifier of [calcaric_material](#).

Usage

qual_endocalcaric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_endocalcic	<i>Endocalcic qualifier (cam): calcic horizon between 50 and 100 cm.</i>
-----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (depth-conditional supplementary form of Calcic). Referenced in Chernozems Ch 4. The diagnostic is the same as Calcic; the difference is the depth band – Endocalcic requires the calcic horizon to start at ≥ 50 cm (deep, subsoil) rather than within the upper 50 cm.

Usage

qual_endocalcic(pedon)

qual_endocalcic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

qual_endodolomitic	<i>Endodolomitic qualifier (dme): dolomitic only at depth ≥ 50 cm</i>
--------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Umbrisols / Retisols): "Dolomitic material starting ≥ 50 cm from the soil surface." Modifier of [dolomitic_material](#).

Usage

qual_endodolomitic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_endoduric *Endoduric supplementary qualifier: duric horizon at depth >= 50 cm*

Description

Endoduric supplementary qualifier: duric horizon at depth >= 50 cm

Usage

qual_endoduric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_endodystric *Endodystric supplementary qualifier (eds): dystric only at depth*

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Distric (BS < 50%) at >= 50 cm depth."

Usage

qual_endodystric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_endoeutric *Endoeutric supplementary qualifier (eee): eutric only at depth*

Description

Endoeutric supplementary qualifier (eee): eutric only at depth

Usage

qual_endoeutric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_endogleyic *Endogleyic qualifier (eng): gleyic conditions between 50 and 100 cm.*

Description

Endogleyic qualifier (eng): gleyic conditions between 50 and 100 cm.

Usage

qual_endogleyic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

qual_endogypsic *Endogypsic supplementary qualifier: gypsic horizon at depth >= 50 cm*

Description

Endogypsic supplementary qualifier: gypsic horizon at depth >= 50 cm

Usage

qual_endogypsic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_endoleptic	<i>Endoleptic supplementary qualifier (lle): rock contact 50-100 cm</i>
-----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Endoleptic supplementary qualifier (lle): rock contact 50-100 cm

Usage

qual_endoleptic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_endostagnic	<i>Endostagnic qualifier (ens): stagnic conditions between 50 and 100 cm.</i>
------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Endostagnic qualifier (ens): stagnic conditions between 50 and 100 cm.

Usage

qual_endostagnic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

qual_endothionic	<i>Endothionic supplementary qualifier (etn): thionic at depth >= 50 cm</i>
------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Endothionic supplementary qualifier (etn): thionic at depth >= 50 cm

Usage

qual_endothionic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_endothyric	<i>Endothyric supplementary qualifier (etc): thyric only at depth >= 50</i>
-----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Endothyric supplementary qualifier (etc): thyric only at depth >= 50

Usage

qual_endothyric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_entic	<i>Entic qualifier (et): albic horizon AND NOT spodic</i>
------------	-----------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Podzols): "Having an albic horizon (>= 1 cm thick) starting <= 50 cm AND NOT meeting the criteria for a spodic horizon." Compose: albic AND NOT spodic.

Usage

qual_entic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_epic	<i>Epic supplementary qualifier (ep): generic "in shallow horizon"</i>
-----------	------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Epic supplementary qualifier (ep): generic "in shallow horizon"

Usage

qual_epic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_epidysttric	<i>Epidysttric supplementary qualifier (epd): dysttric only in upper 50 cm</i>
------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Dystric (BS < 50%) in upper 50 cm and eutric below."

Usage

qual_epidysttric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_epieutric	<i>Epieutric supplementary qualifier (eee): eutric only in upper 50 cm</i>
----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Epieutric supplementary qualifier (eee): eutric only in upper 50 cm

Usage

qual_epieutric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_escalic	<i>Escallic supplementary qualifier (es): terraced / stepped morphology</i>
--------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Escallic supplementary qualifier (es): terraced / stepped morphology

Usage

qual_escalic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_eutric	<i>Eutric qualifier (eu): high base saturation. v0.9: BS \geq 50% throughout 20-100 cm.</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Eutric qualifier (eu): high base saturation. v0.9: BS \geq 50% throughout 20-100 cm.

Usage

qual_eutric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_eutrosilic	<i>Eutrosilic qualifier (es): silandic + base saturation \geq 50% in some layer of the silandic part within 100 cm.</i>
-----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Eutrosilic qualifier (es): silandic + base saturation \geq 50% in some layer of the silandic part within 100 cm.

Usage

qual_eutrosilic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_evapocrustic *Evapocrustic supplementary qualifier (ev): evaporite surface crust*

Description

Evapocrustic supplementary qualifier (ev): evaporite surface crust

Usage

qual_evapocrustic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_ferralic *Ferralic qualifier (fl): ferralic horizon <= 150 cm.*

Description

Ferralic qualifier (fl): ferralic horizon <= 150 cm.

Usage

qual_ferralic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_ferric *Ferric qualifier (fr): ferric horizon <= 100 cm.*

Description

Ferric qualifier (fr): ferric horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_ferric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_ferritic	<i>Ferritic qualifier (fr): high free-Fe in fine earth</i>
---------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Nitisols / Ferralsols): "Containing layers with $\geq 18\%$ Fe₂O₃ (or 12.6% Fe) in fine earth, averaged over upper 100 cm or to a contact / petroplinthic / pisoplinthic / R."

Usage

qual_ferritic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation: weighted mean of fe_dcb_pct (DCB-extractable Fe₂O₃, the canonical Fe-pool for Ferralic / Nitic chemistry) over the upper 100 cm.

qual_fibric	<i>Fibric qualifier (fi): organic material whose dominant decomposition class in the upper 100 cm is fibric ($\geq 2/3$ fiber). v0.9.1: thickness-weighted dominance via Oi designation.</i>
-------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Fibric qualifier (fi): organic material whose dominant decomposition class in the upper 100 cm is fibric ($\geq 2/3$ fiber). v0.9.1: thickness-weighted dominance via Oi designation.

Usage

qual_fibric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_floatic	<i>Floatic qualifier (fc): Histosol that floats on water.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 / Ch 4 Histosols (p 96): organic material with very low bulk density ($< 0.1 \text{ g/cm}^3$ dry, OR $< 0.4 \text{ g/cm}^3$ in fully saturated state) that floats on water. Practical proxy: $\text{oc_pct} \geq 12$ (Histic threshold) AND $\text{bulk_density_g_cm}^3 \leq 0.4$ in any layer of the upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_floatic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

qual_fluvic	<i>Fluvic qualifier (fv): fluvic material $\geq 25 \text{ cm}$ thick starting $\leq 75 \text{ cm}$.</i>
-------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Fluvic qualifier (fv): fluvic material $\geq 25 \text{ cm}$ thick starting $\leq 75 \text{ cm}$.

Usage

qual_fluvic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_folic	<i>Folic qualifier (fo): folic horizon at the soil surface. v0.9 delegates to histic_horizon with surface-only filter.</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Folic qualifier (fo): folic horizon at the soil surface. v0.9 delegates to histic_horizon with surface-only filter.

Usage

```
qual_folic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_fractic	<i>Fractic qualifier (fc): fractures (cracks) within 100 cm</i>
--------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Durisols / Gypsisols / Calcisols): "Showing fractures within 100 cm of the soil surface" (a duripan, gypsic, or calcic horizon that has cracked / fractured).

Usage

```
qual_fractic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

Details

Implementation: positive cracks_width_cm or cracks_depth_cm on any layer with top <= 100 cm.

qual_garbic	<i>Garbic qualifier (ga): \geq 20% organic-waste artefacts (landfill refuse) in the upper 100 cm. v0.9.1 proxy: designation pattern (Cgarb garb landfill refuse). Hard schema column artefacts_garbic_pct scheduled for v0.9.2.</i>
-------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Garbic qualifier (ga): \geq 20% organic-waste artefacts (landfill refuse) in the upper 100 cm. v0.9.1 proxy: designation pattern (Cgarb|garb|landfill|refuse). Hard schema column artefacts_garbic_pct scheduled for v0.9.2.

Usage

qual_garbic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_gelic	<i>Gelic supplementary qualifier (gl): permafrost or strong frost activity WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Permafrost within 200 cm of the soil surface OR gelic materials." Modifier of cryic_conditions for non-Cryosols.</i>
------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Gelic supplementary qualifier (gl): permafrost or strong frost activity WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Permafrost within 200 cm of the soil surface OR gelic materials." Modifier of cryic_conditions for non-Cryosols.

Usage

qual_gelic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_gelistagnic	<i>Gelistagnic supplementary qualifier (gst): stagnic in cold conditions WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Stagnic features (perched water) in cryic regime." Compose: stagnic_pattern + cryic_conditions.</i>
------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Gelistagnic supplementary qualifier (gst): stagnic in cold conditions WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Stagnic features (perched water) in cryic regime." Compose: stagnic_pattern + cryic_conditions.

Usage

qual_gelistagnic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_geoabruptic	<i>Geoabruptic supplementary qualifier (ga): abrupt change at lithological boundary WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Abrupt textural / mineralogical change at a lithological discontinuity (e.g., 2C horizon below B)." Implementation: designation pattern containing "2C" or "3C" (numeric prefix indicates lithologic discontinuity).</i>
------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Geoabruptic supplementary qualifier (ga): abrupt change at lithological boundary WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Abrupt textural / mineralogical change at a lithological discontinuity (e.g., 2C horizon below B)." Implementation: designation pattern containing "2C" or "3C" (numeric prefix indicates lithologic discontinuity).

Usage

qual_geoabruptic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_geric	<i>Geric qualifier (gr): in some layer at ≤ 100 cm, the effective exchange complex (sum of bases + 1 N KCl Al-exchangeable) does not exceed 1.5 cmol+/kg fine earth, OR the soil shows net positive charge ($\Delta \text{pH} = \text{pH}_{\text{KCl}} - \text{pH}_{\text{H}_2\text{O}} > 0$). The "or" path makes Geric / Posic overlap by design (per WRB Ch 5).</i>
------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Geric qualifier (gr): in some layer at ≤ 100 cm, the effective exchange complex (sum of bases + 1 N KCl Al-exchangeable) does not exceed 1.5 cmol+/kg fine earth, OR the soil shows net positive charge ($\Delta \text{pH} = \text{pH}_{\text{KCl}} - \text{pH}_{\text{H}_2\text{O}} > 0$). The "or" path makes Geric / Posic overlap by design (per WRB Ch 5).

Usage

qual_geric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_gibbsic	<i>Gibbsic qualifier (gi): high gibbsite ($\geq 25\%$) in fine earth</i>
--------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Plinthosols / Ferralsols): "Containing layers with $\geq 25\%$ gibbsite by mass averaged over a depth of 100 cm".

Usage

qual_gibbsic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

soilKey schema does not currently carry direct gibbsite percent. The closest proxy is al_ox_pct (oxalate-extractable Al, %), but gibbsite is poorly extracted by oxalate. The sulfuric attack al2o3_sulfuric_pct captures crystalline Al-oxides (gibbsite + boehmite + diaspore + Al-substitution in goethite). This implementation uses Al₂O₃ by sulfuric attack $\geq 25\%$ as a proxy (slight over-estimate, since not all crystalline Al is gibbsite).

qual_gilgaic	<i>Gilgaic supplementary qualifier (gi): gilgai microrelief WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Gilgai microrelief (associated with vertic shrinking/swelling soils)." Site-level field detection.</i>
--------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Gilgaic supplementary qualifier (gi): gilgai microrelief WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Gilgai microrelief (associated with vertic shrinking/swelling soils)." Site-level field detection.

Usage

qual_gilgaic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_glacic	<i>Glacic qualifier (gc): >= 75% ice by volume within 100 cm. v0.9.1 proxy: cryic conditions + designation pattern (ice gel glac). Schema column ice_pct scheduled for v0.9.2.</i>
-------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Glacic qualifier (gc): >= 75% ice by volume within 100 cm. v0.9.1 proxy: cryic conditions + designation pattern (ice|gel|glac). Schema column ice_pct scheduled for v0.9.2.

Usage

qual_glacic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_gleyic	<i>Gleyic qualifier (gl): gleyic properties throughout a layer ≥ 25 cm starting ≤ 75 cm + reducing conditions.</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Gleyic qualifier (gl): gleyic properties throughout a layer ≥ 25 cm starting ≤ 75 cm + reducing conditions.

Usage

qual_gleyic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_glossic	<i>Glossic qualifier (gs): mollic horizon penetrated by albeluvic tongues (glossae). Diagnostic of Glossic Chernozems / Phaeozems on the steppe / forest-steppe transition.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Glossic qualifier (gs): mollic horizon penetrated by albeluvic tongues (glossae). Diagnostic of Glossic Chernozems / Phaeozems on the steppe / forest-steppe transition.

Usage

qual_glossic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_greyzemic	<i>Greyzemic qualifier (gz): mollic / umbric overlain by albic-like layer</i>
----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Chernozems / Phaeozems / Umbrisols): "Having a mollic / umbric horizon overlain by a thin (≤ 10 cm) albic-like layer with low chroma and high value (Munsell value ≥ 4 moist AND chroma ≤ 2)."

Usage

qual_greyzemic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation: presence of mollic OR umbric (we have [mollic](#) but not yet umbric) AND an overlying bleached layer (munsell_value_moist ≥ 4 and munsell_chroma_moist ≤ 2 , thickness ≤ 10 cm).

qual_grumic	<i>Grumic qualifier (gr): strong fine granular surface horizon (self-mulching Vertisol).</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Grumic qualifier (gr): strong fine granular surface horizon (self-mulching Vertisol).

Usage

qual_grumic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_gypsic	<i>Gypsic qualifier (gy): gypsic horizon <= 100 cm.</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Gypsic qualifier (gy): gypsic horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_gypsic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_gypsiric	<i>Gypsiric qualifier (gc): gypsiric material >= 25 cm in upper 100 cm.</i>
---------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Gypsiric qualifier (gc): gypsiric material >= 25 cm in upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_gypsiric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_haplic	<i>Haplic qualifier (ha): no other principal qualifier of the RSG applies. Always passes; the qualifier resolution machinery uses it as the default when no other qualifier matched.</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Haplic qualifier (ha): no other principal qualifier of the RSG applies. Always passes; the qualifier resolution machinery uses it as the default when no other qualifier matched.

Usage

qual_haplic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_hemic	<i>Hemic qualifier (hc): organic material whose dominant decomposition class in the upper 100 cm is hemic (1/6 - 2/3 fiber). v0.9.1: thickness-weighted dominance via Oe designation.</i>
------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hemic qualifier (hc): organic material whose dominant decomposition class in the upper 100 cm is hemic (1/6 - 2/3 fiber). v0.9.1: thickness-weighted dominance via Oe designation.

Usage

qual_hemic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_histic	<i>Histic qualifier (hi): histic horizon at or near the surface.</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Histic qualifier (hi): histic horizon at or near the surface.

Usage

qual_histic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_hortic	<i>Hortic qualifier (ht): hortic horizon (long-cultivated dark surface).</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hortic qualifier (ht): hortic horizon (long-cultivated dark surface).

Usage

qual_hortic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_humic	<i>Humic qualifier (hu): \geq 1% SOC in upper 50 cm (weighted average).</i>
------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Humic qualifier (hu): \geq 1% SOC in upper 50 cm (weighted average).

Usage

qual_humic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hydragric	<i>Hydragric qualifier (hg): hydragric horizon (puddled-rice subsurface).</i>
----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hydragric qualifier (hg): hydragric horizon (puddled-rice subsurface).

Usage

qual_hydragric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hydric	<i>Hydric qualifier (hy): water content at 1500 kPa \geq 100% (undried fine earth, WRB 2022). v0.9.1 accepts the air-dried equivalent (\geq 70%) when the lab protocol pre-dries; the result is flagged as "potentially over-permissive" via the notes field when the value falls in the 70-100% band.</i>
-------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hydric qualifier (hy): water content at 1500 kPa \geq 100% (undried fine earth, WRB 2022). v0.9.1 accepts the air-dried equivalent (\geq 70%) when the lab protocol pre-dries; the result is flagged as "potentially over-permissive" via the notes field when the value falls in the 70-100% band.

Usage

qual_hydric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hydrophobic *Hydrophobic supplementary qualifier (hf): water-repellent surface*

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Surface horizon (0-5 cm) with hydrophobic character measurable as MED (Molarity of an Ethanol Droplet) ≥ 1 or WDPT (Water Drop Penetration Time) ≥ 60 s." Implementation: textual flag in vesicular_pores (BDsolos: "hidrofóbico", "water repellent") OR a water_repellence field if the loader supplies it.

Usage

qual_hydrophobic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hyperalbic *Hyperalbic qualifier (ha): albic horizon thicker than 100 cm in a contiguous run (extremely deep eluvial bleaching, common in giant Podzols of tropical white-sand systems and the deepest Stagnosol / Planosol profiles). Non-contiguous albic layers separated by an illuvial Bs / Bt do NOT count toward the threshold.*

Description

Hyperalbic qualifier (ha): albic horizon thicker than 100 cm in a *contiguous* run (extremely deep eluvial bleaching, common in giant Podzols of tropical white-sand systems and the deepest Stagnosol / Planosol profiles). Non-contiguous albic layers separated by an illuvial Bs / Bt do NOT count toward the threshold.

Usage

qual_hyperalbic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hyperalic	<i>Hyperalic qualifier (yl): argic horizon with AI saturation \geq 50% in some layer of the argic part within 100 cm. Stronger version of Alic.</i>
----------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hyperalic qualifier (yl): argic horizon with AI saturation \geq 50% in some layer of the argic part within 100 cm. Stronger version of Alic.

Usage

qual_hyperalic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hyperartefactic	<i>Hyperartefactic qualifier (yr): \geq 80% artefacts (any type) in the upper 100 cm.</i>
----------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hyperartefactic qualifier (yr): \geq 80% artefacts (any type) in the upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_hyperartefactic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hypercalcic	<i>Hypercalcic qualifier (yc): calcic horizon AND CaCO₃ >= 50% in some calcic layer.</i>
------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hypercalcic qualifier (yc): calcic horizon AND CaCO₃ >= 50% in some calcic layer.

Usage

qual_hypercalcic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hyperdystric	<i>Hyperdystric qualifier (yd): base saturation < 5% throughout the upper 100 cm (mineral soil layers only). Stronger than Dystric (BS < 50%).</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hyperdystric qualifier (yd): base saturation < 5% throughout the upper 100 cm (mineral soil layers only). Stronger than Dystric (BS < 50%).

Usage

qual_hyperdystric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hypereutric	<i>Hypereutric qualifier (ye): base saturation \geq 80% throughout the upper 100 cm. Stronger than Eutric (BS \geq 50%).</i>
------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hypereutric qualifier (ye): base saturation \geq 80% throughout the upper 100 cm. Stronger than Eutric (BS \geq 50%).

Usage

qual_hypereutric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hypergypsic	<i>Hypergypsic qualifier (yg): gypsic horizon AND gypsum \geq 60% in some gypsic layer.</i>
------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hypergypsic qualifier (yg): gypsic horizon AND gypsum \geq 60% in some gypsic layer.

Usage

qual_hypergypsic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hypermnatric	<i>Hypermnatric supplementary qualifier (hyna): very high Na ($\geq 70\%$ ESP)</i>
-------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Sodic with exchangeable sodium percentage $\geq 70\%$."

Usage

qual_hypermnatric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hyperorganic	<i>Hyperorganic supplementary qualifier (hyo): SOC $\geq 18\%$ (peat-like) WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing organic carbon $\geq 18\%$ by mass in any layer ≥ 10 cm thick." A stronger version of 'Carbonic'.</i>
-------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hyperorganic supplementary qualifier (hyo): SOC $\geq 18\%$ (peat-like) WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing organic carbon $\geq 18\%$ by mass in any layer ≥ 10 cm thick." A stronger version of 'Carbonic'.

Usage

qual_hyperorganic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hypersalic	<i>Hypersalic qualifier (yz): EC (1:5 H2O extract) ≥ 30 dS/m in some layer within the upper 100 cm. Stronger than the Salic horizon (default ≥ 15 dS/m).</i>
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hypersalic qualifier (yz): EC (1:5 H2O extract) ≥ 30 dS/m in some layer within the upper 100 cm. Stronger than the Salic horizon (default ≥ 15 dS/m).

Usage

qual_hypersalic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hyperskeletal	<i>Hyperskeletal qualifier (hk): coarse fragments $\geq 90\%$ throughout the upper 100 cm.</i>
--------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hyperskeletal qualifier (hk): coarse fragments $\geq 90\%$ throughout the upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_hyperskeletal(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hypersodic	<i>Hypersodic qualifier (yo): ESP \geq 50% in some layer within 100 cm. Stronger than Sodic (default ESP \geq 6%).</i>
-----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hypersodic qualifier (yo): ESP \geq 50% in some layer within 100 cm. Stronger than Sodic (default ESP \geq 6%).

Usage

qual_hypersodic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hyperspodic	<i>Hyperspodic qualifier (hp): spodic horizon with very strong active Al + Fe accumulation ($Al_{ox} + 0.5 * Fe_{ox} \geq 1.5\%$) – twice the minimum spodic threshold per WRB Ch 3.1. v0.9.1 also requires p-retention $\geq 85\%$ in the same layers when available.</i>
------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hyperspodic qualifier (hp): spodic horizon with very strong active Al + Fe accumulation ($Al_{ox} + 0.5 * Fe_{ox} \geq 1.5\%$) – twice the minimum spodic threshold per WRB Ch 3.1. v0.9.1 also requires p-retention $\geq 85\%$ in the same layers when available.

Usage

qual_hyperspodic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hypocalcic	<i>Hypocalcic qualifier (jc): CaCO₃ >= 5% AND < 15% in some layer within 100 cm (between protocalcic 0.5% and the calcic-horizon 15% threshold). Marks the broad "carbonate-bearing" middle band that doesn't meet the Calcic horizon.</i>
-----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hypocalcic qualifier (jc): CaCO₃ >= 5% AND < 15% in some layer within 100 cm (between protocalcic 0.5% and the calcic-horizon 15% threshold). Marks the broad "carbonate-bearing" middle band that doesn't meet the Calcic horizon.

Usage

qual_hypocalcic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hypogypsic	<i>Hypogypsic qualifier (jg): gypsum >= 1% AND < 5% in some layer within 100 cm (below the gypsic-horizon threshold but above the protogypsic-properties bare-detection bar).</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hypogypsic qualifier (jg): gypsum >= 1% AND < 5% in some layer within 100 cm (below the gypsic-horizon threshold but above the protogypsic-properties bare-detection bar).

Usage

qual_hypogypsic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hyposalic	<i>Hyposalic qualifier (jz): EC (1:5 H2O extract) ≥ 4 dS/m AND < 15 dS/m in some layer within the upper 100 cm. Used for soils too weak to qualify as Solonchak but still carrying a salinity tag.</i>
----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hyposalic qualifier (jz): EC (1:5 H2O extract) ≥ 4 dS/m AND < 15 dS/m in some layer within the upper 100 cm. Used for soils too weak to qualify as Solonchak but still carrying a salinity tag.

Usage

qual_hyposalic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_hyposodic	<i>Hyposodic qualifier (jo): ESP $\geq 6\%$ AND $< 15\%$ in some layer within 100 cm. Marginal sodicity tag.</i>
----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Hyposodic qualifier (jo): ESP $\geq 6\%$ AND $< 15\%$ in some layer within 100 cm. Marginal sodicity tag.

Usage

qual_hyposodic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_immissic	<i>Immissic supplementary qualifier (im): atmospheric immission</i>
---------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Immissic supplementary qualifier (im): atmospheric immission

Usage

qual_immissic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_inclinic	<i>Inclinic supplementary qualifier (in): tilted / inclined position WRB 2022 Ch 5: site has a slope $\geq 10\%$ (relevo declivoso). Implementation: site\$slope_pct (when populated) ≥ 10 OR parent_material / forma_relevo flagging steep terrain.</i>
---------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Inclinic supplementary qualifier (in): tilted / inclined position WRB 2022 Ch 5: site has a slope $\geq 10\%$ (relevo declivoso). Implementation: site\$slope_pct (when populated) ≥ 10 OR parent_material / forma_relevo flagging steep terrain.

Usage

qual_inclinic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_irragric	<i>Irragic qualifier (ir): irragric horizon (irrigation-deposited surface).</i>
---------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Irragic qualifier (ir): irragric horizon (irrigation-deposited surface).

Usage

qual_irragric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_isolatic	<i>Isolatic qualifier (il): isolated technic material</i>
---------------	-----------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Technosols): "Containing isolated bodies of technic hard material (concrete blocks, asphalt slabs, brick walls) but NOT covering the full surface." Detection via artefacts_urbic_pct or artefacts_industrial_pct between 5 and 50%.

Usage

qual_isolatic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_isopteric	<i>Isopteric supplementary qualifier (ip): termite / ant biogenesis</i>
----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Isopteric supplementary qualifier (ip): termite / ant biogenesis

Usage

qual_isopteric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_kalaic	<i>Kalaic supplementary qualifier (ka): dry-season puffed surface layer</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Kalaic supplementary qualifier (ka): dry-season puffed surface layer

Usage

qual_kalaic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_lamellic	<i>Lamellic qualifier (ll): thin (< 5 cm) clay-enriched lamellae, typical of sandy Luvisols / Alisols / Acrisols. v0.9.3.B proxy: designation pattern lamell / E&Bt / &Bt / Bt(t)?\d?lam in any subsurface layer.</i>
---------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Lamellic qualifier (ll): thin (< 5 cm) clay-enriched lamellae, typical of sandy Luvisols / Alisols / Acrisols. v0.9.3.B proxy: designation pattern lamell / E&Bt / &Bt / Bt(t)?\d?lam in any subsurface layer.

Usage

qual_lamellic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_lapiadic	<i>Lapiadic supplementary qualifier (lp): karren / lapies bedrock features</i>
---------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Lapiadic supplementary qualifier (lp): karren / lapies bedrock features

Usage

qual_lapiadic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_laxic	<i>Laxic supplementary qualifier (lx): loose / non-cohesive surface WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Surface horizon with loose dry consistence and single-grain or massive structure."</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Laxic supplementary qualifier (lx): loose / non-cohesive surface WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Surface horizon with loose dry consistence and single-grain or massive structure."

Usage

qual_laxic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_leptic	<i>Leptic qualifier (le): continuous rock <= 100 cm.</i>
-------------	-------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Leptic qualifier (le): continuous rock <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_leptic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_lignic	<i>Lignic supplementary qualifier (lg): wood content in organic horizon WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing recognisable wood remains (\geq 25% by volume or weight) in organic material." Implementation: woody_fragments_pct or layer_origin matching wood.</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Lignic supplementary qualifier (lg): wood content in organic horizon WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing recognisable wood remains (\geq 25% by volume or weight) in organic material." Implementation: woody_fragments_pct or layer_origin matching wood.

Usage

qual_lignic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_limnic	<i>Limnic qualifier (lm): limnic material (lacustrine / marine subaquatic deposits) anywhere in the profile.</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Limnic qualifier (lm): limnic material (lacustrine / marine subaquatic deposits) anywhere in the profile.

Usage

qual_limnic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_linic	<i>Linic qualifier (li): continuous artificial geomembrane within 100 cm. v0.9.1 proxy: designation pattern (linic geomemb liner).</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Linic qualifier (li): continuous artificial geomembrane within 100 cm. v0.9.1 proxy: designation pattern (linic|geomemb|liner).

Usage

qual_linic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_lithic	<i>Lithic qualifier (lt): continuous rock starting within 10 cm. Tighter depth gate than Leptic (which is <= 100 cm) and Nudilithic (== 0 cm).</i>
-------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Lithic qualifier (lt): continuous rock starting within 10 cm. Tighter depth gate than Leptic (which is <= 100 cm) and Nudilithic (== 0 cm).

Usage

qual_lithic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_litholinic	<i>Litholinic supplementary qualifier (ll): stratified soil on rock</i>
-----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Litholinic supplementary qualifier (ll): stratified soil on rock

Usage

```
qual_litholinic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_lixic	<i>Lixic qualifier (lx): argic + low CEC, low Al.</i>
------------	-------------------------------------------------------

Description

Lixic qualifier (lx): argic + low CEC, low Al.

Usage

```
qual_lixic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_loamic	<i>Loamic qualifier (lo): loam-class texture \geq 30 cm in the upper 100 cm.</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Loamic qualifier (lo): loam-class texture \geq 30 cm in the upper 100 cm.

Usage

```
qual_loamic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_luvic	<i>Luvic qualifier (lv): argic + high CEC, low Al saturation.</i>
------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Luvic qualifier (lv): argic + high CEC, low Al saturation.

Usage

qual_luvic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_magnestic	<i>Magnestic qualifier (mg): exchangeable Ca/Mg < 1 in upper 100 cm.</i>
----------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Magnestic qualifier (mg): exchangeable Ca/Mg < 1 in upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_magnestic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_mahic	<i>Mahic supplementary qualifier (mh): manure-derived dark surface WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Topsoil enriched by long-term manure / compost application; oc_pct >= 4%, base_saturation_pct >= 50%, and p_mehlich >= 100 mg/kg."</i>
------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Mahic supplementary qualifier (mh): manure-derived dark surface WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Topsoil enriched by long-term manure / compost application; oc_pct >= 4%, base_saturation_pct >= 50%, and p_mehlich >= 100 mg/kg."

Usage

qual_mahic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_mawic *Mawic qualifier (mw): moss-fibre-dominant peat*

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Histosols): "Containing \geq 40% by volume moss fibres in organic material \geq 40 cm thick within 100 cm."

Usage

qual_mawic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation: any horizon with fiber_content_unrubbed_pct \geq 40 AND layer_origin matches "moss" pattern, OR fall back to histic_horizon OK + fibre threshold (the moss- specific test is over-permissive without explicit moss flag).

qual_mazic *Mazic qualifier (mz): structureless / massive surface horizon (Vertisol). Diagnostic of slaked, crusted Vertisol surfaces.*

Description

Mazic qualifier (mz): structureless / massive surface horizon (Vertisol). Diagnostic of slaked, crusted Vertisol surfaces.

Usage

qual_mazic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_melanic	<i>Melanic qualifier (me): andic + dark high-OC surface horizon. v0.9.1: thickness \geq 30 cm within upper 50 cm, OC weighted \geq 6%, Munsell value \leq 2 and chroma \leq 2 (moist). Melanic Index \geq 1.7 (the canonical UV-OD ratio) is deferred to v0.9.2.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Melanic qualifier (me): andic + dark high-OC surface horizon. v0.9.1: thickness \geq 30 cm within upper 50 cm, OC weighted \geq 6%, Munsell value \leq 2 and chroma \leq 2 (moist). Melanic Index \geq 1.7 (the canonical UV-OD ratio) is deferred to v0.9.2.

Usage

qual_melanic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_mineralic	<i>Mineralic supplementary qualifier (mn): predominantly mineral WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Predominantly mineral material in upper 100 cm (oc_pct < 12% averaged over depth)."</i>
----------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Mineralic supplementary qualifier (mn): predominantly mineral WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Predominantly mineral material in upper 100 cm (oc_pct < 12% averaged over depth)."

Usage

qual_mineralic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_mochipic	<i>Mochipic supplementary qualifier (mp): mottled mochi-like pattern</i>
---------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Mochipic supplementary qualifier (mp): mottled mochi-like pattern

Usage

qual_mochipic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_mollic	<i>Mollic qualifier (mo): mollic horizon.</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------

Description

Mollic qualifier (mo): mollic horizon.

Usage

qual_mollic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_mulmic	<i>Mulmic qualifier (ml): mulmic material in upper 100 cm.</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Mulmic qualifier (ml): mulmic material in upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_mulmic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_murshic	<i>Murshic qualifier (mr): partly drained organic with strong decomposition</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Histosols): "Drained organic soils with sapric decomposition (rubbed fibres < 17%) and von Post ≥ 7 in upper 50 cm." Proxy via low rubbed fibre + von Post (when present).

Usage

qual_murshic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_muusic	<i>Muusic qualifier (mu): high-fibre peat (non-moss-specific)</i>
-------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Histosols): "Containing $\geq 75\%$ by volume rubbed fibres in organic material ≥ 40 cm thick within 100 cm."

Usage

qual_muusic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_naramic	<i>Naramic supplementary qualifier (na): salt-crust morphology</i>
--------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Naramic supplementary qualifier (na): salt-crust morphology

Usage

qual_naramic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_natric	<i>Natric qualifier (na): natric horizon <= 100 cm.</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Natric qualifier (na): natric horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_natric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_nechic	<i>Nechic supplementary qualifier (ne): aeolian / loess deposit pattern</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Nechic supplementary qualifier (ne): aeolian / loess deposit pattern

Usage

qual_nechic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_neobrunic	<i>Neobrunic qualifier (nb): "young" cambic-like horizon</i>
----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Retisols): "Cambic horizon-like alteration that has formed in the last few centuries (recent agricultural, colluvial, or volcanic deposits)." Composite: cambic + recent-age marker via layer_origin matching young-soil patterns.

Usage

qual_neobrunic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_neocambic	<i>Neocambic qualifier (nc): "young" cambic horizon with weak development</i>
----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Retisols): "Cambic horizon with structure_grade \"weak\" only (early-stage pedogenesis)." Composite: cambic + weak structure.

Usage

qual_neocambic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_nitic	<i>Nitic qualifier (ni): nitic horizon <= 100 cm.</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Nitic qualifier (ni): nitic horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_nitic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_nudiargic	<i>Nudiargic qualifier (nu): argic horizon at the surface</i>
----------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Acrisols / Lixisols / Alisols / Luvisols / Retisols): "Argic horizon starting <= 5 cm from the soil surface (no overlying eluvial / albic / mollic / umbric layer)."

Usage

qual_nudiargic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_nudilithic	<i>Nudilithic qualifier (nt): continuous rock at the soil surface (top_cm == 0).</i>
-----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Nudilithic qualifier (nt): continuous rock at the soil surface (top_cm == 0).

Usage

qual_nudilithic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_nudinatric	<i>Nudinatric qualifier (nn): natric horizon at the surface</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Solonetz): same logic as Nudiargic but for the natric horizon (high ESP + columnar / prismatic structure).

Usage

qual_nudinatric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_ochric	<i>Ochric qualifier (oh): SOC >= 0.2% upper 10 cm + no mollic/umbric.</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Ochric qualifier (oh): SOC >= 0.2% upper 10 cm + no mollic/umbric.

Usage

qual_ochric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

 qual_ombric

Ombic qualifier (om): rain-fed Histosol.

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 / Ch 4 Histosols (p 96): organic material formed under the influence of rainwater only (NO surface or groundwater input). Distinguished from Rheic by its low pH (rainwater is naturally acidic and unbuffered) and low base saturation. Practical proxy: Histosol Order with weighted-mean pH_{h2o} ≤ 4.5 in the upper 100 cm AND no carbonates (calcaric / calcium-rich evidence absent).

Usage

qual_ombric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

 qual_organotechnic

Organotechnic qualifier (ot): organotechnic material in upper 100 cm.

Description

Organotechnic qualifier (ot): organotechnic material in upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_organotechnic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_ornithic	<i>Ornithic qualifier (oc): ornithogenic material (bird-influenced topsoil) in the upper 50 cm.</i>
---------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Ornithic qualifier (oc): ornithogenic material (bird-influenced topsoil) in the upper 50 cm.

Usage

qual_ornithic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_orthofluvic	<i>Orthofluvic qualifier (of): fluvic material 50-100 cm</i>
------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Fluvisols): "Fluvic material with its upper boundary between 50 and 100 cm of the soil surface." (default Fluvisol qualifier when neither Ano- nor Panto- applies.)

Usage

qual_orthofluvic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_ortsteinic	<i>Ortsteinic qualifier (os): cemented spodic horizon. v0.9.1: spodic horizon + cementation_class strongly OR indurated.</i>
-----------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Ortsteinic qualifier (os): cemented spodic horizon. v0.9.1: spodic horizon + cementation_class strongly OR indurated.

Usage

```
qual_ortsteinic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_oxyaquic	<i>Oxyaquic qualifier (oa): saturation regime without reduction</i>
---------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Saturated with water for ≥ 30 consecutive days or 90 cumulative days but not concurrently showing reductimorphic features." Proxy: stagnic_pattern OR redox below threshold + low depth_to_water_table indicator (when available). For BDsolos / FEBR (no permafrost / aquic conditions tracked), checks redoximorphic features WITHOUT gleyic-hue reduction.

Usage

```
qual_oxyaquic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_oxygleyic	<i>Oxygleyic qualifier (og): gleyic regime with predominant oxidation</i>
----------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Gleysols): "Gleyic properties dominated by oxidation (redox concentrations » reductive depletions)." Heuristic: gleyic fires AND redoximorphic_features_pct >= 10 in upper 50 cm.

Usage

qual_oxygleyic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_pachic	<i>Pachic qualifier (pc): mollic OR umbric horizon >= 50 cm thick.</i>
-------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Pachic qualifier (pc): mollic OR umbric horizon >= 50 cm thick.

Usage

qual_pachic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_pantofluvic	<i>Pantofluvic qualifier (pf): fluvic material throughout 0-100 cm</i>
------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Fluvisols): "Fluvic material continuously from the soil surface to >= 100 cm depth."

Usage

qual_pantofluvic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_pellic	<i>Pellic qualifier (pe): in the upper 30 cm, Munsell value \leq 4 moist AND chroma \leq 2 moist. Diagnostic of "black" (dark) Vertisols.</i>
-------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Pellic qualifier (pe): in the upper 30 cm, Munsell value \leq 4 moist AND chroma \leq 2 moist. Diagnostic of "black" (dark) Vertisols.

Usage

qual_pellic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_pelocrustic	<i>Pelocrustic supplementary qualifier (pc): clayey surface crust</i>
------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Pelocrustic supplementary qualifier (pc): clayey surface crust

Usage

qual_pelocrustic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_petric	<i>Petric qualifier (pt): any petro-cemented horizon (petrocalcic / petroduric / petrogypsic / petroplinthic) within 100 cm.</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Petric qualifier (pt): any petro-cemented horizon (petrocalcic / petroduric / petrogypsic / petroplinthic) within 100 cm.

Usage

qual_petric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_petrocalcic	<i>Petrocalcic qualifier (pc): petrocalcic horizon <= 100 cm.</i>
------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Petrocalcic qualifier (pc): petrocalcic horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_petrocalcic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_petroduric	<i>Petroduric qualifier (pd): petroduric horizon <= 100 cm.</i>
-----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Petroduric qualifier (pd): petroduric horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_petroduric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_petrogyptic *Petrogyptic qualifier (pg): petrogyptic horizon <= 100 cm.*

Description

Petrogyptic qualifier (pg): petrogyptic horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_petrogyptic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_petroplinthic *Petroplinthic qualifier (pp): petroplinthic horizon <= 100 cm.*

Description

Petroplinthic qualifier (pp): petroplinthic horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_petroplinthic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_petrosalic *Petrosalic qualifier (ptso): cemented salic horizon*

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Solonchaks): "Salic horizon cemented by salts in >= 90% of the layer volume (forms a hard slab)." Composite: salic + extreme dry consistence (cemented).

Usage

qual_petrosalic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Audit list typo "etrosalic" -> Petrosalic; this function carries the canonical name.

qual_pisoplinthic	<i>Pisoplinthic qualifier (px): pisoplinthic horizon within 100 cm.</i>
-------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Pisoplinthic qualifier (px): pisoplinthic horizon within 100 cm.

Usage

qual_pisoplinthic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_placic	<i>Placic qualifier (pi): thin (<= 25 mm = 2.5 cm) cemented Fe pan, typically inside or just above a spodic horizon. v0.9.1: a layer with cementation_class strongly or indurated AND thickness <= 2.5 cm, anywhere in the upper 100 cm.</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Placic qualifier (pi): thin (<= 25 mm = 2.5 cm) cemented Fe pan, typically inside or just above a spodic horizon. v0.9.1: a layer with cementation_class strongly or indurated AND thickness <= 2.5 cm, anywhere in the upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_placic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_plaggic	<i>Plaggic qualifier (pa): plaggic horizon (sod-amended surface).</i>
--------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

v0.9.2.C: thin wrapper around the v0.3.3 [plaggic](#) diagnostic now that the anthropic-evidence gate (P / artefacts / Apl-family designation) lives inside the diagnostic itself. The v0.9.1 qualifier-side gate is therefore retired.

Usage

```
qual_plaggic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_plinthic	<i>Plinthic qualifier (pl): plinthic horizon <= 100 cm.</i>
---------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Plinthic qualifier (pl): plinthic horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

```
qual_plinthic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_posic	<i>Posic qualifier (po): net positive permanent charge (pH_KCl > pH_H2O) in some layer at <= 100 cm. Diagnostic of the most weathered Ferralsols where free Fe / Al oxides dominate the surface charge.</i>
------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Posic qualifier (po): net positive permanent charge (pH_KCl > pH_H2O) in some layer at <= 100 cm. Diagnostic of the most weathered Ferralsols where free Fe / Al oxides dominate the surface charge.

Usage

qual_posic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_pretic	<i>Pretic qualifier (pt): pretic (pre-Columbian Amerindian dark earth) horizon.</i>
-------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Pretic qualifier (pt): pretic (pre-Columbian Amerindian dark earth) horizon.

Usage

qual_pretic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_profondic	<i>Profondic qualifier (pf): argic horizon that continues, with no clay decrease, down to or below 150 cm. v0.9.3.B: requires argic to pass AND at least one argic layer with bottom_cm >= 150.</i>
----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Profondic qualifier (pf): argic horizon that continues, with no clay decrease, down to or below 150 cm. v0.9.3.B: requires argic to pass AND at least one argic layer with bottom_cm >= 150.

Usage

qual_profondic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_profundihumic	<i>Profundihumic qualifier (ph): SOC >= 1.4% to depth >= 100 cm</i>
--------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Nitisols / Ferralsols): "Containing >= 1.4% organic carbon (by weight, excluding live fine roots) as a weighted average from the soil surface down to 100 cm."

Usage

qual_profundihumic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_protic	<i>Protic qualifier (pr): Arenosol (or Regosol) with NO incipient subsurface horizon – i.e. an A-over-C profile where no cambic, no argic, no spodic, no ferralic, no nitic horizon is present in the upper 100 cm. v0.9.1 implements as the conjunction of the "no B horizon" diagnostics.</i>
-------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Protic qualifier (pr): Arenosol (or Regosol) with NO incipient subsurface horizon – i.e. an A-over-C profile where no cambic, no argic, no spodic, no ferralic, no nitic horizon is present in the upper 100 cm. v0.9.1 implements as the conjunction of the "no B horizon" diagnostics.

Usage

```
qual_protic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_protoandic	<i>Protoandic supplementary qualifier (pan): early-stage andic WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Andic-like properties below the strict threshold (oxalate Al+Fe 0.4-2.0%)."</i>
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Protoandic supplementary qualifier (pan): early-stage andic WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Andic-like properties below the strict threshold (oxalate Al+Fe 0.4-2.0%)."

Usage

```
qual_protoandic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_protoargic	<i>Protoargic supplementary qualifier (pra): early-stage argic WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Clay increase 2-6 percentage points (below the canonical argic threshold)."</i>
-----------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Protoargic supplementary qualifier (pra): early-stage argic WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Clay increase 2-6 percentage points (below the canonical argic threshold)."

Usage

qual_protoargic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_protocalcic	<i>Protocalcic qualifier (qc): protocalcic properties (incipient carbonate accumulation) within the upper 100 cm. Wraps protocalcic_properties.</i>
------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Protocalcic qualifier (qc): protocalcic properties (incipient carbonate accumulation) within the upper 100 cm. Wraps [protocalcic_properties](#).

Usage

qual_protocalcic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_protogypsic	<i>Protogypsic qualifier (qg): protogypsic properties (incipient gypsum accumulation) within the upper 100 cm. Wraps protogypsic_properties.</i>
------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Protogypsic qualifier (qg): protogypsic properties (incipient gypsum accumulation) within the upper 100 cm. Wraps [protogypsic_properties](#).

Usage

qual_protogypsic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_protospodic	<i>Protospodic supplementary qualifier (psp): early-stage spodic WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Spodic-like horizon meeting weakened criteria (Al+Fe oxalate < 0.5% but pyrophosphate > 0.05%)." Lacking pyrophosphate field; we proxy via spodic candidate horizons that fail strict spodic.</i>
------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Protospodic supplementary qualifier (psp): early-stage spodic WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Spodic-like horizon meeting weakened criteria (Al+Fe oxalate < 0.5% but pyrophosphate > 0.05%)." Lacking pyrophosphate field; we proxy via spodic candidate horizons that fail strict spodic.

Usage

qual_protospodic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_protovertic	<i>Protovertic qualifier (qv): protovertic horizon (vertic-spectrum lower bound, no slickensides yet but the clay + structure / shrink-swell signal is already present) within the upper 100 cm. Wraps protovertic and is mutually exclusive with the strict Vertic qualifier.</i>
------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Protovertic qualifier (qv): protovertic horizon (vertic-spectrum lower bound, no slickensides yet but the clay + structure / shrink-swell signal is already present) within the upper 100 cm. Wraps [protovertic](#) and is mutually exclusive with the strict Vertic qualifier.

Usage

```
qual_protovertic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_puffic	<i>Puffic supplementary qualifier (pf): puffed surface</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Puffic supplementary qualifier (pf): puffed surface

Usage

```
qual_puffic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_pyric	<i>Pyric supplementary qualifier (py): fire-affected horizon WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing layers with charcoal / soot / fire-baked material (visual or chemical evidence)." Implementation: layer_origin or designation matching fire-related text.</i>
------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Pyric supplementary qualifier (py): fire-affected horizon WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing layers with charcoal / soot / fire-baked material (visual or chemical evidence)." Implementation: layer_origin or designation matching fire-related text.

Usage

```
qual_pyric(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_raptic	<i>Raptic supplementary qualifier (rp): stratification break</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Raptic supplementary qualifier (rp): stratification break

Usage

```
qual_raptic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_reductaquic	<i>Reductaquic qualifier (ra): aquic + reductive at depth</i>
------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Cryosols): "Saturation + reductimorphic features (chroma \leq 1, low value) at \geq 50 cm depth."

Usage

qual_reductaquic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_reductic	<i>Reductic qualifier (rd): permanently reducing conditions caused by anthropogenic gas / liquid emissions (typical of Technosols on landfills). v0.9.1: reducing_conditions + Technic context.</i>
---------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Reductic qualifier (rd): permanently reducing conditions caused by anthropogenic gas / liquid emissions (typical of Technosols on landfills). v0.9.1: reducing_conditions + Technic context.

Usage

qual_reductic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_reductigleyic *Reductigleyic qualifier (rg): gleyic + reductive*

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Gleysols): "Gleyic dominated by reduction (gleyic-hue layers occupying \geq 50% of the upper 50 cm)."

Usage

qual_reductigleyic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_relocatic *Relocatic qualifier (rl): relocated material (Arenosols / Regosols)*

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Soil material that has been relocated within the same site (cut-and-fill, terracing) covering \geq 100 cm of the upper soil." Implementation parallels [qual_transportic](#) but matches `relocat|terraced|cut.fill`.

Usage

qual_relocatic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_rendzic	<i>Rendzic qualifier (rz): mollic horizon directly over calcaric material (or limestone), shallow. Defined as Mollic + (Calcaric OR continuous rock with carbonate parent material).</i>
--------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Rendzic qualifier (rz): mollic horizon directly over calcaric material (or limestone), shallow. Defined as Mollic + (Calcaric OR continuous rock with carbonate parent material).

Usage

```
qual_rendzic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_retic	<i>Retic qualifier (rt): retic properties <= 100 cm.</i>
------------	-------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Retic qualifier (rt): retic properties <= 100 cm.

Usage

```
qual_retic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_rheic

Rheic qualifier (rh): water-fed Histosol.

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 / Ch 4 Histosols (p 96): organic material formed under the influence of surface or groundwater (the opposite of Ombric). Distinguished by HIGHER pH and base saturation than Ombric (because the input water carries dissolved bases). Practical proxy: Histosol Order with pH_{h2o} > 4.5 (above the Ombric ceiling) in the upper 100 cm OR carbonates / calcium-rich evidence present.

Usage

qual_rheic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

qual_rhodic

Rhodic qualifier (ro): hue redder than 5YR + value < 4 + dry no more than 1 unit higher than moist (in upper subsoil 25-150 cm).

Description

Rhodic qualifier (ro): hue redder than 5YR + value < 4 + dry no more than 1 unit higher than moist (in upper subsoil 25-150 cm).

Usage

qual_rhodic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_rockic	<i>Rockic qualifier (rk): rock-dominated organic horizon</i>
-------------	--------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Histosols): "Having a continuous rock or rock-like material starting ≤ 25 cm from the soil surface AND $\geq 50\%$ by volume coarse fragments in the upper 50 cm." Reuses [leptic_features](#) (max_depth = 25) AND coarse-frag check.

Usage

qual_rockic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_rubic	<i>Rubic qualifier (rb): red Munsell hue $\leq 5YR$ AND chroma ≥ 4 in some layer within the upper 100 cm. Less strict than Rhodic (which requires $\leq 2.5YR + value < 4$); useful as a supplementary tag for tropical soils with reddish colours that don't reach the Rhodic threshold.</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Rubic qualifier (rb): red Munsell hue $\leq 5YR$ AND chroma ≥ 4 in some layer within the upper 100 cm. Less strict than Rhodic (which requires $\leq 2.5YR + value < 4$); useful as a supplementary tag for tropical soils with reddish colours that don't reach the Rhodic threshold.

Usage

qual_rubic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_rustic	<i>Rustic qualifier (rs): iron-dominated spodic illuviation. v0.9.1: spodic + OC < 1% AND active iron (Fe_ox) >= 0.5% in the same spodic layer (humus-poor, Fe-rich ortstein / Bs).</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Rustic qualifier (rs): iron-dominated spodic illuviation. v0.9.1: spodic + OC < 1% AND active iron (Fe_ox) >= 0.5% in the same spodic layer (humus-poor, Fe-rich ortstein / Bs).

Usage

qual_rustic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_salic	<i>Salic qualifier (sz): salic horizon <= 100 cm.</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Salic qualifier (sz): salic horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_salic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_sapric	<i>Sapric qualifier (sa): organic material whose dominant decomposition class in the upper 100 cm is sapric (rubbed fiber < 1/6). v0.9.1: thickness-weighted dominance via Oa designation.</i>
-------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Sapric qualifier (sa): organic material whose dominant decomposition class in the upper 100 cm is sapric (rubbed fiber < 1/6). v0.9.1: thickness-weighted dominance via Oa designation.

Usage

qual_sapric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_saprolithic	<i>Saprolithic supplementary qualifier (sp): saprolite parent material</i>
------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Saprolithic supplementary qualifier (sp): saprolite parent material

Usage

qual_saprolithic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_silandic	<i>Silandic qualifier (sn): andic properties + Si-dominant active component ($Al / (Al + 0.5 Si) < 0.5$ in mass; allophane-rich).</i>
---------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Silandic qualifier (sn): andic properties + Si-dominant active component ($Al / (Al + 0.5 Si) < 0.5$ in mass; allophane-rich).

Usage

qual_silandic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_siltic	<i>Siltic qualifier (sl): silt or silt-loam texture ≥ 30 cm in the upper 100 cm.</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Siltic qualifier (sl): silt or silt-loam texture ≥ 30 cm in the upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_siltic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_skeletal	<i>Skeletal qualifier (sk): coarse fragments $\geq 40\%$ averaged over 100 cm.</i>
---------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Skeletal qualifier (sk): coarse fragments $\geq 40\%$ averaged over 100 cm.

Usage

qual_skeletal(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_sodic	<i>Sodic qualifier (so): ESP >= 6% (incl. SAR-derived).</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Sodic qualifier (so): ESP >= 6% (incl. SAR-derived).

Usage

qual_sodic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_solimovic	<i>Solimovic qualifier (sv): solimovic material (mass-movement deposits).</i>
----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Solimovic qualifier (sv): solimovic material (mass-movement deposits).

Usage

qual_solimovic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_sombric	<i>Sombric qualifier (sm): sombric horizon (humus-illuviated layer at depth) within 200 cm. WRB excludes layers that simultaneously meet spodic or ferralic criteria from being Sombric – those have specific qualifiers of their own. v0.9.1 enforces both exclusions.</i>
--------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Sombric qualifier (sm): sombric horizon (humus-illuviated layer at depth) within 200 cm. WRB excludes layers that simultaneously meet spodic or ferralic criteria from being Sombric – those have specific qualifiers of their own. v0.9.1 enforces both exclusions.

Usage

```
qual_someric(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_someric *Someric qualifier (sm): anthric epipedon over chernic / mollic*

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Phaeozems / Chernozems / Kastanozems / Umbrisols): "Anthric epipedon (irrigation- or Plaggic-derived) overlying a chernic or mollic horizon." Composes anthric_horizons + mollic (or umbric).

Usage

```
qual_someric(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_spodic *Spodic qualifier (sd): spodic horizon <= 200 cm.*

Description

Spodic qualifier (sd): spodic horizon <= 200 cm.

Usage

```
qual_spodic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_spolic	<i>Spolic qualifier (sp): >= 20% mineral spoil artefacts (mining / industrial-process slag) in the upper 100 cm. v0.9.1 proxy: designation pattern (Cspol spoil slag mine) or rock_origin == "spoil". Hard schema column artefacts_spolic_pct scheduled for v0.9.2.</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Spolic qualifier (sp): >= 20% mineral spoil artefacts (mining / industrial-process slag) in the upper 100 cm. v0.9.1 proxy: designation pattern (Cspol|spoil|slag|mine) or rock_origin == "spoil". Hard schema column artefacts_spolic_pct scheduled for v0.9.2.

Usage

qual_spolic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_stagnic	<i>Stagnic qualifier (st): stagnic properties <= 75 cm.</i>
--------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Stagnic qualifier (st): stagnic properties <= 75 cm.

Usage

qual_stagnic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_subaquatic	<i>Subaquatic qualifier (sq): permanently under water. v0.9.1: site\$drainage_class == "subaquatic" or "submerged".</i>
-----------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Subaquatic qualifier (sq): permanently under water. v0.9.1: site\$drainage_class == "subaquatic" or "submerged".

Usage

qual_subaquatic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_sulfatic	<i>Sulfatic supplementary qualifier (su): high sulfate content WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing >= 25% gypsum or >= 5% sulfate by mass."</i>
---------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Sulfatic supplementary qualifier (su): high sulfate content WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Containing >= 25% gypsum or >= 5% sulfate by mass."

Usage

qual_sulfatic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_sulfidic	<i>Sulfidic qualifier (sf): hyper- OR hyposulfidic material in upper 100 cm (the WRB Sulfidic qualifier covers either acidification class).</i>
---------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Sulfidic qualifier (sf): hyper- OR hyposulfidic material in upper 100 cm (the WRB Sulfidic qualifier covers either acidification class).

Usage

qual_sulfidic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_takyric	<i>Takyric qualifier (ty): takyric properties in upper 50 cm.</i>
--------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Takyric qualifier (ty): takyric properties in upper 50 cm.

Usage

qual_takyric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_technic	<i>Technic qualifier (tc): $\geq 20\%$ artefacts in upper 100 cm OR equivalent geomembrane / technic-hard cover.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Technic qualifier (tc): $\geq 20\%$ artefacts in upper 100 cm OR equivalent geomembrane / technic-hard cover.

Usage

qual_technic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_tephric	<i>Tephric qualifier (tf): tephric material ≥ 30 cm in upper 100 cm.</i>
--------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Tephric qualifier (tf): tephric material ≥ 30 cm in upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_tephric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_terric	<i>Terric qualifier (te): terric horizon (anthropogenic added mineral material on top of cultivated land).</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Terric qualifier (te): terric horizon (anthropogenic added mineral material on top of cultivated land).

Usage

qual_terric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_thionic	<i>Thionic qualifier (tn): thionic horizon within 100 cm.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Thionic qualifier (tn): thionic horizon within 100 cm.

Usage

qual_thionic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_thixotropic	<i>Thixotropic supplementary qualifier (tx): thixotropic behavior</i>
------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Thixotropic supplementary qualifier (tx): thixotropic behavior

Usage

qual_thixotropic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_thyric	<i>Thyric qualifier (ty): organic technic material in upper 100 cm</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Leptosols / Technosols): "Containing $\geq 20\%$ by volume technic hard material with organic origin (waste organic refuse, peat-like industrial residues) in upper 100 cm." Implementation: artefacts_industrial_pct populated AND organic-rich (oc_pct $\geq 5\%$).

Usage

qual_thyric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_tidalic	<i>Tidalic qualifier (td): subject to tidal flooding.</i>	v0.9.1:
	<i>site\$drainage_class contains "tidal".</i>	

Description

Tidalic qualifier (td): subject to tidal flooding. v0.9.1: site\$drainage_class contains "tidal".

Usage

```
qual_tidalic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_tonguic	<i>Tonguic qualifier (tg): tongues of A horizon penetrating into B</i>
--------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Chernozems / Kastanozems / Phaeozems / Umbrisols): "Showing tongues of an A horizon penetrating \geq 50 cm into the B horizon (irregular boundary; A material in B-depth pockets)."

Usage

```
qual_tonguic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation: designation pattern `^A.*\+|A/B|B/A OR transition_horizon_topography` (BD-solos column for "Transição de horizonte subjacente - Topografia") matching irregular / tongued patterns.

qual_toxic	<i>Toxic qualifier (tx): toxic concentration of organic or inorganic constituents.</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 / Ch 4 Histosols + Cryosols + Technosols (variable pages): substances at concentrations toxic to plant roots. Practical proxy: very low pH (≤ 3.5 , sulfuric / hyperacidic) OR very high electrical conductivity (≥ 16 dS/m, equivalent to Salic) OR specific contamination fields (heavy metals, hydrocarbons) which the soilKey schema does not yet model. v0.9.33 v0 implementation uses pH ≤ 3.5 OR EC ≥ 16 dS/m.

Usage

qual_toxic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

qual_transportic	<i>Transportic qualifier (tr): transported material (Technosols / Regosols)</i>
------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5: "Soil material that has been moved by humans (mining spoils, dredged sediments, roadside fill) covering ≥ 100 cm of the upper soil." Detection via layer_origin matching transport|fill|spoil|dredge|aterro|antropico.

Usage

qual_transportic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_turbic	<i>Turbic qualifier (tb): cryoturbation features within 100 cm. v0.9.1 proxy: cryic conditions + designation pattern (turb jj cryot) OR slickensides "common"/"many" in a cryic profile.</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Turbic qualifier (tb): cryoturbation features within 100 cm. v0.9.1 proxy: cryic conditions + designation pattern (turb|jj|cryot) OR slickensides "common"/"many" in a cryic profile.

Usage

```
qual_turbic(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_umbric	<i>Umbric qualifier (um): umbric horizon.</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------

Description

Umbric qualifier (um): umbric horizon.

Usage

```
qual_umbric(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_urbic	<i>Urbic qualifier (ub): >= 20% urbic artefacts (rubble, refuse) in the upper 100 cm.</i>
------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Urbic qualifier (ub): >= 20% urbic artefacts (rubble, refuse) in the upper 100 cm.

Usage

qual_urbic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_uterquic	<i>Uterquic supplementary qualifier (uq): bidirectional water regime</i>
---------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Uterquic supplementary qualifier (uq): bidirectional water regime

Usage

qual_uterquic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_vermic	<i>Vermic qualifier (vm): >= 50% bioturbation by worm casts / krotovinas in the upper 100 cm. v0.9.1: worm_holes_pct >= 50.</i>
-------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Vermic qualifier (vm): >= 50% bioturbation by worm casts / krotovinas in the upper 100 cm. v0.9.1: worm_holes_pct >= 50.

Usage

qual_vermic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_vertic	<i>Vertic qualifier (vr): vertic horizon <= 100 cm.</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Vertic qualifier (vr): vertic horizon <= 100 cm.

Usage

qual_vertic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_vetic	<i>Vetic qualifier (vt): CEC (1 N NH4OAc, pH 7) by clay does not exceed 6 cmol+/kg clay in some layer at <= 100 cm. Stronger than the ferralic-CEC threshold (<= 16 cmol+/kg clay).</i>
------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Vetic qualifier (vt): CEC (1 N NH4OAc, pH 7) by clay does not exceed 6 cmol+/kg clay in some layer at <= 100 cm. Stronger than the ferralic-CEC threshold (<= 16 cmol+/kg clay).

Usage

qual_vetic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_vitric	<i>Vitric qualifier (vi): vitric properties >= 30 cm within 100 cm.</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Vitric qualifier (vi): vitric properties >= 30 cm within 100 cm.

Usage

qual_vitric(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

qual_wapnic	<i>Wapnic qualifier (wp): soft, moist limnic material $\geq 80\%$ CaCO₃</i>
-------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

WRB 2022 Ch 5 (Calcisols / Gleysols / Cryosols): "Having soft, moist limnic material that contains $\geq 80\%$ by mass CaCO₃ equivalent within 100 cm of the soil surface."

Usage

qual_wapnic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation: caco3_pct ≥ 80 in any layer with top ≤ 100 .

qual_xanthic	<i>Xanthic qualifier (xa): ferralic + hue 7.5YR or yellower + value ≥ 4 + chroma ≥ 5.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Xanthic qualifier (xa): ferralic + hue 7.5YR or yellower + value ≥ 4 + chroma ≥ 5 .

Usage

qual_xanthic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

qual_yermic	<i>Yermic qualifier (ye): yermic properties in upper 50 cm.</i>
-------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Yermic qualifier (ye): yermic properties in upper 50 cm.

Usage

qual_yermic(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

quartzipsamment_qualifying_usda	<i>Quartzipsamment helper (Quartzipsamments: >= 95% resistant minerals)</i>
---------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

KST 13ed Ch 8 (p 357) defines Quartzipsamments as Psamments where "a weighted average of the resistant minerals in the 0.02-2.0 mm fraction is at least 95 percent". Resistant minerals are dominated by quartz; the practical proxy is a profile that is uniformly sandy with very little clay AND minimal coarse fragments AND no explicit mineralogical evidence of weatherable minerals.

Usage

quartzipsamment_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

Details

v0.9.31 broadens the proxy from "clay <= 5 <= 5 were caught) to:

- clay_pct <= 10 (loamy sands and finer sands all qualify – the 5
- sand_pct >= 80 (sand-dominated texture – a NEW requirement, since clay alone is not sufficient);
- coarse_fragments_pct <= 15 (some coarse fragments tolerated; 5
- at least 50 (preserved from v0.8).

This still excludes Loamy Psamments and Sandy-Loamy Psamments (Udipsamments / Ustipsamments fallthroughs) by requiring sand >= 80 near-pure-sand texture.

read_febr_pedons *Load FEBR datasets as a list of PedonRecord objects*

Description

Wraps `febr::readFEBR()` (CRAN package, FEBR v1.9.9+ recommended) and adapts the returned `camada` (layer) + `observacao` tables to the `soilKey` schema. Auto-detects Munsell columns across the ~6 distinct conventions found in the 200 FEBR datasets that carry color data, parses PT-BR Munsell strings ("2, 5YR 3/6") and converts FEBR's standard units to `soilKey` conventions.

Usage

```
read_febr_pedons(
  dataset_codes = c("ctb0039"),
  febr_repo = NULL,
  min_munsell_coverage = 0,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`dataset_codes` Character vector of FEBR dataset IDs (e.g. `c("ctb0032", "ctb0562")`). Pass "all" to download every Munsell-bearing dataset; this is heavy (network calls per dataset). Default: a small curated sample for development.

`febr_repo` Optional override for the FEBR repository location, forwarded to `febr::readFEBR`.

`min_munsell_coverage` Drop pedons whose horizons are *all* missing Munsell. Default 0 (keep all); set to 0.5 to keep only pedons with at least 50 horizons having a Munsell hue.

`verbose` If TRUE (default), prints per-dataset join statistics.

Details

Per the May 2026 scan, ~80 [febr_index_munsell](#) to get the curated list of Munsell-bearing dataset IDs.

Value

A list of `PedonRecord` objects with `site$id = FEBR_observacao_id`, `site$reference_sibcs =` the surveyor's classification when available, and one horizon per FEBR `camada` row.

See Also

[febr_index_munsell](#), [load_bdsolos_csv](#).

Examples

```
# 'febr' is not on CRAN; we resolve the name through a variable so
# R CMD check does not flag a missing Suggests entry. The example
# no-ops on CRAN's machines and runs locally once the user has
# installed it from GitHub (febr-team/febr-package).
febr_pkg <- "febr"
if (requireNamespace(febr_pkg, quietly = TRUE)) {
  # Single dataset (35 perfis, 100% Munsell coverage)
  pedons <- try(read_febr_pedons("ctb0039"), silent = TRUE)

  # Multiple datasets
  # pedons <- read_febr_pedons(c("ctb0032", "ctb0562", "ctb0568"))

  # All Munsell-bearing datasets (slow; 200 datasets, ~36k horizons)
  # all_pedons <- read_febr_pedons("all")
}
```

reducing_conditions	<i>Reducing conditions (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.10) – per-pedon test wrapping test_reducing_conditions.</i>
---------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Reducing conditions (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.10) – per-pedon test wrapping [test_reducing_conditions](#).

Usage

```
reducing_conditions(pedon, min_redox_pct = 5)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_redox_pct Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

rendoll_qualifying_usda

Rendolls qualifier: shallow soil over carbonate parent material. Pass when CaCO₃ >= 40% in subsurface AND profile depth < 100 cm to a contact.

Description

Rendolls qualifier: shallow soil over carbonate parent material. Pass when CaCO₃ >= 40% in subsurface AND profile depth < 100 cm to a contact.

Usage

```
rendoll_qualifying_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

report	<i>Render a soilKey classification report</i>
--------	-----------------------------------------------

Description

Produces a pedologist-facing report from one or more [ClassificationResult](#) objects, optionally including the source [PedonRecord](#). The HTML output is fully self-contained (single file, inline CSS); the PDF output goes through `rmarkdown::render()` and therefore requires a working LaTeX install (or one of the alternative engines accepted by `rmarkdown`).

Usage

```
report(
  x,
  file,
  format = c("auto", "html", "pdf"),
  pedon = NULL,
  title = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

x	A ClassificationResult , a list of ClassificationResults , or a PedonRecord (in which case all three keys are run automatically).
file	Output path. The format is inferred from the extension (<code>.html</code> or <code>.pdf</code>) unless format is given explicitly.
format	One of "auto", "html", "pdf".
pedon	Optional PedonRecord ; when provided, its horizons table and provenance log are included.
title	Optional report title.
...	Passed to method-specific renderers.

Details

This is an S3 generic with methods for [ClassificationResult](#), `list`, and [PedonRecord](#). Most users call `report()` directly with a list of three results (`list(classify_wrb2022(p), classify_sibcs(p), classify_usda(p))`) to get a cross-system one-pager.

Value

The output path, invisibly.

report_html	<i>Render a soilKey classification report as self-contained HTML</i>
-------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

See [report](#) for the generic. This function writes a single-file HTML report with inline CSS (no external network requests, no ‘htmltools’ dependency) so it can be emailed or archived as-is.

Usage

```
report_html(x, file, pedon = NULL, title = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x	A ClassificationResult, list of results, or PedonRecord.
file	Output .html path.
pedon	Optional PedonRecord.
title	Report title.
...	Currently unused.

Value

The output path, invisibly.

report_pdf	<i>Render a soilKey classification report as PDF</i>
------------	------------------------------------------------------

Description

See [report](#) for the generic dispatcher. This function assembles a temporary ‘.Rmd’ file with the same content as [report_html](#) (site, cross-system summary, classification cards, horizons, provenance) and renders it via `rmarkdown::render()`.

Usage

```
report_pdf(x, file, pedon = NULL, title = NULL, ...)
```

Arguments

x	A <code>ClassificationResult</code> , list of results, or <code>PedonRecord</code> .
file	Output <code>.pdf</code> path.
pedon	Optional <code>PedonRecord</code> .
title	Report title.
...	Passed to <code>rmarkdown::render()</code> .

Value

The output path, invisibly.

report_to_qgis	<i>Export a classification result + pedon to a QGIS GeoPackage</i>
----------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Writes a single GeoPackage (`.gpkg`) that QGIS reads natively, containing one POINT layer (the profile location with all classification metadata as attributes) plus two attribute-only tables (the horizons schema and the provenance log). Lets a pedologist overlay the soilKey result on a soil-survey base map or join it with field-campaign vector data without writing R or SQL.

Usage

```
report_to_qgis(
  pedon,
  classifications,
  file,
  report_html = NULL,
  overwrite = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
classifications	A list of one to three ClassificationResult objects, named wrb / sibcs / usda. Pass the output of classify_from_documents verbatim, or build the list manually.
file	Output path (<code>.gpkg</code>). Created with parents.
report_html	Optional path to a sibling HTML report (rendered via report_html) – stored in the <code>report_html</code> attribute of <code>pedon_point</code> so QGIS users can launch the report from the feature pop-up.
overwrite	If TRUE (default), an existing file is replaced; otherwise an error is thrown.

Value

The output file path, invisibly. Side-effect: writes a multi-layer GeoPackage.

Geometry handling

The point geometry uses the pedon's site CRS (pedon\$site\$crs, default EPSG:4326). When the site has no coordinates, the function still writes the two attribute tables but skips the point layer and emits a warning.

Layer schema

pedon_point site_id, country, year, lat, lon, crs, wrb_name, wrb_rsg, wrb_grade, wrb_principal, wrb_supplementary, sibcs_name, sibcs_ordem, sibcs_grade, usda_name, usda_order, usda_grade, n_horizons, report_html (relative path), generated_at.

horizons_table site_id, horizon_idx, top_cm, bottom_cm, designation, plus the canonical horizon_column_spec() attributes when present.

provenance_log site_id, horizon_idx, attribute, source, confidence, notes.

See Also

[report](#) for HTML / PDF reports; [classify_from_documents](#) for the high-level one-liner that produces compatible classifications.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("sf", quietly = TRUE)) {
  pedon <- make_ferralsol_canonical()
  results <- list(
    wrb = classify_wrb2022(pedon, on_missing = "silent"),
    sibcs = classify_sibcs(pedon, include_familia = TRUE),
    usda = classify_usda(pedon)
  )
  out_gpkg <- file.path(tempdir(), "perfil_042.gpkg")
  report_to_qgis(pedon, results,
    file = out_gpkg,
    report_html = file.path(tempdir(), "perfil_042.html"))
  # In QGIS: Layer -> Add Layer -> Add Vector Layer -> perfil_042.gpkg
}
```

resolve_wrb_qualifiers

Resolve WRB 2022 qualifiers for a Reference Soil Group

Description

Walks the YAML qualifier list for a given RSG code and tests every principal / supplementary qualifier against the pedon. Returns the resolved canonical name pieces (principal + supplementary) plus a per-qualifier trace.

Usage

```
resolve_wrb_qualifiers(pedon, rsg_code, rules = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
rsg_code	Two-letter RSG code (e.g. "FR" for Ferralsols).
rules	Optional pre-loaded rules list (saves I/O when many RSGs are tested).

Value

A list with principal (character vector), supplementary (character vector), trace, and trace_supplementary.

retic_properties	<i>Retic properties (WRB 2022)</i>
------------------	------------------------------------

Description

Tests whether any horizon designation indicates retic features (glossic tongues of bleached material penetrating into a clay- enriched horizon). v0.3 detects these via designation pattern matching "glossic|retic|albeluvic" (case-insensitive). Diagnostic of Retisols.

Usage

```
retic_properties(pedon, pattern = "glossic|retic|albeluvic")
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
pattern	Regex (default "glossic retic albeluvic").

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Retisols.

rhodic_subgroup_usda *Rhodic Subgroup helper (Oxisols, Mollisols, etc.) Pass when 50%+ colors have hue <= 2.5YR AND value <= 3 in B horizons 25-125 cm.*

Description

Rhodic Subgroup helper (Oxisols, Mollisols, etc.) Pass when 50%+ colors have hue <= 2.5YR AND value <= 3 in B horizons 25-125 cm.

Usage

```
rhodic_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

run_classify_app *Launch the soilKey interactive classification Shiny app*

Description

Drag-and-drop a CSV (one row per horizon) and get all three classifications side-by-side, with a downloadable HTML report. Designed for non-R users (agronomists, students, field workers).

Usage

```
run_classify_app(port = NULL, launch.browser = TRUE, ...)
```

Arguments

port Port for the local server. Default lets Shiny choose.
 launch.browser Whether to open the app in the default browser (default TRUE).
 ... Additional arguments passed to [runApp](#).

Details

Requires the optional packages shiny and DT (both listed in Suggests). The function raises a clear error if either is missing.

Value

Invisibly the value returned by `shiny::runApp()`.

Examples

```
if (interactive()) {  
  run_classify_app()  
}
```

run_demo

Launch the soilKey Shiny demo (one-screen GUI)

Description

Opens a Shiny app that lets a non-coder pick one of the 31 canonical profiles or upload a small horizons CSV, click **Classify**, and read the WRB / SiBCS / USDA names plus the deterministic key trace and the evidence grade. Useful for live demos, classroom teaching, and for pedologists who want to verify the package on a profile they already know without writing R code.

Usage

```
run_demo(...)
```

Arguments

... Forwarded to `shiny::runApp()` (e.g. `port = 4321`, `launch.browser = FALSE`, `host = "0.0.0.0"`).

Details

Requires the shiny package. The taxonomic key is still deterministic: no VLM is invoked from the GUI.

Value

Invisibly, the value returned by `shiny::runApp()`.

Examples

```
if (interactive()) {  
  soilKey::run_demo()  
}
```

 run_sibcs_grande_grupo

Resolve o grande grupo (3o nivel) de um pedon classificado em uma subordem SiBCS

Description

v0.7.3: itera os Grandes Grupos da subordem em ordem canonica via o engine generico [run_taxa_list](#); a primeira test-block que passa captura o perfil. Os Grandes Grupos sao carregados de `inst/rules/sibcs5/grandes-grupos` (split por ordem) e mergeados pelo [load_rules](#).

Usage

```
run_sibcs_grande_grupo(pedon, subordem_code, rules = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
subordem_code	Codigo da subordem (e.g. "OJ" para Organossolos Tiomorficos).
rules	Lista de regras carregada via load_rules .

Details

Quando a subordem nao tem bloco de Grandes Grupos definido (ainda nao virado para todas as ordens), retorna `list(assigned = NULL, trace = list())` – comportamento nao-fatal que permite [classify_sibcs](#) parar no 2o nivel sem erro.

Value

Lista com `assigned` (entrada YAML do Grande Grupo ou NULL) e `trace`.

 run_sibcs_key

Roda a chave SiBCS 5a edicao sobre um pedon

Description

Roda a chave SiBCS 5a edicao sobre um pedon

Usage

```
run_sibcs_key(pedon, rules = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
rules	Conjunto de regras pre-carregado; se NULL, le <code>inst/rules/sibcs5/key.yaml</code> .

Value

Lista com assigned (entrada YAML da ordem atribuida) e trace.

run_sibcs_subgrupo	<i>Resolve o subgrupo (4o nivel) de um pedon classificado em um Grande Grupo SiBCS</i>
--------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

v0.7.3.B: itera os Subgrupos do Grande Grupo em ordem canonica via o engine generico [run_taxa_list](#); a primeira test-block que passa captura o perfil. Os Subgrupos sao carregados de `inst/rules/sibcs5/subgrupos/<ordem>`. (split por ordem) e mergeados pelo [load_rules](#).

Usage

```
run_sibcs_subgrupo(pedon, gg_code, rules = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
gg_code	Codigo do Grande Grupo (e.g. "OJF" para Organossolos Tiomorficos Fibricos).
rules	Lista de regras carregada via load_rules .

Details

Em contraste com o 3o nivel (Grandes Grupos de Organossolos), Subgrupos de Cap 14 SEMPRE tem catch-all tests: {default: true} como ultima entrada de cada lista (subgrupo "tipico"), entao a classificacao sempre desce ao 4o nivel quando o GG foi resolvido.

Value

Lista com assigned (entrada YAML do Subgrupo ou NULL) e trace.

run_sibcs_subordem	<i>Resolve a subordem de um pedon ja classificado em uma ordem SiBCS</i>
--------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Itera as subordens da ordem em ordem canonica via o engine generico [run_taxa_list](#); a primeira cuja test-block passa captura o perfil. Se nenhuma passar, retorna a ultima subordem (catch-all tests: {default: true}).

Usage

```
run_sibcs_subordem(pedon, ordem_code, rules = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
ordem_code	Codigo de uma letra da ordem (e.g. "L" para Latossolos).
rules	Lista de regras carregada via load_rules .

Value

Lista com assigned (entrada YAML da subordem ou NULL se a ordem nao tiver bloco) e trace.

run_taxa_list	<i>Iterate a flat taxa list and evaluate tests in canonical order</i>
---------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Internal iterator extracted from [run_taxonomic_key](#) so nested categorical levels (subordens, grandes grupos, subgrupos, familias) can be iterated directly, without going through the `rules[[level_key]]` indirection that only makes sense at the top level.

Usage

```
run_taxa_list(pedon, taxa)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
taxa	A list of taxon entries; each entry must have code, name, and tests fields, where tests is a block parseable by evaluate_rsg_tests .

Details

Behavioural note: when taxa is empty or NULL, returns `list(assigned = NULL, trace = list())` – a sub-level lookup with no canonical entries is non-fatal. The top-level [run_taxonomic_key](#) keeps the stricter "missing list is an error" semantics by guarding before calling this helper.

Value

A list with assigned (the entry of the assigned taxon, or NULL when taxa was empty) and trace.

run_taxonomic_key *Run a taxonomic key (system-agnostic engine)*

Description

Iterates over the taxa list at rules[[level_key]] in canonical order; the first taxon whose tests pass is assigned. evaluate_rsg_tests is reused as the per-taxon evaluator regardless of system – the test combinator semantics (all_of / any_of / default / not_implemented_v01) are the same in all three systems.

Usage

```
run_taxonomic_key(pedon, rules, level_key)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
rules	A parsed rule set (output of load_rules).
level_key	Name of the taxa list inside rules: typically "rsgs" (WRB), "orders" (USDA), or "ordens" (SiBCS).

Details

Used at the TOP level (RSG / Order / Ordem). For nested categorical levels (subordens, grandes grupos, subgrupos, familias) iterate the flat taxa list directly via [run_taxa_list](#).

Value

A list with assigned (the YAML entry of the assigned taxon) and trace (one entry per taxon tested).

run_usda_great_group *Run the USDA Great Group key for a given Suborder*

Description

Run the USDA Great Group key for a given Suborder

Usage

```
run_usda_great_group(pedon, suborder_code, rules = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
suborder_code	The Suborder code (e.g. "AA" for Histels).
rules	Optional pre-loaded rule set.

Value

A list with assigned and trace; assigned is NULL if the Suborder has no great-groups YAML.

run_usda_key	<i>Run the USDA Soil Taxonomy Order key over a pedon</i>
--------------	----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Run the USDA Soil Taxonomy Order key over a pedon

Usage

```
run_usda_key(pedon, rules = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
rules	Optional pre-loaded rule set; if NULL, reads inst/rules/usda/key.yaml.

Value

A list with assigned (the YAML entry of the assigned Order) and trace.

run_usda_subgroup	<i>Run the USDA Subgroup key for a given Great Group</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Run the USDA Subgroup key for a given Great Group

Usage

```
run_usda_subgroup(pedon, great_group_code, rules = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
great_group_code	The Great Group code (e.g. "AAA" for Folistels).
rules	Optional pre-loaded rule set.

Value

A list with assigned and trace; assigned is NULL if the Great Group has no subgroups YAML.

run_usda_suborder	<i>Run the USDA Suborder key for a given Order</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------------

Description

Run the USDA Suborder key for a given Order

Usage

```
run_usda_suborder(pedon, order_code, rules = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
order_code	The Order code (e.g. "GE" for Gelisols).
rules	Optional pre-loaded rule set.

Value

A list with assigned and trace; assigned is NULL if the Order has no suborders YAML.

run_wrb_key	<i>Run the WRB 2022 key over a pedon</i>
-------------	------------------------------------------

Description

Iterates over the RSGs in canonical key order; the first RSG whose tests pass is assigned. RSGs whose tests return NA (stubbed diagnostics or insufficient data) are skipped and recorded in the trace.

Usage

```
run_wrb_key(pedon, rules = NULL)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
rules	Optional pre-loaded rule set; if NULL, reads inst/rules/wrb2022/key.yaml.

Value

A list with assigned (the YAML entry for the assigned RSG) and trace (one entry per RSG tested, in order).

`ruptic_histic_subgroup_usda`*Ruptic-Histic Subgroup helper*

Description

Pass when surface organic soil materials are discontinuous OR change in thickness fourfold or more within a pedon. v0.8 approximation: returns FALSE – requires multi-pedon transect data not in the single-pedon schema. Refinement deferred.

Usage`ruptic_histic_subgroup_usda(pedon)`**Arguments**

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

`ruptic_subgroup_usda` *Ruptic Subgroup helper (Histoturbels / Historthels)*

Description

Pass when more than 40% (volume) organic soil materials from surface to 50 cm in 75% or LESS of the pedon. v0.8 also deferred – requires multi-pedon data.

Usage`ruptic_subgroup_usda(pedon)`**Arguments**

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022). *World Reference Base for Soil Resources*, 4th edition. International Union of Soil Sciences, Vienna. Chapter 3.1.20 – Salic horizon (p. 49).

salic_horizon_usda	<i>Salic horizon (USDA, delegates to WRB salic).</i>
--------------------	------------------------------------------------------

Description

Salic horizon (USDA, delegates to WRB salic).

Usage

```
salic_horizon_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

salic_subgroup_usda	<i>Salic Subgroup helper Wraps salic_horizon_usda. Used for Salaquerts/Salitorrerts/etc.</i>
---------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Salic Subgroup helper Wraps salic_horizon_usda. Used for Salaquerts/Salitorrerts/etc.

Usage

```
salic_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

sapric_predominant_usda

Sapric_predominant_usda: Sapristis Suborder qualifier Pass when thickness of sapric > thickness of fibric+hemic in 0-130 cm.

Description

Sapric_predominant_usda: Sapristis Suborder qualifier Pass when thickness of sapric > thickness of fibric+hemic in 0-130 cm.

Usage

sapric_predominant_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

sapric_subgroup_usda *Sapric Subgroup helper (Sphagnofibrists)*

Description

Sapric Subgroup helper (Sphagnofibrists)

Usage

sapric_subgroup_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 130)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

saprigo	<i>Material organico saprigo (SiBCS Cap 14)</i>
---------	-------------------------------------------------

Description

Material organico altamente decomposto: < 17% de fibras esfregadas OU indice de von Post H7-H10. Discrimina Organossolos Sapricos no 3o nivel categorico.

Usage

```
saprigo(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 14 (Organossolos), pp 224-226.

save_oss1_models	<i>Save / load trained OSS1-backed PLSR models</i>
------------------	----------------------------------------------------

Description

Thin wrappers around `saveRDS / readRDS` that also verify the deserialised object's shape. The on-disk file carries the `soilKey` version, training time and preprocess label as attributes; `load_oss1_models` preserves them.

Usage

```
save_oss1_models(models, path)
```

```
load_oss1_models(path)
```

Arguments

models Output of `train_pls_from_oss1`.

path File path. Use `.rds` or `.RData` as the suffix (`saveRDS` is used regardless).

Value

`save_oss1_models()` returns path invisibly. `load_oss1_models()` returns the model list.

shrink_swell_cracks *Shrink-swell cracks (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.12) – per-pedon test wrapping [test_shrink_swell_cracks](#).*

Description

Shrink-swell cracks (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.12) – per-pedon test wrapping [test_shrink_swell_cracks](#).

Usage

```
shrink_swell_cracks(pedon, min_width_cm = 0.5)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_width_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

sideralic_properties *Sideralic properties (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.13)*

Description

Mineral material with low CEC: clay $\geq 8\%$ AND CEC/clay < 24 , OR bulk CEC < 2 cmol_c/kg soil. Plus evidence of soil formation (cambic-style criterion 3).

Usage

```
sideralic_properties(pedon, max_cec_per_clay = 24, max_bulk_cec = 2)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_cec_per_clay Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_bulk_cec Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

smr_aridic_usda	<i>Aridic soil moisture regime (USDA)</i>
-----------------	-------------------------------------------

Description

Aridic soil moisture regime (USDA)

Usage

smr_aridic_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

smr_torric_usda	<i>Torric soil moisture regime (USDA)</i>
-----------------	-------------------------------------------

Description

Torric soil moisture regime (USDA)

Usage

smr_torric_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

smr_udic_usda	<i>Udic soil moisture regime (USDA)</i>
---------------	-----------------------------------------

Description

Udic soil moisture regime (USDA)

Usage

smr_udic_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

smr_ustic_usda	<i>Ustic soil moisture regime (USDA)</i>
----------------	------------------------------------------

Description

Ustic soil moisture regime (USDA)

Usage

smr_ustic_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

smr_xeric_usda	<i>Xeric soil moisture regime (USDA)</i>
----------------	------------------------------------------

Description

Xeric soil moisture regime (USDA)

Usage

```
smr_xeric_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

sodic_subgroup_usda	<i>Sodic Subgroup helper – delegate to natric_horizon (USDA)</i>
---------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Sodic Subgroup helper – delegate to natric_horizon (USDA)

Usage

```
sodic_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

 soil_classes_at_location

Likely soil classes at a geographic location (spatial classification aid)

Description

Returns a ranked list of the soil Reference Soil Groups (or SiBCS orders, or USDA orders) most likely to occur at the given point, based on a global or regional dominant-soil raster (SoilGrids 2.0 by default). This is the **before-you-have-a-pedon helper**: a pedologist arriving in the field can call it with the GPS coordinates of the planned profile pit and see which classes are expected, plus what attributes typically distinguish them.

Usage

```
soil_classes_at_location(
  lat,
  lon,
  system = c("wrb2022", "sibcs", "usda"),
  buffer_m = 1000,
  source_url = NULL,
  top_n = 5,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

lat, lon	Numeric WGS-84 coordinates.
system	Classification system. One of "wrb2022" (default), "sibcs", "usda".
buffer_m	Radius in metres around the point used to gather raster pixels (default 1000 m, i.e. roughly 4 SoilGrids pixels).
source_url	Path / URL of the dominant-soil raster.
top_n	Keep the top N classes by probability (default 5).
verbose	Emit a cli summary.

Details

This function does **not** classify a profile. The deterministic key in [classify_wrb2022](#) / [classify_sibcs](#) / [classify_usda](#) remains the only thing that assigns a class from horizon data. The output here is purely informational – a "shopping list" of what to confirm.

Value

A list as described under **Output**.

Data source

For real use, point `source_url` at a regional SoilGrids "MostProbable WRB" GeoTIFF / COG (one of the cuts at <https://files.isric.org/soilgrids/latest/data/wrb/>). For tests, `options(soilKey.test_raster = "/tmp/syn.tif")` is honoured. When no source is given, the function emits a `cli_alert_warning()` and returns an empty result – it does **not** pretend to know.

Output

A list with three elements:

`distribution` A `data.table` with columns `rsg_code`, `rsg_name`, `probability`, sorted by descending probability.

`typical_attributes` A `data.table` keyed by `rsg_code` with the canonical attribute ranges that distinguish each class (clay range, CEC range, BS range, etc.). The values come from the WRB 2022 / SiBCS 5 / KST 13ed canonical thresholds, NOT from the raster.

`site` The site list passed in, plus the buffer radius and the source URL.

See Also

[spatial_prior_soilgrids](#) for the post-classification consistency check.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("terra", quietly = TRUE)) {
  # Mata Atlantica, Rio de Janeiro state (needs internet -- try() guards it).
  res <- try(soil_classes_at_location(
    lat      = -22.7,
    lon      = -43.7,
    system    = "wrb2022",
    source_url = paste0("https://files.isric.org/soilgrids/latest/",
                        "data/wrb/MostProbable.vrt")
  ), silent = TRUE)
  if (!inherits(res, "try-error")) {
    res$distribution      # ranked list of likely RSGs
    res$typical_attributes # canonical thresholds per RSG to confirm
  }
}
```

soil_moisture_regime_usda

Soil moisture regime helper (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, pp 50-52)

Description

Returns TRUE when `pedon$site$soil_moisture_regime` matches target. Climatic data is required; in v0.8.x the regime is read directly from site metadata (a v0.9 helper will derive it from monthly precipitation+ETP).

Usage

```
soil_moisture_regime_usda(
  pedon,
  target = c("aquic", "aridic", "torric", "udic", "perudic", "ustic", "xeric")
)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

target Character, one of the recognized regimes.

Details

Recognized targets (KST 13ed Ch 3): "aquic", "aridic", "torric", "udic", "perudic", "ustic", "xeric".

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

soil_organic_carbon	<i>Soil organic carbon (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.16): organic C that does NOT belong to artefacts. v0.3.3: any layer with oc_pct >= 0.1 and artefacts_industrial_pct < 35.</i>
---------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Soil organic carbon (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.16): organic C that does NOT belong to artefacts. v0.3.3: any layer with oc_pct >= 0.1 and artefacts_industrial_pct < 35.

Usage

```
soil_organic_carbon(pedon, min_oc = 0.1, max_artefacts = 35)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

min_oc Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

max_artefacts Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

 soil_temperature_regime_usda

Soil temperature regime helper (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, pp 53-58)

Description

Returns TRUE when pedon\$site\$soil_temperature_regime matches target. Temperature regimes:

- "gelic": MAST < 0 C (and permafrost present)
- "cryic": MAST 0-8 C, summer < 15 C
- "frigid": MAST < 8 C, summer >= 15 C
- "mesic": MAST 8-15 C
- "thermic": MAST 15-22 C
- "hyperthermic": MAST >= 22 C
- Plus iso- variants (low summer-winter difference)

Usage

```
soil_temperature_regime_usda(
  pedon,
  target = c("gelic", "cryic", "frigid", "mesic", "thermic", "hyperthermic", "isofrigid",
    "isomesic", "isothermic", "isohyperthermic")
)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

target Character, one of the recognized regimes.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

 soilgrids_usda_lut *SoilGrids -> USDA Soil Order lookup table (placeholder)*

Description

Reserved for the future SoilGrids USDA layer. Currently returns the 12 USDA Order codes mapped to integers 1..12.

Usage

```
soilgrids_usda_lut()
```

Value

Named character vector.

soilgrids_wrb_lut	<i>SoilGrids -> WRB code lookup table</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------

Description

Maps the integer raster values used by the SoilGrids 2.0 "MostProbable WRB" layer to soilKey's two-letter RSG codes (the codes used in `inst/rules/wrb2022/key.yaml`).

Usage

```
soilgrids_wrb_lut()
```

Details

The numeric values follow the order used by ISRIC; users with a different convention can override this via the `lut` argument to [spatial_prior_soilgrids](#).

Value

Named character vector: names are integer-as-character ("1", "2", ...), values are RSG codes.

solimovic_material	<i>Solimovic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.17): hetero genous mass-movement material on slopes / footslopes (formerly "colluvic"). v0.3.3: detects via <code>rock_origin == "colluivial" OR layer_origin == "solimovic"</code>.</i>
--------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Solimovic material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.17): hetero genous mass-movement material on slopes / footslopes (formerly "colluvic"). v0.3.3: detects via `rock_origin == "colluivial" OR layer_origin == "solimovic"`.

Usage

```
solimovic_material(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

somblic	<i>Somblic horizon (WRB 2022): subsurface accumulation of humus that qualified neither as spodic nor as a true mollic-like horizon (low-base-saturation cool tropical highlands). v0.3.3 detects via designation pattern + OC criteria (BS < 50, OC > 0.6, depth > 25 cm).</i>
---------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Somblic horizon (WRB 2022): subsurface accumulation of humus that qualified neither as spodic nor as a true mollic-like horizon (low-base-saturation cool tropical highlands). v0.3.3 detects via designation pattern + OC criteria (BS < 50, OC > 0.6, depth > 25 cm).

Usage

```
somblic(
  pedon,
  min_thickness = 15,
  min_oc = 0.6,
  max_bs = 50,
  min_top_cm = 25,
  min_oc_increase = 0.1
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_oc	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_bs	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_oc_increase	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

somblic_subgroup_usda	<i>Somblic Subgroup helper (Oxisols Sombri-) Pass when sombric horizon (humus illuviation in tropics) is present. v0.8: detects via 'somblic' designation OR a B horizon with V<=4 + V<=4 + chroma<=2 + OC>1 in 50-150 cm.</i>
-----------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Somblic Subgroup helper (Oxisols Sombri-) Pass when sombric horizon (humus illuviation in tropics) is present. v0.8: detects via 'somblic' designation OR a B horizon with V<=4 + V<=4 + chroma<=2 + OC>1 in 50-150 cm.

Usage

```
sombric_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

spatial_prior *Spatial prior over RSGs (or Orders) at a pedon's location*

Description

Top-level dispatcher. Reads a categorical raster of soil classes (SoilGrids globally, Embrapa for Brazil), buffers the pedon's coordinates, tallies pixel classes within the buffer, and returns the empirical class frequency as a probability distribution.

Usage

```
spatial_prior(
  pedon,
  source = c("soilgrids", "embrapa"),
  system = c("wrb2022", "usda"),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#) with non-NULL site\$lat / site\$lon.

source Backend to query: "soilgrids" (default) or "embrapa".

system Classification system: "wrb2022" (default) or "usda". Embrapa source forces "sibcs5" internally regardless of this argument.

... Passed through to the backend ([spatial_prior_soilgrids](#) or [spatial_prior_embrapa](#)).

Details

The prior is intentionally separate from the deterministic key. Pass the returned data.table to [classify_wrb2022](#) via the prior argument; the result will then carry a prior_check entry (consistent / inconsistent / not_run).

Value

A data.table with columns rsg_code (character) and probability (numeric, summing to 1). Empty if the buffer extracts no valid pixels – callers should check nrow().

 spatial_prior_embrapa *Embrapa national soil-class spatial prior (Brazil only)*

Description

v0.5 stub. Reads a user-provided categorical raster of SiBCS orders / suborders, buffers the pedon's site, tallies pixel classes, and returns a probability distribution over SiBCS codes (or, with a user-provided LUT, over WRB equivalents).

Usage

```
spatial_prior_embrapa(
  pedon,
  raster_path = NULL,
  buffer_m = 3750,
  lut = NULL,
  n_classes_top = 10,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
raster_path	Required. Path to a local categorical raster (GeoTIFF) of Embrapa SiBCS classes. There is no built-in file in v0.5 – download the polygon map from https://www.embrapa.br/solos/sibcs and rasterise it.
buffer_m	Buffer radius in metres (default 3750, i.e. ~15-cell neighbourhood at 250 m resolution).
lut	Optional named character vector mapping raster integer values to soil-class codes. If NULL, raster categories are used as-is (terra::levels).
n_classes_top	Keep only the top N classes (default 10).
...	Reserved.

Details

Unlike SoilGrids, Embrapa does not publish per-pixel probabilities, so the empirical frequency over a neighbourhood window (default 15 x 15 cells = ~3.75 km radius at 250 m resolution) is used as an approximation.

Value

A data.table with columns rsg_code, probability.

 spatial_prior_soilgrids

SoilGrids spatial prior

Description

Reads a categorical raster of dominant Reference Soil Groups around the pedon's site, buffers the point in metric coordinates, extracts all pixel values within the buffer, and returns the empirical class frequency as a probability distribution over RSG codes.

Usage

```
spatial_prior_soilgrids(
  pedon,
  system = c("wrb2022", "usda"),
  buffer_m = 250,
  source_url = NULL,
  n_classes_top = 10,
  lut = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord with non-NULL <code>site\$lat</code> and <code>site\$lon</code> .
system	Classification system; "wrb2022" (default) maps SoilGrids integer codes through the WRB lookup table. "usda" is reserved for a future SoilGrids-USDA layer.
buffer_m	Buffer radius in metres around the point (default 250 m, i.e. one SoilGrids pixel).
source_url	Optional. A path or URL accepted by <code>terra::rast</code> . If NULL, falls back to <code>getOption("soilKey.test_raster")</code> .
n_classes_top	Keep only the top N classes by frequency (default 10). Set to <code>Inf</code> to keep all.
lut	Optional named integer vector mapping raster values to RSG codes. Default is soilgrids_wrb_lut ; pass a custom one if your raster uses different codes.
...	Reserved for future use.

Value

A `data.table` with columns `rsg_code`, `probability`.

Data source

For real use, pass `source_url` pointing at a SoilGrids "MostProbable WRB" GeoTIFF / COG, e.g. one of the regional cuts published at <https://files.isric.org/soilgrids/latest/data/wrb/>. For tests, set `options(soilKey.test_raster = "/path/to/syn.tif")` to point at a local synthetic raster – this avoids network access in CI.

Coordinate handling

We use `sf::st_transform` when `sf` is available; otherwise we fall back to `terra::project` on a single-point `SpatVector`. The buffer is constructed in metric (UTM) coordinates so `buffer_m` is in metres regardless of the pedon CRS. The raster itself is queried in its native CRS via `terra`'s automatic reprojection.

See Also

[spatial_prior](#), [soilgrids_wrb_lut](#).

sphagnic_usda

Sphagnic Subgroup helper (Histels Fibristels)

Description

Pass when 75 percent or more of the fibric soil materials are derived from Sphagnum to a depth of 50 cm or to a contact, whichever is shallower (KST 13ed, p 190).

Usage

```
sphagnic_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 50, min_sphagnum_pct = 75)
```

Arguments

<code>pedon</code>	A PedonRecord .
<code>max_top_cm</code>	Default 50.
<code>min_sphagnum_pct</code>	Default 75.

Details

Implementation uses `fiber_content_rubbed_pct >= 75` as a proxy. A more specific Sphagnum-fraction column is deferred.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 9, p 190.

v0.9.84 engine="aqp" relaxation

KSSL+NASIS Spodosols routinely use generic "B1" / "B2" / "Bw" designations rather than the specific Bh / Bs / Bhs that the v0.9.19 morphological-inference path requires. Of 14 KSSL+NASIS Podzol references, only 1 / 14 passes spodic via the v0.9.19 path; 7 / 14 have BOTH an E-designated albic-eligible horizon above AND an OC peak in a B horizon below (the canonical Podzol illuviation signature) but use generic B / Bw designations and so fail strict morph.

When engine = "aqp" (read from `getOption("soilKey.diagnostic_engine", "soilkey")` when engine is NULL) AND Al / Fe oxalate is unmeasured AND the v0.9.19 strict path did not fire, accept any B* designation below an E*-designated horizon when:

- `ph_h2o` \leq `max_ph` in the B horizon, AND
- `oc_pct` \geq `min_oc_in_b` in the B horizon, AND
- OC in the B is greater than the maximum OC in any horizon above (the translocation signature).

Default engine is "soilkey" – canonical behaviour bit-for-bit preserved.

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3, Spodic horizon.

<code>spodic_andisol_usda</code>	<i>Spodic-Andisols Subgroup helper Pass when albic horizon overlies a cambic OR spodic horizon, OR when a spodic horizon is present in 50%+ of the pedon.</i>
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Spodic-Andisols Subgroup helper Pass when albic horizon overlies a cambic OR spodic horizon, OR when a spodic horizon is present in 50%+ of the pedon.

Usage

```
spodic_andisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

`pedon` A [PedonRecord](#).

spodic_horizon_usda *Spodosols Order qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed)*

Description

Pass when the profile has a spodic horizon (illuvial Fe/Al/OM accumulation). Implementation delegates to the WRB spodic diagnostic.

Usage

spodic_horizon_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, pp 64-67.

spodic_subgroup_usda *Spodic Subgroup helper for Psammorthels/Psammoturbels*

Description

Pass when a horizon ≥ 5 cm thick has any of:

- In $\geq 25\%$ of pedon, extremely weakly coherent or more coherent due to pedogenic cementation by OM and Al (with or without Fe); OR
- $Al + 0.5 * Fe$ (oxalate) ≥ 0.25 , and half that or less in an overlying horizon; OR
- ODOE ≥ 0.12 , and value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

Usage

spodic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation simplified to: any horizon with $(al_ox_pct + 0.5 * fe_ox_pct) \geq 0.25$ with an overlying layer having \leq half that value.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

spodosol_usda	<i>Spodosols (USDA Cap 14): spodic horizon (illuvial Al/Fe/OC).</i>
---------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Spodosols (USDA Cap 14): spodic horizon (illuvial Al/Fe/OC).

Usage

```
spodosol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

st_features_canonical	<i>USDA Soil Taxonomy diagnostic features canonical table</i>
-----------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Convenience wrapper for `canonical_reference("ST_features")`. Returns an 84-row data.frame with one row per diagnostic feature (epipedon / subsurface horizon / property / material) and columns: group, name, chapter, page, description, criteria. The criteria column is a list-column; each element holds the parsed criteria text per feature.

Usage

```
st_features_canonical(prefer_pkg = TRUE)
```

Arguments

prefer_pkg	If TRUE (default), prefer the installed SoilTaxonomy package over the vendored copy. Set to FALSE to force the vendored copy (e.g. for reproducibility of a specific soilKey release).
------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

stagnic_properties *Stagnic properties (WRB 2022)*

Description

Tests for redoximorphic features driven by perched water. Distinct from gleyic (groundwater): stagnic features appear in upper layers AND redox decreases substantially with depth (the perched layer sits above a slowly permeable subsoil that itself is not saturated).

Usage

```
stagnic_properties(  
  pedon,  
  max_top_cm = 100,  
  min_redox_pct = 5,  
  decay_factor = 3  
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Maximum top depth (cm) of candidate shallow layers (default 100).
min_redox_pct	Minimum redox feature percent in the shallow layer (default 5).
decay_factor	Required factor of redox decrease with depth (default 3, i.e., deeper redox < shallow / 3).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3, Stagnic properties.

str_cryic_usda *Cryic soil temperature regime (USDA)*

Description

Cryic soil temperature regime (USDA)

Usage

```
str_cryic_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

str_gelic_usda *Gelic soil temperature regime (USDA)*

Description

Gelic soil temperature regime (USDA)

Usage

str_gelic_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

subgrupo_planossolo_espessos
Subgrupo "espessos" de Planossolos (B planico profundo, > 100 cm)

Description

Discrimina os Subgrupos espessos de Planossolos (Cap 15: SNs Espessos, SNo Espessos, SXs Espessos, SXal Espessos, SXd Espessos, SXe Espessos): B planico cujo topo ocorre entre min_top_cm (exclusivo) e max_top_cm (inclusivo).

Usage

subgrupo_planossolo_espessos(pedon, min_top_cm = 100, max_top_cm = 200)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
min_top_cm Profundidade minima exclusiva do topo do B planico (default 100; passa se top > 100).
max_top_cm Profundidade maxima inclusiva (default 200).

Details

Implementacao: identifica B planico via [B_planico](#), captura o topo (mais raso) das camadas que passam, e testa se cai em (min_top_cm, max_top_cm].

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 15 (Planossolos), pp 251-260.

subgrupo_planossolo_mesicos

Subgrupo "mesicos" de Planossolos (B planico topo em [50, 100] cm)

Description

Discrimina os Subgrupos mesicos de Planossolos (Cap 15: SNs Mesicos, SNo Mesicos, SXs Mesicos, SXal Mesicos, SXd Mesicos, SXe Mesicos): B planico cujo topo ocorre entre min_top_cm (inclusivo) e max_top_cm (inclusivo).

Usage

```
subgrupo_planossolo_mesicos(pedon, min_top_cm = 50, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_top_cm	Profundidade minima inclusiva (default 50).
max_top_cm	Profundidade maxima inclusiva (default 100).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 15 (Planossolos).

subgrupo_plintossolo_endico_concrecionario

Subgrupo "endico" de Plintossolos Concrecionarios (topo de horizonte concrecionario \geq 40 cm)

Description

Discrimina o Subgrupo FFcoEn (Plintossolos Petricos Concrecionarios endicos): horizonte concrecionario cujo topo ocorre a \geq min_top_cm cm.

Usage

```
subgrupo_plintossolo_endico_concrecionario(pedon, min_top_cm = 40)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_top_cm	Profundidade minima inclusiva (default 40).

Value

[DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 16, p 264.

subgrupo_plintossolo_endico_litoplintico

Subgrupo "endico" de Plintossolos Litoplinticos (topo de horizonte litoplintico \geq 40 cm)

Description

Discrimina o Subgrupo FFfpEn (Plintossolos Petricos Litoplinticos endicos): horizonte litoplintico cujo topo ocorre a \geq min_top_cm cm.

Usage

```
subgrupo_plintossolo_endico_litoplintico(pedon, min_top_cm = 40)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_top_cm	Profundidade minima inclusiva (default 40).

Value

[DiagnosticResult.](#)

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 16, p 264.

subgrupo_plintossolo_espessos

Subgrupo "espessos" de Plintossolos (horizonte plintico topo > 100 cm)

Description

Discrimina os Subgrupos espessos de Plintossolos Argiluvicos (FT*Es) e Haplicos (FXacEs, FXdEs, FXeEs): horizonte plintico cujo topo ocorre entre min_top_cm (exclusivo) e max_top_cm (inclusivo).

Usage

```
subgrupo_plintossolo_espessos(pedon, min_top_cm = 100, max_top_cm = 200)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_top_cm	Profundidade minima exclusiva (default 100).
max_top_cm	Profundidade maxima inclusiva (default 200).

Value

[DiagnosticResult.](#)

References

Embrapa (2018), SiBCS 5a ed., Cap 16 (Plintossolos), pp 261-272.

sulfic_subgroup_usda *Sulfic Subgroup helper (Haplowassists) Pass when sulfidic materials within 100 cm.*

Description

Sulfic Subgroup helper (Haplowassists) Pass when sulfidic materials within 100 cm.

Usage

sulfic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

sulfidic_materials_usda

Sulfidic materials helper (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3, p 49)

Description

Pass when sulfidic materials (soft, dark, sulfide-rich) are present within max_top_cm. Proxy: sulfidic_s_pct >= 0.75 AND in a layer >= 15 cm thick.

Usage

sulfidic_materials_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100, min_thickness_cm = 15)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_top_cm Default 100.

min_thickness_cm
 Default 15.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

sulfuric_horizon_usda *Sulfuric horizon helper (USDA, KST 13ed Ch 3)*

Description

Pass when sulfidic_s_pct present in any horizon within max_top_cm (proxy: KST sulfuric horizon requires pH < 4.0 OR sulfidic materials AND certain mottle colors; this v0.8 uses sulfidic_s_pct >= 0.75 as proxy).

Usage

```
sulfuric_horizon_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 100, min_s_pct = 0.75)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
max_top_cm	Default 100.
min_s_pct	Default 0.75.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

takyric_properties *Takyric properties (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.15) – per-pedon test wrapping [test_takyric_surface](#).*

Description

Takyric properties (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.15) – per-pedon test wrapping [test_takyric_surface](#).

Usage

```
takyric_properties(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

technic_features	<i>Technic features (WRB 2022)</i>
------------------	------------------------------------

Description

Tests for any of three WRB 2022 alternative qualifying conditions for Technosols:

1. Artefacts \geq artefacts_min_pct (default 20%) by volume within the upper max_top_cm (default 100 cm).
2. A continuous geomembrane (geomembrane_present == TRUE) within the upper 100 cm.
3. Technic hard material (concrete, asphalt, mine spoil) with technic_hardmaterial_pct \geq hardmaterial_min_pct (default 95%) at the surface (top_cm \leq hardmaterial_max_top_cm, default 5).

Either path qualifies.

Usage

```
technic_features(  
  pedon,  
  artefacts_min_pct = 20,  
  max_top_cm = 100,  
  hardmaterial_min_pct = 95,  
  hardmaterial_max_top_cm = 5  
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
artefacts_min_pct	Minimum artefact percent (default 20).
max_top_cm	Maximum top depth (cm) for the artefact and geomembrane paths (default 100).
hardmaterial_min_pct	Minimum hard-material coverage (%) for the technic-hard-material path (default 95).
hardmaterial_max_top_cm	Surface depth window (cm) for the technic-hard-material path (default 5).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 5, Technosols.

technic_hard_material *Technic hard material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.18): consolidated human-made material (asphalt, concrete, worked stones).*

Description

Technic hard material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.18): consolidated human-made material (asphalt, concrete, worked stones).

Usage

technic_hard_material(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

tephric_material *Tephric material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.19): \geq 30% volcanic glass in 0.02-2 mm fraction AND no andic / vitric properties.*

Description

Tephric material (WRB 2022 Ch 3.3.19): \geq 30% volcanic glass in 0.02-2 mm fraction AND no andic / vitric properties.

Usage

tephric_material(pedon, min_glass = 30)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

min_glass Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

terrific	<i>Terrific horizon (WRB 2022): topsoil thickened by long-term application of mineral material (sediment / sand additions). v0.3.3: thickness >= 20 cm + designation Au / Apc.</i>
----------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Terrific horizon (WRB 2022): topsoil thickened by long-term application of mineral material (sediment / sand additions). v0.3.3: thickness >= 20 cm + designation Au / Apc.

Usage

```
terrific(pedon, min_thickness = 20)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

terrific_usda	<i>Terrific Subgroup helper (Histels)</i>
---------------	-------------------------------------------

Description

Pass when a layer of mineral soil material 30 cm or more thick occurs within 100 cm of the soil surface (KST 13ed, p 190).

Usage

```
terrific_usda(pedon, min_thickness_cm = 30, max_top_cm = 100)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness_cm	Default 30.
max_top_cm	Default 100.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 9.

 test_abrupt_textural_change

Test for an abrupt textural change between adjacent horizons

Description

WRB 2022 planic criterion: clay content of the underlying horizon is at least double that of the overlying horizon, with the transition occurring within 7.5 cm vertical distance. v0.3 implements the clay-doubling test plus an optional boundary_distinctness check (must be "abrupt" or "very abrupt" on the upper horizon).

Usage

```
test_abrupt_textural_change(h, min_ratio = 2, require_abrupt_boundary = TRUE)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 min_ratio Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 require_abrupt_boundary
 Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

 test_al_saturation_above

Test that aluminium saturation is at or above a threshold

Description

Default 50% (Alisol RSG criterion). Uses al_sat_pct when reported; otherwise falls back to $al_cmol / (ca+mg+k+na+al)_cmol * 100$.

Usage

```
test_al_saturation_above(h, min_pct = 50, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 min_pct Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 candidate_layers
 Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`test_al_saturation_below`*Test that aluminium saturation is below a threshold*

Description

Default 50% (Luvisol RSG criterion). Uses `al_sat_pct` when reported; otherwise falls back to computation from exchangeable bases and Al.

Usage

```
test_al_saturation_below(h, max_pct = 50, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

`h` Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`max_pct` Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`candidate_layers`
Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`test_andic_alfe`*Test the andic Al/Fe oxalate criterion: $(al_ox + 0.5*fe_ox) \geq 2.0\%$*

Description

Distinct from spodic (which uses 0.5%); the andic threshold is four times higher per WRB 2022 Chapter 3.

Usage

```
test_andic_alfe(h, min_pct = 2, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

`h` Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`min_pct` Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`candidate_layers`
Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_artefacts_concentration

Test that artefacts_pct >= threshold within the upper max_top_cm

Description

Default 20% by volume (Technosols criterion, WRB 2022).

Usage

```
test_artefacts_concentration(
  h,
  min_pct = 20,
  max_top_cm = 100,
  candidate_layers = NULL
)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_bs_above

Test that base saturation is at or above a threshold

Description

Default 50% (Lixisol / Luvisol RSG criterion). Reads bs_pct directly.

Usage

```
test_bs_above(h, min_pct = 50, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_bs_below	<i>Test that base saturation is below a threshold</i>
---------------	-------------------------------------------------------

Description

Default 50% (Acrisol RSG criterion). Reads bs_pct.

Usage

```
test_bs_below(h, max_pct = 50, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_bulk_density_below	<i>Test that bulk density is at or below a threshold</i>
-------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Default 0.9 g/cm³ (andic property, WRB 2022).

Usage

```
test_bulk_density_below(h, max_g_cm3 = 0.9, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_g_cm3	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_caco3_concentration

Test for CaCO₃ concentration above threshold (per layer)

Description

Default 15% (calci horizon, WRB 2022 Chapter 3). Used by [calcic](#).

Usage

```
test_caco3_concentration(h, min_pct = 15, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_carbonates_present

Test for any layer with caco3_pct above a (low) threshold

Description

Default threshold is 0.01% – effectively "any measurable secondary carbonate". Used to distinguish Phaeozems (no carbonates within 100 cm) from Chernozems and Kastanozems.

Usage

```
test_carbonates_present(h, min_pct = 0.01, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`test_caso4_concentration`*Test for CaSO₄ (gypsum) concentration above threshold (per layer)*

Description

Default 5% (gypsic horizon, WRB 2022 Chapter 3). Used by [gypsic](#).

Usage

```
test_caso4_concentration(h, min_pct = 5, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

`h` Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`min_pct` Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`candidate_layers`

Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`test_cec_per_clay`*Test CEC (1M NH₄OAc, pH 7) per kg clay <= threshold*

Description

Default threshold is 16 cmol_c/kg clay (WRB 2022 ferralic horizon).

Usage

```
test_cec_per_clay(h, max_cmol_per_kg_clay = 16, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

`h` Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`max_cmol_per_kg_clay`

Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

`candidate_layers`

Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

v0.9.69 ECEC fallback (opt-in)

Brazilian / SOTERLAC / Bdsolos profiles often record the exchange complex as separate Ca, Mg, K, Na, Al cmol values without an explicit "Valor T" CEC column, so cec_cmol is NA for the entire profile. With options(soilKey.ferralic_ecec_fallback = TRUE) the test falls back to the ECEC sum (ca_cmol + mg_cmol + k_cmol + na_cmol + al_cmol) on layers where cec_cmol is missing but the components are present. Default is FALSE (canonical WRB behaviour preserved).

Note: ECEC is typically smaller than CEC at acidic pH because it omits H+; using ECEC against the same threshold is therefore conservative (MORE permissive) – it should not produce false positives, only recover Latossolos that lacked Valor T.

v0.9.86 engine="aqp" auto-enables the ECEC fallback

soilKey.diagnostic_engine = "aqp" now auto-enables the v0.9.69 ECEC fallback (the user can still suppress it explicitly by setting soilKey.ferralic_ecec_fallback = FALSE). The rationale: the aqp engine is the "data-quality-aware" mode, designed for field-described datasets like Bdsolos / Redape where Valor T is rarely recorded. Bundling these two opt-ins lifts Bdsolos RJ Latossolo recall from 14.9\ 28.1\

test_cec_per_clay_above

Test that CEC per kg clay is at or above a threshold

Description

Default 24 cmol_c/kg clay – WRB 2022 boundary that distinguishes "low-activity-clay" RSGs (Acrisols, Lixisols) from "high-activity- clay" RSGs (Alisols, Luvisols).

Usage

```
test_cec_per_clay_above(h, min_cmol_per_kg_clay = 24, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

min_cmol_per_kg_clay
 Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

candidate_layers
 Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_chernic_color	<i>Test for chroma ≤ 2 (moist) within the upper part of the profile</i>
--------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Default upper boundary is 20 cm (Chernozem criterion: dark colour in the upper 20 cm of the mollic horizon).

Usage

```
test_chernic_color(h, max_top_cm = 20, max_chroma = 2, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_chroma	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_clay_above	<i>Test that clay_pct is at or above a threshold</i>
-----------------	------------------------------------------------------

Description

Default 30% (vertic features minimum, WRB 2022 Chapter 3).

Usage

```
test_clay_above(h, min_pct = 30, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

 test_clay_increase_argic

Test the argic / argillic clay-increase criterion

Description

Tests every horizon in the profile against the clay-increase rules of either WRB 2022 (default, system = "wrb2022") or USDA Soil Taxonomy 13th edition (system = "usda"). The two systems use the SAME structural rule (three brackets keyed on overlying eluvial clay percent) but DIFFERENT thresholds:

Usage

```
test_clay_increase_argic(h, system = c("wrb2022", "usda"))
```

Arguments

h Horizons data.table (canonical schema).
 system One of "wrb2022" (default) or "usda". Selects the threshold set.

Details

Eluvial clay	WRB 2022 argic	KST 13ed argillic
< 15%	>= +6 pp absolute	>= +3 pp absolute
15-X%	>= 1.4x ratio (X=50)	>= 1.2x ratio (X=40)
>= X%	>= +20 pp absolute	>= +8 pp absolute

KST 13ed thresholds are taken from Chapter 3, "Argillic horizon" (p. 4); WRB 2022 thresholds from Chapter 3.1.3, "Argic horizon" (p. 36). v0.9.26 introduces the per-system switch – earlier versions used WRB thresholds for both systems, which under-detected the argillic horizon in KSSL profiles where clay increase is in the 1.2-1.4 ratio band or +3 to +6 pp absolute band.

Returns the indices of horizons that satisfy as argic candidates.

Value

Sub-test result list.

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3.1.3, Argic horizon, criteria 2.a.iv-vi (p. 36); Soil Survey Staff (2022), Keys to Soil Taxonomy 13th ed., Chapter 3, Argillic horizon (p. 4).

 test_coarse_texture_throughout

Test for coarse texture throughout the upper part of the profile

Description

Default predicate: $\text{silt} + 2 * \text{clay} < 15$ (loamy sand or coarser) in EVERY layer that intersects the upper max_top_cm (default 100). Diagnostic for Arenosols.

Usage

```
test_coarse_texture_throughout(h, max_top_cm = 100, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 candidate_layers Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

 test_designation_pattern

Test that a horizon designation matches a regex pattern

Description

Useful for diagnostics that key on field-described features (e.g., glossic tongues for retic, R / Cr for leptic, "f" suffix for cryic / frozen, hortc / irrigic / plaggic / pretic / terric for anthric).

Usage

```
test_designation_pattern(h, pattern, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 pattern A regex (case-insensitive).
 candidate_layers Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_duripan_concentration

Test that duripan_pct >= threshold (Si-cemented nodules)

Description

Default 10% per WRB 2022 Ch 3.1.7 (Duric horizon, p. 41). v0.3.1 reduced default from 15% to 10% to match the canonical text.

Usage

```
test_duripan_concentration(h, min_pct = 10, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

min_pct Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

candidate_layers Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_ec_concentration *Test for electrical conductivity above threshold (per layer)*

Description

Default 15 dS/m (salic horizon, WRB 2022 Ch 3.1.20). The WRB salic horizon also accepts an alkaline alternate: EC \geq 8 dS/m if pH(H₂O) \geq 8.5. Pass alkaline_min_dS_m = 8 and alkaline_min_pH = 8.5 to enable that path – a layer is then "qualifying" if it satisfies the primary OR the alkaline gate. The path field in each details entry records which gate carried the layer.

Usage

```
test_ec_concentration(
  h,
  min_dS_m = 15,
  alkaline_min_dS_m = NA_real_,
  alkaline_min_pH = 8.5,
  candidate_layers = NULL
)
```

Arguments

h	Horizons table.
min_dS_m	Primary EC threshold (default 15).
alkaline_min_dS_m	Optional alkaline-path EC threshold (default NA: alkaline path disabled).
alkaline_min_pH	Required pH(H ₂ O) for the alkaline path (default 8.5; only used when alkaline_min_dS_m is set).
candidate_layers	Optional layer index restriction.

test_ecec_per_clay	<i>Test effective CEC (sum of bases + Al) per kg clay <= threshold</i>
--------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Default threshold is 12 cmol_c/kg clay (WRB 2022 ferralic horizon). If ecec_cmol is missing, computes ECEC from ca_cmol + mg_cmol + k_cmol + na_cmol + al_cmol when those are available.

Usage

```
test_ecec_per_clay(h, max_cmol_per_kg_clay = 12, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_cmol_per_kg_clay	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_esp_above	<i>Test exchangeable sodium percentage above threshold</i>
----------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Default 15% (natric horizon, WRB 2022 Chapter 3).

Usage

```
test_esp_above(h, min_pct = 15, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 min_pct Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 candidate_layers Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_fe_dcb_above *Test for high free-iron content (fe_dcb_pct >= threshold)*

Description

Default 4% (an indicator of strong red colour and Fe-richness; used as a v0.3 simplified marker for nitic horizon's typical Fe content).

Usage

test_fe_dcb_above(h, min_pct = 4, candidate_layers = NULL)

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 min_pct Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 candidate_layers Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_ferralic_texture *Ferralic texture: sandy loam or finer (same predicate as argic)*

Description

Ferralic texture: sandy loam or finer (same predicate as argic)

Usage

test_ferralic_texture(h, candidate_layers = NULL)

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
 candidate_layers Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

v0.9.70 morphological fallback (opt-in)

Many BDsolos / SOTERLAC profiles do not record clay_pct, silt_pct, sand_pct on the deep B horizon – only on the topsoil. The strict texture test then returns NA, and ferralic() cascades to NA, blocking Latossolos detection.

With options(soilKey.ferralic_texture_morphological_fallback = TRUE) test_ferralic_texture() accepts a layer as ferralic-textured when the canonical numeric test is NA *and* the layer satisfies *both*:

1. designation matches Bw|Bo|Boi (deeply weathered B-horizon morphology), and
2. top_cm > 20 (subsoil, not topsoil).

This is a conservative morphological inference: a Bw / Bo designation in a subsoil context strongly implies tropical deep-weathering, which in turn implies sandy-loam-or-finer texture in 95\ FALSE (canonical WRB behaviour preserved).

test_ferralic_thickness

Ferralic minimum thickness >= 30 cm (WRB 2022)

Description

Wraps [test_minimum_thickness](#).

Usage

```
test_ferralic_thickness(h, min_cm = 30, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_fluvic_stratification

Test for fluvic stratification: irregular OC pattern + texture variability across consecutive horizons

Description

v0.3 simplified: returns TRUE when (a) at least 3 layers within the upper 100 cm exist, AND (b) clay_pct varies by >= 8 percentage points across consecutive layers (indicating depositional alternation), AND (c) OC does not decrease monotonically with depth.

Usage

```
test_fluvic_stratification(h, max_top_cm = 100, min_clay_swing = 8)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_clay_swing Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_gleyic_features *Test for gleyic redoximorphic features within top 50 cm*

Description

Two evidence paths (any qualifies):

1. **Mottle percent** (primary): explicit redoximorphic_features_pct \geq min_redox_pct (default 5) is the v0.2 path.
2. **Gleyic Munsell hue** (v0.9.61, secondary): the horizon Munsell hue matches gleyic patterns (N / 5GY / 10G / 5BG / 10B etc.) AND chroma \leq 2. Used when mottle percent is not reported. Common in BDsolos exports where surveyors fill matiz/valor/croma but leave mottle quantity empty.

Either path qualifies. If neither is determinable for any candidate layer (mottle pct AND hue both NA), returns NA. If both are determinable but neither passes, returns FALSE.

Usage

```
test_gleyic_features(  
  h,  
  max_top_cm = 50,  
  min_redox_pct = 5,  
  candidate_layers = NULL,  
  max_chroma = 2  
)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_redox_pct Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_chroma Numeric threshold; gleyic-hue path requires munsell_chroma_moist \leq max_chroma (default 2).

```
test_minimum_thickness
      Test minimum horizon thickness
```

Description

For each candidate layer, checks $\text{bottom_cm} - \text{top_cm} \geq \text{min_cm}$. Used by argic (default 7.5), ferralic (30), mollic (20), and others.

Usage

```
test_minimum_thickness(h, min_cm = 7.5, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Horizons data.table.
min_cm	Minimum thickness in cm.
candidate_layers	Integer vector of horizon indices to test. If NULL, all layers are tested.

```
test_mollic_base_saturation
      Mollic base-saturation test (NH4OAc, pH 7, default >= 50%)
```

Description

Mollic base-saturation test (NH₄OAc, pH 7, default $\geq 50\%$)

Usage

```
test_mollic_base_saturation(
  h,
  min_pct = 50,
  candidate_layers = NULL,
  allow_inference = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
allow_inference	If TRUE (default), fall back to sum-of-cations / CEC arithmetic OR $\text{al_sat_pct} < 20$ OR $\text{ph_h2o} \geq 5.8$ when bs_pct is missing.

test_mollic_color *Mollic Munsell color test (WRB 2022)*

Description

Moist value ≤ 3 AND moist chroma ≤ 3 AND dry value ≤ 5 . If munsell_value_dry is missing, uses the conservative substitute munsell_value_moist + 1.

Usage

```
test_mollic_color(
  h,
  max_value_moist = 3,
  max_chroma_moist = 3,
  max_value_dry = 5,
  candidate_layers = NULL,
  allow_oc_inference = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_value_moist Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_chroma_moist Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_value_dry Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers Optional restriction.
allow_oc_inference If TRUE (default), accept OC ≥ 1.5 % in a surface A horizon as evidence of dark colour when both moist and dry Munsell are missing.

test_mollic_organic_carbon
Mollic organic-carbon test (WRB 2022, default $\geq 0.6\%$)

Description

Mollic organic-carbon test (WRB 2022, default $\geq 0.6\%$)

Usage

```
test_mollic_organic_carbon(h, min_pct = 0.6, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_mollic_structure *Mollic structure test (WRB 2022)*

Description

Excludes horizons that are simultaneously massive AND very hard when dry. v0.1 implementation reads structure_grade and consistence_moist as text and looks for the keyword pair.

Usage

```
test_mollic_structure(h, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_mollic_thickness *Mollic thickness test (default >= 20 cm in v0.1)*

Description

WRB 2022 has more nuanced thickness criteria depending on whether the soil overlies continuous rock at <75 cm, but the simple absolute threshold is the predominant case for non-shallow soils. Cumulative thickness across multiple contiguous mollic-qualifying horizons is a v0.2 refinement.

Usage

```
test_mollic_thickness(h, min_cm = 20, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_oc_above	<i>Test that organic carbon is at or above a threshold</i>
---------------	------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Default 12% (histic horizon, WRB 2022 Chapter 3).

Usage

```
test_oc_above(h, min_pct = 12, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_ph_below	<i>Test that ph_h2o is at or below a threshold</i>
---------------	----------------------------------------------------

Description

Default 5.9 (Spodic horizon supplementary criterion, WRB 2022).

Usage

```
test_ph_below(h, max_ph = 5.9, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_ph	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

```
test_plinthite_concentration
    Test for plinthite concentration above threshold (per layer)
```

Description

Default 15% by volume (plinthic horizon, WRB 2022 Chapter 3). Used by [plinthic](#).

Usage

```
test_plinthite_concentration(h, min_pct = 15, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

```
test_salic_product    Test the salic horizon EC * thickness product (WRB 2022)
```

Description

Tests whether each candidate layer's product $ec_dS_m * (bottom_cm - top_cm)$ reaches the canonical WRB 2022 threshold (Ch 3.1.20, p. 49):

- ≥ 450 dS/m * cm for the primary path (EC ≥ 15);
- ≥ 240 dS/m * cm for the alkaline path (EC ≥ 8 with pH(H₂O) ≥ 8.5).

The path used per layer is taken from a prior [test_ec_concentration](#) result (its details[[i]]\\$path field). When no prior is supplied, every candidate is treated as "primary" and the 450 threshold is applied uniformly.

Usage

```
test_salic_product(
  h,
  min_product = 450,
  alkaline_min_product = 240,
  ec_path_lookup = NULL,
  candidate_layers = NULL
)
```

Arguments

h	Horizons table.
min_product	Primary product threshold (default 450).
alkaline_min_product	Alkaline-path product threshold (default 240).
ec_path_lookup	Optional named list (keys = layer index as character) returning either "primary" or "alkaline" per layer – typically built by passing test_ec_concentration(...)\\$details.
candidate_layers	Layer index restriction (typically the layers that already passed the primary EC gate).

test_slickensides_present

Test for slickensides at or above a presence level

Description

Default accepted levels are c("common", "many", "continuous") (vertic features, WRB 2022). The slickensides column accepts c("absent", "few", "common", "many", "continuous").

Usage

```
test_slickensides_present(
  h,
  levels = c("common", "many", "continuous"),
  candidate_layers = NULL
)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
levels	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

```
test_spodic_aluminum_iron
    Test the spodic Al/Fe oxalate criterion: (al_ox + 0.5*fe_ox) >=
    threshold
```

Description

Default 0.5% (WRB 2022 Chapter 3, Spodic horizon). Used by [spodic](#).

Usage

```
test_spodic_aluminum_iron(h, min_pct = 0.5, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

```
test_stagnic_pattern    Test for stagnic redox features (perched water signature)
```

Description

Distinct from gleyic (groundwater): stagnic = redoximorphic features in some layer within the upper max_top_cm (default 100) AND redox in deeper layers DROPS substantially (decay to < third of the shallow value). The decay condition is what separates perched water (sits above an impermeable layer; deeper soil is not saturated) from groundwater-driven gleying (saturation continues with depth).

Usage

```
test_stagnic_pattern(h, max_top_cm = 100, min_redox_pct = 5, decay_factor = 3)
```

Arguments

h	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_top_cm	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_redox_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
decay_factor	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_texture_argic *Test sandy-loam-or-finer texture (used by argic, ferralic)*

Description

Test sandy-loam-or-finer texture (used by argic, ferralic)

Usage

```
test_texture_argic(h, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

test_top_at_or_above *Test that a candidate layer starts at or above a top_cm threshold*

Description

Used to require surface contact (default top_cm <= 0, i.e., layer must reach the surface) or near-surface presence.

Usage

```
test_top_at_or_above(h, max_top_cm = 0, candidate_layers = NULL)
```

Arguments

h Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
candidate_layers Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

 texture_class_from_pct

NRCS texture-class shorthand from clay / silt / sand percent

Description

aqp's getArgillicBounds() requires an NRCS texture class column (e.g. "SCL", "C", "CL", "FS"). soilKey horizons only carry the percent fractions; this helper derives the class from the standard USDA texture triangle.

Usage

```
texture_class_from_pct(clay, silt, sand)
```

Arguments

clay	Numeric vector of clay percent (0-100).
silt	Numeric vector of silt percent.
sand	Numeric vector of sand percent. (clay + silt + sand should sum to ~100; mild deviations are tolerated.)

Details

Returns the standard NRCS abbreviation:

COS	Coarse sand
S	Sand
FS	Fine sand
VFS	Very fine sand
LS	Loamy sand
LFS	Loamy fine sand
SL	Sandy loam
FSL	Fine sandy loam
L	Loam
SIL	Silt loam
SI	Silt
SCL	Sandy clay loam
CL	Clay loam
SICL	Silty clay loam
SC	Sandy clay
SIC	Silty clay
C	Clay

Implementation follows the canonical USDA texture triangle; vector-ised over the input. NA in / NA out.

Value

Character vector of NRCS texture class abbreviations.

thaptic_subgroup_usda *Thaptic Subgroup helper (Andisols) Pass when, between 25 and 100 cm, a 10+ cm layer with OC > 3.0% and mollic colors exists, underlying lighter horizons.*

Description

Thaptic Subgroup helper (Andisols) Pass when, between 25 and 100 cm, a 10+ cm layer with OC > 3.0% and mollic colors exists, underlying lighter horizons.

Usage

```
thaptic_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

thapto_humic_usda *Thapto-Humic Subgroup helper*

Description

Pass when a buried layer meets criteria for histic, mollic, umbric, or melanic epipedon within 200 cm of the soil surface, OR buried O and dark-colored A horizons (V ≤ 3 moist, combined thickness ≥ 20 cm, OC ≥ 1 percent Holocene-age) within 200 cm (KST 13ed, p 189-191).

Usage

```
thapto_humic_usda(
  pedon,
  max_top_cm = 200,
  min_thickness_cm = 20,
  min_oc_pct = 1
)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
max_top_cm Default 200.
min_thickness_cm Default 20.
min_oc_pct Default 1.0.

Details

Implementation detects buried horizons via designation containing 'b' (KST notation for buried) AND dark color ($V \leq 3$) within 200 cm.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 9 various.

thionic	<i>Thionic horizon (WRB 2022): post-oxidation acid sulfate horizon. Requires sulfidic_s_pct ≥ 0.01 AND pH(H₂O) ≤ 4.</i>
---------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Thionic horizon (WRB 2022): post-oxidation acid sulfate horizon. Requires sulfidic_s_pct ≥ 0.01 AND pH(H₂O) ≤ 4 .

Usage

```
thionic(pedon, min_thickness = 15, max_ph = 4, min_sulfidic_s = 0.01)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
max_ph	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_sulfidic_s	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

train_pls_from_oss1	<i>Train pre-trained PLSR models from an OSS1 library</i>
---------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------

Description

Iterates over properties and fits one PLSR model per target against the OSS1 spectra in `oss1_library$Xr`, with internal cross-validation to pick the optimal number of components per property. The returned list is a drop-in replacement for the `oss1_models` argument of [predict_oss1_pretrained](#) and [fill_from_spectra](#).

Usage

```
train_pls_from_oss1(
  oss1_library,
  properties = c("clay_pct", "sand_pct", "silt_pct", "cec_cmol", "ph_h2o", "oc_pct"),
  ncomp_max = 20L,
  validation = c("CV", "LOO", "none"),
  segments = 10L,
  preprocess = "snv+sg1",
  min_n = 50L,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

oss1_library	A list with two named elements: Xr (numeric matrix of training spectra) and Yr (data.frame keyed by property name, one row per training spectrum). See oss1_library_template .
properties	Character vector of column names in oss1_library\$Yr to train models for. Defaults to the six core soil properties exposed by OSS1.
ncomp_max	Integer. Upper bound on the number of PLS components to consider during cross-validation. Defaults to 20.
validation	One of "CV" (default, k-fold), "LOO" (leave-one-out, slow), "none" (uses ncomp_max components without selection).
segments	Number of CV segments when validation = "CV". Default 10.
preprocess	Pre-processing label passed to preprocess_spectra . Stored on the trained models so predict_from_spectra can reapply it.
min_n	Minimum number of valid training samples (after dropping rows with non-finite y or X). Properties below this threshold are skipped with a warning. Default 50.
verbose	If TRUE (default), prints a per-property summary on completion.

Details

Spectra are pre-processed inside the function (default "snv+sg1"); the same preprocessing is used downstream by [predict_from_spectra](#) so the user does not have to remember which transform was applied at training time.

Value

A named list of soilKey_pls_model objects, one per successfully trained property. Carries trained_at, soilKey_version and preprocess attributes for provenance.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("pls", quietly = TRUE)) {
  # Toy training run on the bundled synthetic library:
  data(oss1_demo_sa)
  models <- try(train_pls_from_oss1(oss1_demo_sa,
```

```

        properties = c("clay_pct", "ph_h2o"),
        min_n = 10L,
        validation = "none"),
    silent = TRUE)
}

```

tsitelic

*Tsitelic horizon (WRB 2022 Ch 3.1)***Description**

From Georgian *tsiteli* = red. A red colour-defined horizon formed on weathered basalt or similar Fe-rich parent material in Caucasian / Mediterranean settings. Used by the Cambisols key (Ch 4 p 123, criterion 4) and by the Tsitelic qualifier.

Usage

```
tsitelic(pedon, min_thickness = 10)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 min_thickness Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

Details

Diagnostic criteria (v0.3.5 simplification):

- Munsell hue $\leq 2.5\text{YR}$ (i.e. 2.5YR, 10R, 7.5R, 5R, 2.5R) AND value ≤ 4 (moist) AND chroma ≥ 4 (moist);
- evidence of soil formation (cambic-style criterion 3) proxied by clay $\geq 8\%$ AND structure_grade not "single grain" / "massive";
- thickness ≥ 10 cm.

turbic_subgroup_usda *Turbic Subgroup helper (Gelods) Pass when gelic materials are present within 200 cm. Implementation: cryoturbation + permafrost within 200 cm.*

Description

Turbic Subgroup helper (Gelods) Pass when gelic materials are present within 200 cm. Implementation: cryoturbation + permafrost within 200 cm.

Usage

turbic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

ultic_subgroup_usda *Ultic Subgroup helper: argillic or kandic (any BS).*

Description

Ultic Subgroup helper: argillic or kandic (any BS).

Usage

ultic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

ultisol_qualifying_usda

Ultisol Order qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed, Ch 2) Pass when argillic OR kandic horizon present + BS < 35% in some part of the upper 200 cm.

Description

Ultisol Order qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed, Ch 2) Pass when argillic OR kandic horizon present + BS < 35% in some part of the upper 200 cm.

Usage

ultisol_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

ultisol_usda	<i>Ultisols (USDA Cap 15): argillic/kandic horizon + base saturation < 35%.</i>
--------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

v0.9.17 graceful BS handling: when bs_pct is missing in the argillic layers, the diagnostic falls back to two equivalent indirect criteria before failing:

- al_sat_pct >= 50 (high Al saturation mathematically forces BS < 50, and BS < 35 in essentially all tropical soils with this profile);
- ph_h2o < 5.0 (the empirical threshold below which BS exceeds 35 in fewer than 5

The fallback only fires when the direct measurement is missing, so lab-grade profiles always use the canonical KST 13ed gate.

Usage

```
ultisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

umbric_epipedon_usda	<i>Umbric epipedon (USDA Soil Taxonomy, 13th edition)</i>
----------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------

Description

A thick, dark-colored, base-poor (BS < 50 percent) mineral surface horizon. Differs from mollic in low base saturation; qualifies the Humults / Humic / Umbric subgroups in many orders.

Usage

```
umbric_epipedon_usda(pedon, max_bs = 50, min_oc_pct = 0.6)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

max_bs Maximum BS (default 50 – "less than 50 percent").

min_oc_pct Minimum OC (default 0.6).

Details

KST 13ed required characteristics (Ch. 3, pp 18-20):

- Color: same as mollic ($V \leq 3$ moist, $V \leq 5$ dry, $\text{chroma} \leq 3$);
- Base saturation (NH₄OAc) < 50 percent in some part;
- Organic carbon ≥ 0.6 percent (or 0.6 absolute > C);
- Thickness: same rules as mollic (18 / 25 / 10 cm);
- Structure: peds ≤ 30 cm OR rupture-resistance \leq moderately hard.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

Soil Survey Staff (2022), KST 13ed, Ch. 3, pp 18-20.

umbric_horizon	<i>Umbric horizon (WRB 2022)</i>
----------------	----------------------------------

Description

Tests for the umbric horizon – a thick, dark, organic-rich surface horizon like mollic, but with low base saturation (< 50%). Diagnostic of Umbrisols.

Usage

```
umbric_horizon(
  pedon,
  min_thickness = 20,
  min_oc = 0.6,
  max_bs = 50,
  surface_top_cm = 5
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_thickness	Minimum thickness (cm; default 20).
min_oc	Minimum SOC % (default 0.6).
max_bs	Maximum base saturation % (default 50; profile must be BELOW this).
surface_top_cm	Maximum top_cm for surface-related layers (default 5).

Details

Implementation reuses every mollic sub-test except the BS test, which is inverted via [test_bs_below](#).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3, Umbric horizon.

umbric_subgroup_usda *Umbric Subgroup helper (in Spodosols) Pass when umbric_epipedon_usda passes.*

Description

Umbric Subgroup helper (in Spodosols) Pass when umbric_epipedon_usda passes.

Usage

```
umbric_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

usda_to_wrb_rsg *USDA Soil Taxonomy <-> WRB Reference Soil Group correlation table*

Description

Returns the single most-common WRB RSG for a given USDA Order + optional Suborder. Based on IUSS WRB (2022) Annex 6.

Usage

```
usda_to_wrb_rsg(usda_order, usda_suborder = NULL)
```

Arguments

usda_order Character vector of USDA Order names. Case-insensitive; trailing 's' stripped (e.g. both "Mollisols" and "Mollisol" accepted).

usda_suborder Optional character vector of USDA Suborder names (case-insensitive) used to refine the mapping. Same length as usda_order or recycled.

Value

Character vector of WRB Reference Soil Group names (singular, no plural 's'). NA for unrecognised inputs.

Caveat

This is a "best-guess" cross-walk for benchmark validation only. Real-world correlation requires per-pedon evaluation of WRB diagnostic horizons. Use this function to derive a reasonable *expected* WRB classification from a USDA-classified pedon (e.g. from KSSL/NASIS) so that `classify_wrb2022()` can be validated against an external taxonomy on the same profiles.

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022). *World Reference Base for Soil Resources*, 4th edition, Annex 6. International Union of Soil Sciences, Vienna.

Examples

```
usda_to_wrb_rsg("Mollisols")
#> "Phaeozem"
usda_to_wrb_rsg("Aridisols", "Salids")
#> "Solonchak"
usda_to_wrb_rsg(c("Spodosols", "Oxisols", "Vertisols"))
#> c("Podzol", "Ferralsol", "Vertisol")
```

validate_pedon_json *Validate a PedonRecord against the JSON schema*

Description

Convenience wrapper that converts a [PedonRecord](#) (or a compatible list) to JSON and validates it via `jsonvalidate::json_validate` against the canonical schema returned by [pedon_json_schema](#).

Usage

```
validate_pedon_json(x)
```

Arguments

x A [PedonRecord](#) or a list with the same shape.

Details

Use this BEFORE calling `classify_*` when ingesting data from external systems (web APIs, ETL pipelines, multimodal extraction) to catch schema violations early.

Value

A logical scalar (TRUE when valid). Validation errors appear as the errors attribute when FALSE.

Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("jsonlite", quietly = TRUE) &&
    requireNamespace("jsonvalidate", quietly = TRUE)) {
  p <- make_ferralsol_canonical()
  validate_pedon_json(p)
}
```

vermic_subgroup_usda *Vermic Subgroup helper (Vermudolls / Vermustolls) Pass when worm_holes_pct >= 50% in some horizon (KST 13ed worm burrow criterion).*

Description

Vermic Subgroup helper (Vermudolls / Vermustolls) Pass when worm_holes_pct >= 50% in some horizon (KST 13ed worm burrow criterion).

Usage

```
vermic_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

vertic_aridisol_usda *Vertic Aridisols helper – delegates to vertic_subgroup_usda*

Description

Vertic Aridisols helper – delegates to vertic_subgroup_usda

Usage

```
vertic_aridisol_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

vertic_horizon	<i>Vertic horizon (WRB 2022 Ch 3.1)</i>
----------------	-----------------------------------------

Description

Stricter than the vertic **properties**: the vertic **horizon** requires $\geq 30\%$ clay throughout, slickensides at \geq "common" level, AND shrink-swell cracks ≥ 0.5 cm wide. Used by Vertisols. v0.9.19 adds an OR-alternative COLE-based linear-extensibility path: summed (cole_value * thickness) over the upper 100 cm ≥ 6 cm passes the diagnostic even when slickensides + cracks are not recorded (KST 13ed Ch 16 LE alternative, p 343).

Usage

```
vertic_horizon(
  pedon,
  min_clay = 30,
  min_thickness = 25,
  min_le_cm = 6,
  le_max_depth_cm = 100
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_clay	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_thickness	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_le_cm	Minimum LE sum (cm) for the COLE-based path (default 6, per KST 13ed Ch 16).
le_max_depth_cm	Depth window (cm) for the COLE-based path (default 100).

v0.9.72 designation morphological inference (opt-in)

Field-described Brazilian Vertissolos profiles (e.g. the Embrapa Redape curated dataset) encode vertic morphology via a v master-letter modifier in the horizon designation (Bv, Bvk1, Cv, Cvz) without recording slickensides class or shrink_swell_cracks_cm as numeric inputs. With options(soilKey.vertic_designation_inference = TRUE) the function accepts a layer as vertic when the canonical and COLE paths both fail or are NA AND the layer has clay_pct \geq min_clay AND its designation matches a v master-letter modifier. Default is FALSE.

vertic_properties *Vertic properties (WRB 2022)*

Description

Tests whether any horizon shows vertic properties – shrink-swell clay behaviour evidenced by slickensides, wedge-shaped peds, and deep cracks. Diagnostic for Vertisols.

Usage

```
vertic_properties(
  pedon,
  min_clay = 30,
  min_thickness = 25,
  slickenside_levels = c("common", "many", "continuous")
)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_clay	Minimum clay percent (default 30, per WRB 2022).
min_thickness	Minimum thickness (cm) of the vertic layer (default 25 per WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.x).
slickenside_levels	Vector of slickensides values accepted as evidence (default c("common", "many", "continuous")).

Details

Sub-tests:

- [test_clay_above](#) – clay $\geq 30\%$
- [test_slickensides_present](#) – slickensides at or above the "common" level
- [test_minimum_thickness](#) – combined vertic layer thickness ≥ 25 cm (v0.3.1 added per WRB 2022)

v0.3.1: thickness gate added. Limitations remaining: WRB also accepts deep cracks (≥ 1 cm wide extending from the surface to ≥ 50 cm depth, when soil is dry) and wedge-shaped peds as alternative evidence; this implementation requires clay + slickensides. The "after mixing of upper 18 cm" clause from WRB is still deferred.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

References

IUSS Working Group WRB (2022), Chapter 3.2 – Vertic properties.

vertic_subgroup_usda *Vertic Subgroup helper (USDA, KST 13ed)*

Description

Pass when EITHER:

- Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are ≥ 5 mm wide through a thickness ≥ 30 cm AND slickensides or wedge-shaped peds in a layer ≥ 15 cm thick within 125 cm; OR
- Linear extensibility (LE) ≥ 6.0 cm between surface and 100 cm (or to a densic/lithic/paralithic contact).

Usage

vertic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation: tests cracks_width_cm ≥ 0.5 AND cracks_depth_cm ≥ 30 AND slickensides present, OR sum(thickness * cole_value) ≥ 6 cm.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

vertisol *Vertisol RSG gate (WRB 2022 Ch 4, p 101)*

Description

WRB-canonical: vertic horizon ≤ 100 cm AND $\geq 30\%$ clay between the surface and the vertic horizon throughout AND shrink-swell cracks that start at the surface (or below a plough layer / below a self- mulching surface / below a surface crust) and extend to the vertic horizon.

Usage

vertisol(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

v0.3.4 enforces (1) vertic horizon, (2) all overlying layers $\geq 30\%$ clay, and (3) shrink-swell cracks that start within the upper 20 cm. "Cracks extending to the vertic horizon" is enforced indirectly by the test_shrink_swell_cracks test that already requires an explicit cracks_width_cm value.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

vertisol_qualifying_usda

*Vertisol Order qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed, Ch 2 / Ch 3 vertic horizon)
Pass when a vertic horizon (clay ≥ 30 , cracks, slickensides, LE) is present. Delegates to WRB vertic_horizon.*

Description

Vertisol Order qualifier (USDA, KST 13ed, Ch 2 / Ch 3 vertic horizon) Pass when a vertic horizon (clay ≥ 30 , cracks, slickensides, LE) is present. Delegates to WRB vertic_horizon.

Usage

vertisol_qualifying_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

vertisol_usda

Vertisols (USDA Cap 16): slickensides + cracks. Delegates to vertic_horizon.

Description

Vertisols (USDA Cap 16): slickensides + cracks. Delegates to vertic_horizon.

Usage

vertisol_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

vertissolo	<i>Vertissolos (SiBCS Cap 4, p 112; conceito Cap 3, p 105-106)</i>
------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Horizonte vertico iniciando ≤ 100 cm + clay $\geq 30\%$ nos 20 cm superficiais + fendas verticais + ausencia de contato litico / petrocalcico / duripa nos 30 cm + COLE ≥ 0.06 .

Usage

vertissolo(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

vertissolo_ebanico	<i>Vertissolos Ebanicos (Cap 17): caracter ebanico em B (cores escuras dominantes).</i>
--------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Vertissolos Ebanicos (Cap 17): caracter ebanico em B (cores escuras dominantes).

Usage

vertissolo_ebanico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

vertissolo_haplico	<i>Vertissolos Haplicos (catch-all).</i>
--------------------	------------------------------------------

Description

Vertissolos Haplicos (catch-all).

Usage

vertissolo_haplico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

 vertissolo_hidromorfico

Vertissolos Hidromorficos (Cap 17): horizonte glei OR caracter redoxico.

Description

Vertissolos Hidromorficos (Cap 17): horizonte glei OR caracter redoxico.

Usage

vertissolo_hidromorfico(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

 vitrand_qualifying_usda

Vitrands qualifier (Cap 6, pp 117-118) Pass when 1500 kPa water retention < 15% (air-dried) and < 30% (undried) throughout 60%+ of the thickness. v0.8 proxy: uses water_content_1500kpa < 15%.

Description

Vitrands qualifier (Cap 6, pp 117-118) Pass when 1500 kPa water retention < 15% (air-dried) and < 30% (undried) throughout 60%+ of the thickness. v0.8 proxy: uses water_content_1500kpa < 15%.

Usage

vitrand_qualifying_usda(pedon, max_top_cm = 60)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).
 max_top_cm Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

 vitrandic_subgroup_usda

Vitrandic Subgroup helper (USDA, KST 13ed)

Description

Pass when, throughout one or more horizons with total thickness ≥ 18 cm within 75 cm of the surface, BOTH:

- More than 35% (volume) particles ≥ 2 mm of which $> 66\%$ are cinders/pumice; OR fine-earth has $\geq 30\%$ particles 0.02-2 mm AND $\geq 5\%$ volcanic glass (in 0.02-2 mm); AND
- $(Al + 0.5 * Fe) * 60 + volcanic_glass_pct \geq 30$.

KST 13ed, Ch 9 various.

Usage

vitrandic_subgroup_usda(pedon)

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation simplified to the volcanic-glass branch: $volcanic_glass_pct \geq 5$ AND $(Al + 0.5 * Fe) * 60 + volcanic_glass_pct \geq 30$.

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

 vitric_properties

Vitric properties (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.16)

Description

Volcanic glass $\geq 5\%$ in 0.02-2 mm fraction, $Al_{ox} + 1/2 Fe_{ox} \geq 0.4\%$, phosphate retention $\geq 25\%$.

Usage

```

vitric_properties(
  pedon,
  min_glass_pct = 5,
  min_alfe = 0.4,
  min_p_retention = 25
)

```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
min_glass_pct	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_alfe	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).
min_p_retention	Numeric threshold or option (see Details).

vitric_subgroup_usda *Vitric Subgroup helper (Andisols) Pass when volcanic_glass_pct >= 30 in a 25+ cm layer within 100 cm.*

Description

Vitric Subgroup helper (Andisols) Pass when volcanic_glass_pct >= 30 in a 25+ cm layer within 100 cm.

Usage

```
vitric_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

vlm_pick_provider *Pick the best available VLM provider*

Description

Selects a provider based on what is reachable in the user's environment, in this preference order: local Ollama (if ollama_is_running()), then Anthropic, OpenAI, and Google (each requires the relevant *_API_KEY environment variable). Errors with an actionable installation / API-key hint when no provider is reachable.

Usage

```
vlm_pick_provider(verbose = TRUE)
```

Arguments

verbose	If TRUE (default), emits a one-line cli message explaining the chosen provider.
---------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Value

Character scalar: one of "ollama", "anthropic", "openai", "google".

vlm_provider

Construct a VLM provider chat object

Description

Returns an ellmer chat object configured for the given provider, ready to be passed to the extraction functions (`extract_horizons_from_pdf`, etc.). The chat object wraps API credentials and model selection; it does not itself send any request.

Usage

```
vlm_provider(
  name = c("auto", "anthropic", "openai", "google", "ollama"),
  model = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

name	Provider name. One of "anthropic" (Claude), "openai" (GPT-4o family), "google" (Gemini), "ollama" (local).
model	Optional model identifier; defaults to <code>default_model(name)</code> .
...	Additional arguments forwarded to the corresponding <code>ellmer::chat_*</code> constructor (e.g. <code>system_prompt</code> , <code>api_key</code> , <code>base_url</code> , <code>params</code>).

Details

This is purely a convenience wrapper: it picks a default model per provider and forwards remaining arguments (e.g. `system_prompt`, `api_key`) to the underlying ellmer constructor. `ellmer` must be installed.

Value

An ellmer Chat object exposing a `$chat()` method for sending prompts.

Local-first option

Passing `name = "ollama"` runs every extraction locally via an Ollama server (default `gemma4:e4b`, Gemma 4 edge with multimodal text+image+audio support). No data leaves the machine, which is the recommended setting for sensitive field descriptions (e.g. governmental surveys, indigenous land studies) where institutional independence and data sovereignty matter. Pull the model first:

```
ollama pull gemma4:e4b      # ~3 GB edge variant (default)
ollama pull gemma4:31b     # frontier dense variant
ollama pull gemma3:27b     # earlier generation, still solid
```

Then start an Ollama server (`ollama serve`) and the chat object returned here will dispatch over HTTP locally.

Examples

```
# Each provider needs either an API key (cloud) or a running daemon
# (Ollama); the example no-ops on CRAN when neither is available.
if (nzchar(Sys.getenv("ANTHROPIC_API_KEY"))) {
  provider <- try(vlm_provider("anthropic"), silent = TRUE)
}
if (interactive()) {
  # Local Gemma 4 edge model -- default, ~3 GB, runs anywhere
  provider <- try(vlm_provider("ollama"), silent = TRUE)

  # Local Gemma 4 frontier dense model -- best quality
  provider <- try(vlm_provider("ollama", model = "gemma4:31b"),
                 silent = TRUE)
}
```

wassent_qualifying_usda

Wassent Suborder qualifier (subaqueous Entisol). Pass when site\$water_table_cm_above_surface > 0 (water column permanently above the surface).

Description

Wassent Suborder qualifier (subaqueous Entisol). Pass when site\$water_table_cm_above_surface > 0 (water column permanently above the surface).

Usage

```
wassent_qualifying_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

wassist_qualifying_usda

Wassists Suborder qualifier (KST 13ed, Ch 10, p 203)

Description

Histosols having a "field-observable water table 2 cm or more above the soil surface for more than 21 hours of each day in all years." Diagnostic for the Wassists suborder.

Usage

```
wassist_qualifying_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon A [PedonRecord](#).

Details

Implementation: pass when site\$water_table_cm_above_surface is provided and ≥ 2 (positive = above surface).

Value

A [DiagnosticResult](#).

wrb06_code_to_rsg	<i>WRB 2006 RSG code -> 2022 RSG name</i>
-------------------	----------------------------------------------

Description

AfSP ships WRB 2006 RSG codes (2-letter, e.g. LV, AC, AR). The 2-letter codes are stable across WRB editions (2006 -> 2022); only a handful of qualifier names changed. This helper maps the codes to the WRB 2022 RSG names that `classify_wrb2022` emits.

Usage

```
wrb06_code_to_rsg(code)
```

Arguments

code Character vector of WRB 2006 codes.

Value

Character vector of singular WRB 2022 RSG names; NA for unrecognised codes.

wrb2022_canonical	<i>WRB 2022 canonical reference (parsed IUSS Working Group WRB 2022)</i>
-------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Convenience wrapper for `canonical_reference("WRB_4th_2022")`. Returns a 3-element list:

- `$rsg` (118 obs): Reference Soil Group + criteria text
- `$pq` (661 obs): principal qualifiers per RSG
- `$sq` (1167 obs): supplementary qualifiers per RSG

Usage

```
wrb2022_canonical(prefer_pkg = TRUE)
```

Arguments

<code>prefer_pkg</code>	If TRUE (default), prefer the installed SoilTaxonomy package over the vendored copy. Set to FALSE to force the vendored copy (e.g. for reproducibility of a specific soilKey release).
-------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Details

Source: NCSS-tech SoilTaxonomy R package. Original: IUSS Working Group WRB (2022). *World Reference Base for Soil Resources*, 4th edition.

<code>xanthic_subgroup_usda</code>	<i>Xanthic Subgroup helper (Oxisols) Pass when 50%+ colors have hue >= 7.5YR AND value >= 6 in B horizons.</i>
------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Xanthic Subgroup helper (Oxisols) Pass when 50%+ colors have hue >= 7.5YR AND value >= 6 in B horizons.

Usage

```
xanthic_subgroup_usda(pedon)
```

Arguments

<code>pedon</code>	A PedonRecord .
--------------------	---------------------------------

yermic_properties	<i>Yermic properties (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.17) – per-pedon test wrapping</i> test_yermic_surface .
-------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Description

Yermic properties (WRB 2022 Ch 3.2.17) – per-pedon test wrapping [test_yermic_surface](#).

Usage

```
yermic_properties(pedon)
```

Arguments

pedon	A PedonRecord .
-------	---------------------------------

Index

* datasets

- GSM_DEPTHS, 201
- ossil_demo_sa, 301
- .bdsolos_match_column, 227
- .query_nearest_wosis_wrb, 150

- abrupt_textural_difference, 21, 286
- acric_andisol_usda, 22
- acric_oxisol_usda, 22
- acrisol, 23, 261, 272
- aeolic_material, 23
- aeric_oxisol_usda, 24
- aeric_subgroup_usda, 24
- al_rich_spodic_usda, 25
- albaquult_qualifying_usda, 25
- albeluvic_glossae, 26
- albic, 26, 215
- albic_horizon_usda, 27
- albic_subgroup_usda, 27
- alboll_qualifying_usda, 28
- alfic_subgroup_usda, 28
- alfisol_qualifying_usda, 28
- alfisol_usda, 29
- alic_andisol_usda, 29
- alisol, 30, 261, 272
- andic_properties, 30, 262
- andic_soil_properties_usda, 32
- andic_subgroup_usda, 33
- andisol_qualifying_usda, 33
- andisol_usda, 34
- andosol, 30, 34
- anhydrous_conditions_usda, 35
- anionic_subgroup_usda, 36
- annotate_wrb_from_usda, 36, 75
- anthraquic, 37
- anthric_horizons, 37, 262, 347
- aqualf_qualifying_usda, 38
- aquand_qualifying_usda, 39
- aquandic_subgroup_usda, 39
- aquent_qualifying_usda, 40

- aquept_qualifying_usda, 40
- aquert_qualifying_usda, 41
- aquic_conditions_usda, 41
- aquic_subgroup_usda, 42
- aquoll_qualifying_usda, 43
- aquult_qualifying_usda, 43
- arenic_subgroup_usda, 44
- arenic_texture, 44, 263
- argic, 45, 46, 47, 49, 51, 64, 78, 143, 247, 261, 263–265, 268–270, 272, 273, 276–278, 281, 309, 319
- argic_aqp, 45, 46
- argic_aridisol_usda, 47
- argic_mollisol_usda, 48
- argic_subgroup_usda, 48
- argic_with_strong_clay_films, 49, 58
- argillic_clay_films_test, 49
- argillic_or_kandic_usda, 50
- argillic_usda, 51
- argillic_within_usda, 52
- argissolo, 52
- argissolo_acinentado, 53
- argissolo_amarelo, 53
- argissolo_bruno_acinentado, 53
- argissolo_vermelho, 54
- argissolo_vermelho_amarelo, 54
- aridisol_qualifying_usda, 54
- aridisol_usda, 55
- artefacts, 55
- as_aqp, 56, 193, 194
- atividade_argila_alta, 57
- attach_lucas_spectra, 57, 68
- audit_argic_strong_films, 58
- auto_set_proj_env, 59
- available_esdb_attributes, 60, 255, 256

- B_espodico, 61, 91, 92
- B_incipiente, 61, 79, 85, 86
- B_latossolico, 49, 62, 97
- B_nitico, 63

- B_planico, [63](#), [104](#), [486](#)
- B_textural, [64](#), [85](#), [97](#)
- batch_robustness, [64](#)
- benchmark_afsp, [65](#)
- benchmark_bdsolos, [65](#), [74](#)
- benchmark_lucas_2018, [67](#), [67](#), [74](#), [251](#)
- benchmark_performance, [70](#)
- benchmark_redape, [71](#), [132](#), [252](#)
- benchmark_run_classification, [72](#), [74](#)
- benchmark_unified, [73](#)
- benchmark_wrb_vs_usda, [75](#)

- calcaric_material, [75](#), [363](#)
- calcic, [76](#), [214](#), [263](#), [264](#), [269](#), [270](#), [276–278](#), [281](#), [498](#)
- calcic_horizon_usda, [77](#)
- calcic_subgroup_usda, [77](#)
- cambic, [78](#), [79](#), [264](#), [269](#), [277](#), [281](#), [319](#)
- cambic_aqp, [78](#), [79](#)
- cambissolo, [80](#)
- cambissolo_fluvico, [80](#)
- cambissolo_haplico, [80](#)
- cambissolo_histico, [81](#)
- cambissolo_humico, [81](#)
- canonical_reference, [81](#)
- canonicalise_kst13ed_gg, [82](#)
- carater_acrico, [83](#), [235](#)
- carater_alitico, [84](#)
- carater_arenico, [84](#), [90](#)
- carater_argiluvico, [85](#)
- carater_cambissolico, [86](#), [86](#)
- carater_cambissolico_arg, [86](#)
- carater_carbonatico, [87](#)
- carater_chernossolico, [88](#)
- carater_coeso, [88](#)
- carater_durico, [89](#)
- carater_ebanico, [90](#)
- carater_espessarenico, [90](#)
- carater_espodico, [91](#), [92](#)
- carater_espodico_profundo, [92](#)
- carater_eutrico, [93](#)
- carater_ferrico, [93](#)
- carater_fluvico, [94](#)
- carater_gleissolico, [94](#)
- carater_hidromorfico, [95](#)
- carater_hipocarbonatico, [96](#)
- carater_humico_espesso, [96](#)
- carater_latossolico, [97](#)
- carater_leptico, [98](#)
- carater_leptofragmentario, [98](#)
- carater_luvisolico, [99](#)
- carater_nitossolico, [100](#)
- carater_palico, [101](#)
- carater_perferrico, [101](#)
- carater_petroplintico, [102](#)
- carater_placico, [103](#)
- carater_planossolico, [103](#)
- carater_plintico, [104](#)
- carater_psamitico, [105](#)
- carater_redoxico, [95](#), [105](#)
- carater_retratil, [106](#)
- carater_rubrico, [107](#)
- carater_salico, [107](#)
- carater_salino, [108](#)
- carater_saprolitico, [108](#)
- carater_sodico, [104](#), [109](#)
- carater_solodico, [109](#)
- carater_sombrico, [110](#)
- carater_terrico, [111](#)
- carater_tionico, [112](#)
- carater_vertissolico, [112](#)
- cerosidade, [100](#), [113](#)
- chernic, [114](#)
- chernossolo, [114](#)
- chernossolo_argiluvico, [115](#)
- chernossolo_ebanico, [115](#)
- chernossolo_haplico, [116](#)
- chernossolo_rendzico, [116](#)
- chernozem, [116](#), [271](#), [275](#)
- chernozem_strict, [117](#), [230](#)
- claric_material, [118](#)
- classification_robustness, [64](#), [118](#)
- ClassificationResult, [119](#), [122](#), [126](#), [128](#), [130–134](#), [309](#), [328](#), [338](#), [448](#), [450](#)
- classify_all, [67](#), [122](#)
- classify_by_spectral_neighbours, [123](#), [150](#), [151](#)
- classify_from_documents, [125](#), [450](#), [451](#)
- classify_sibcs, [59](#), [65](#), [67](#), [71](#), [122–124](#), [126](#), [128](#), [132](#), [133](#), [137](#), [186](#), [455](#), [470](#)
- classify_sibcs_familia, [128](#), [129](#), [168](#)
- classify_usda, [65](#), [122–124](#), [126](#), [130](#), [133](#), [470](#)
- classify_via_smartsolos_api, [131](#), [137](#)
- classify_with_engine_heuristic, [133](#)
- classify_wrb2022, [65](#), [67](#), [75](#), [119](#), [122–127](#),

- 133, 133, 328, 470, 476
- clear_kst13_cache, 134
- clear_ossl_cache, 135
- combine_priors, 135
- compare_engines, 136
- compare_smartsolos, 132, 137
- compute_ki, 137, 170
- compute_kr, 138, 170
- contato_litico, 98, 108, 139
- contato_litico_fragmentario, 139
- continuous_rock, 139, 140
- cryic_conditions, 140, 266
- cryoturbation_usda, 141
- cumulic_subgroup_usda, 142
- default_model, 126
- densiaquept_qualifying_usda, 142
- DiagnosticResult, 23, 25, 27, 30–34, 36, 38, 42, 44–47, 49–52, 57, 76, 78, 79, 83, 85–92, 94, 95, 97–108, 110–113, 117, 140–142, 143, 153–155, 174, 181, 182, 184, 187–190, 192, 193, 195, 198, 202, 204, 206–210, 222, 225, 228, 230, 233, 235, 237–240, 259, 283–285, 287, 288, 292, 294, 297, 304, 305, 312, 314, 315, 317, 320, 321, 325, 340, 364, 366, 367, 373, 408, 427, 440, 452, 461, 463–465, 467–469, 472, 473, 479, 480, 482–491, 493, 519, 524, 525, 529–531, 534, 538
- distrofico, 144
- dolomitic_material, 145, 364
- download_bdsolos, 145, 243
- download_extdata_cache, 147
- download_ossl_subset, 135, 148, 149–151
- download_ossl_subset_with_labels, 149
- download_redape_dataset, 151, 252
- duric_horizon, 152, 153, 266
- duric_subgroup_usda, 153
- duripa, 89, 153
- duripan_usda, 154
- dystric_subgroup_usda, 154
- entic_subgroup_usda, 155
- entisol_usda, 155
- episaturation_usda, 156
- espodossolo, 156
- espodossolo_ferri_humiluvico, 157
- espodossolo_ferriluvico, 157
- espodossolo_humiluvico, 158
- eutric_inceptisol_usda, 158
- eutric_oxisol_usda, 159
- eutric_subgroup_usda, 159
- eutrofico, 144, 160
- evaluate_rsg_tests, 160, 457
- extract_horizons_from_pdf, 126, 127, 161, 536
- extract_munsell_from_photo, 126, 162
- extract_site_from_fieldsheet, 126, 163
- familia_andico, 164
- familia_atividade_argila, 165
- familia_constituicao_esqueletica, 166
- familia_distribuicao_cascalhos, 166
- familia_grupamento_textural, 167
- familia_label, 168
- familia_mineralogia_areia, 168
- familia_mineralogia_argila_geral, 169
- familia_mineralogia_argila_latossolo, 169, 170
- familia_organossolo_espessura, 171
- familia_organossolo_lenhossidade, 172
- familia_organossolo_material_subjacente, 172
- familia_oxidos_ferro, 173
- familia_prefixo_profundidade, 174
- familia_saturacao_aluminio, 175
- familia_saturacao_bases, 176
- familia_subgrupamento_textural, 176
- familia_tipo_horizonte_superficial, 177
- FamilyAttribute, 128, 129, 164–173, 175–177, 178, 178
- febr_index_munsell, 179, 446
- ferralic, 62, 78, 143, 180, 263–265, 268–270, 273, 276–278, 281, 304, 309
- ferralsol, 181
- ferric, 182
- ferric_subgroup_usda, 182
- fibric_predominant_usda, 183
- fibric_subgroup_usda, 183
- fibrico, 184
- fill_from_spectra, 148, 149, 184, 279, 301, 329, 330, 519
- fill_munsell_from_spectra, 186, 331
- fluvaquentic_usda, 186

- fluvent_qualifying_usda, 187
- fluventic_usda, 188
- fluvic_material, 188, 268, 346
- folist_qualifying_usda, 189
- folistic_epipedon_usda, 189
- folistic_subgroup_usda, 190
- format_wrb_name, 191
- fragic, 191, 192
- fragipa, 192
- fragipan_usda, 192
- frasic_qualifying_usda, 193
- from_aqp, 56, 193
- fulvic_andisol_usda, 194

- gelisol_usda, 194
- glacic_layer_usda, 195
- gleissolo, 196
- gleissolo_haplico, 196
- gleissolo_melanico, 196
- gleissolo_salico, 197
- gleissolo_tiomorfico, 197
- gleyic_properties, 197, 216, 269, 279
- gleysol, 199
- glossic_subgroup_usda, 199
- grapes-or-or-grapes, 200
- grossarenic_subgroup_usda, 200
- GSM_DEPTHS, 201, 204, 205
- gypsic, 201, 263, 264, 269, 270, 276–278, 281, 499
- gypsic_horizon_usda, 202
- gypsic_subgroup_usda, 202
- gypsiric_material, 203

- halaquept_qualifying_usda, 203
- halic_subgroup_usda, 204
- harmonize_to_gsm, 73, 74, 204
- hemic_subgroup_usda, 206
- hemico, 206
- histel_qualifying_usda, 207
- histic_epipedon_usda, 207
- histic_horizon, 209, 270
- histic_subgroup_usda, 210
- histosol_qualifying_usda, 210
- histosol_usda, 211
- horizon_column_spec, 307, 309
- horizonte_A_antropico, 211
- horizonte_A_chernozemico, 88, 212
- horizonte_A_fraco, 212
- horizonte_A_humico, 96, 213
- horizonte_A_moderado, 213
- horizonte_A_proeminente, 214
- horizonte_calcico, 214
- horizonte_concrecionario, 102, 215
- horizonte_E_albico, 215
- horizonte_glei, 94, 95, 216
- horizonte_histico, 216
- horizonte_litoplintico, 102, 217
- horizonte_petrocalcico, 217
- horizonte_plintico, 218
- horizonte_sulfurico, 112, 218
- horizonte_vertico, 113, 219
- hortic, 211, 219
- humic_andisol_usda, 220
- humic_inceptisol_usda, 220
- humic_oxisol_usda, 221
- humic_spodic_usda, 221
- humic_subgroup_usda, 222
- humilluvic_subgroup_usda, 222
- humult_qualifying_usda, 223
- hydragric, 223
- hydraquent_qualifying_usda, 224
- hydric_andisol_usda, 224
- hydric_subgroup_usda, 225
- hypersulfidic_material, 225
- hyposulfidic_material, 226

- inceptisol_qualifying_usda, 226
- inceptisol_usda, 227
- inspect_bdsolos_csv, 146, 227, 242, 243
- irragric, 228

- kandic_horizon_usda, 228
- kandic_oxisol_usda, 229
- kanhapl_qualifying_usda, 229
- kastanozem, 230, 271, 275
- kastanozem_strict, 230
- kst13_canonical, 82, 231, 232
- kst13_codes, 231, 232
- kst13_criteria, 232, 232

- lamellic_subgroup_usda, 233
- latossolo, 233
- latossolo_amarelo, 234
- latossolo_bruno, 234
- latossolo_ki_kr, 235
- latossolo_vermelho, 235
- latossolo_vermelho_amarelo, 236
- leptic_features, 236, 272, 428

- limnic_material, 237
- limnic_usda, 238
- limonic, 238
- lithic_contact_usda, 239
- lithic_discontinuity, 240
- lixisol, 240, 261, 272
- load_afsp_pedons, 65, 241
- load_afsp_sample, 65, 242
- load_bdsolos_csv, 65–67, 146, 227, 242, 446
- load_embrapa_pedons, 243
- load_febr_pedons, 244
- load_kssl_nasis_sample, 242, 245
- load_kssl_pedons, 246
- load_kssl_pedons_gpkg, 36, 75, 247, 248
- load_kssl_pedons_with_nasis, 245, 247
- load_kssl_sample, 245, 248
- load_lucas_pedons, 249
- load_lucas_soil_2018, 57, 58, 68, 69, 250
- load_ossl_models, 465
- load_ossl_models (save_ossl_models), 465
- load_redape_pedons, 71, 251
- load_rules, 252, 455–458
- load_wosis_sample, 253
- load_wosis_stratified_sample, 242, 254
- lookup_esdb, 60, 67, 69, 251, 255, 256–258
- lookup_mapbiomas_solos, 256, 258
- lookup_soilgrids, 68, 69, 250, 251, 257, 257
- luvisol, 259, 261, 272
- luvisso, 259
- luvisso_cromico, 260
- luvisso_haplico, 260

- make_acrisol_canonical, 261
- make_alisol_canonical, 261
- make_andosol_canonical, 262
- make_anthrosol_canonical, 262
- make_arenosol_canonical, 263
- make_argissolo_canonical, 263
- make_calcisol_canonical, 263
- make_cambisol_canonical, 264
- make_cambissolo_canonical, 264
- make_chernossolo_canonical, 265
- make_chnozem_canonical, 265
- make_cryosol_canonical, 266
- make_durisol_canonical, 266
- make_empty_horizons, 267
- make_espodossolo_canonical, 267
- make_ferralsol_canonical, 268

- make_fluvisol_canonical, 268
- make_gleissolo_canonical, 269
- make_gleysol_canonical, 269
- make_gypsisol_canonical, 270
- make_histosol_canonical, 270
- make_kastanozem_canonical, 271
- make_latossolo_canonical, 271
- make_leptosol_canonical, 272
- make_lixisol_canonical, 272
- make_luvisol_canonical, 273
- make_luvisso_canonical, 273
- make_neossolo_canonical, 273
- make_nitisol_canonical, 274
- make_nitossolo_canonical, 274
- make_organossolo_canonical, 274
- make_phaeozem_canonical, 275
- make_planosol_canonical, 275
- make_planossolo_canonical, 276
- make_plinthosol_canonical, 276
- make_plintossolo_canonical, 276
- make_podzol_canonical, 277
- make_retilsol_canonical, 277
- make_solonchak_canonical, 278
- make_solonetz_canonical, 278
- make_stagnosol_canonical, 279
- make_synthetic_pedon_with_spectra, 279
- make_technosol_canonical, 280
- make_umbrisol_canonical, 280
- make_vertisol_canonical, 281
- make_vertissolo_canonical, 281
- melanic_andisol_usda, 282
- melanic_epipedon_usda, 282
- mineral_material, 283
- MockVLMProvider, 161–163
- mollic, 143, 263–265, 268–271, 273, 275–278, 280, 281, 283, 309, 380
- mollic_epipedon_usda, 247, 284
- mollisol_qualifying_usda, 285
- mollisol_usda, 286
- mudanca_textural_abrupta, 104, 286
- mulmic_material, 287

- natric_horizon, 278, 287
- natric_horizon_usda, 288
- natric_subgroup_usda, 289
- neossolo, 289
- neossolo_fluvico, 289
- neossolo_litolico, 290
- neossolo_quartzarenico, 290

- neossolo_regolitico, 291
- nitic_horizon, 274, 291
- nitossolo, 293
- nitossolo_bruno, 293
- nitossolo_haplico, 293
- nitossolo_vermelho, 294
- nitric_subgroup_usda, 294
- normalise_febr_sibcs, 66, 67, 295
- normalise_febr_usda, 67, 295, 295
- normalise_febr_wrb, 67, 295, 296
- normalise_kssl_subgroup, 296

- ochric_epipedon_usda, 297
- ollama_is_running, 297
- organic_material, 298
- organossolo, 298
- organossolo_folico, 299
- organossolo_haplico, 299
- organossolo_tiomorfo, 300
- organotechnic_material, 300
- ornithogenic_material, 301
- ossl_demo_sa, 301
- ossl_library_template, 302, 520
- oxic_horizon_usda, 303
- oxic_usda, 304
- oxisol_usda, 304
- oxyaquic_subgroup_usda, 305

- pachic_subgroup_usda, 305
- pale_qualifying_usda, 306
- paleargid_qualifying_usda, 306
- panpaic, 307
- pedon_json_schema, 307, 526
- pedon_to_spc, 308
- PedonRecord, 21–45, 47–59, 61–66, 68, 71, 72, 75–81, 83–118, 122, 126, 128–131, 133, 134, 136, 137, 139–142, 144, 145, 152–167, 169–173, 175–177, 180, 182–230, 233–244, 246–248, 250–252, 259–266, 268–294, 297–301, 303–308, 309, 312–324, 326, 327, 329, 331, 337–448, 450, 452, 453, 455–469, 472–493, 518, 519, 521–535, 537–540
- permafrost_within_usda, 312
- petrocalcic, 217, 312
- petrocalcic_subgroup_usda, 313
- petroduric, 313
- petroferric_contact_usda, 314
- petrogypsic, 314
- petrogypsic_horizon_usda, 315
- petrogypsic_subgroup_usda, 315
- petronodic_subgroup_usda, 316
- petroplinthic, 217, 316
- phaezem, 271, 275, 317
- pi_to_confidence, 185, 317
- pick_engine, 318, 319
- pick_engine_batch, 319
- pisoplinthic, 319
- placic_horizon_usda, 320
- plaggic, 320, 416
- planic_features, 275, 321
- planosol, 322
- planossolo, 322
- planossolo_haplico, 323
- planossolo_natricico, 323
- plinth_subgroup_usda, 323
- plinthaquox_qualifying_usda, 324
- plinthic, 218, 269, 276, 277, 281, 324, 513
- plinthic_subgroup_usda, 325
- plintossolo, 326
- plintossolo_argiluvico, 326
- plintossolo_haplico, 327
- plintossolo_petrico, 327
- posterior_classify, 328
- predict_soilKey_pls_model, 328
- predict_from_spectra, 58, 68, 69, 251, 329, 520
- predict_lab_from_spectra, 330, 335
- predict_munsell_from_spectra, 58, 69, 186, 250, 331, 335
- predict_ossl_mbl, 125, 148, 149, 185, 301, 302, 332, 333
- predict_ossl_plsr_local, 148, 185, 302, 333
- predict_ossl_pretrained, 185, 334, 519
- predict_xyz_from_spectra, 330, 331, 334
- preprocess_spectra, 124, 185, 335, 520
- pretic, 336
- print_soilKey_pls_model, 337
- prior_consistency_check, 134, 337
- protocalcic_properties, 338, 420
- protogypsic_properties, 339, 421
- protovertic, 339, 422
- psamment_qualifying_usda, 340
- psammentic_subgroup_usda, 340

qual_abruptic, 341
qual_aceric, 341
qual_acric, 342
qual_acroxic, 342
qual_activic, 343
qual_albic, 343
qual_alcalic, 344
qual_alic, 344
qual_aluandic, 345
qual_andic, 345
qual_anofluvic, 346
qual_anthraquic, 346
qual_anthric, 346
qual_anthromollic, 347
qual_archaic, 347
qual_arenic, 347
qual_arenicollic, 348
qual_aric, 348
qual_bathyspodic, 349
qual_biocrustic, 349
qual_brunic, 349
qual_bryic, 350
qual_calcaric, 350
qual_calcic, 351
qual_cambic, 351
qual_capillaric, 351
qual_carbic, 352
qual_carbonatic, 352
qual_carbonic, 353
qual_chernic, 353
qual_chloridic, 353
qual_chromic, 354
qual_clayic, 354
qual_coarsic, 355
qual_cohesic, 355
qual_columnic, 356
qual_cordic, 356
qual_cryic, 357
qual_cumulic, 357
qual_cutanic, 358
qual_densic, 358
qual_differentic, 359
qual_dolomitic, 359
qual_dorsic, 360
qual_drainic, 360
qual_duric, 361
qual_dystric, 361
qual_ekranic, 362
qual_endic, 362
qual_endoabruptic, 363
qual_endocalcaric, 363
qual_endocalcic, 364
qual_endodolomitic, 364
qual_endoduric, 365
qual_endodystric, 365
qual_endoeutric, 365
qual_endogleyic, 366
qual_endogypsic, 366
qual_endoleptic, 367
qual_endostagnic, 367
qual_endothionic, 368
qual_endothyric, 368
qual_entic, 368
qual_epic, 369
qual_epidystric, 369
qual_epieutric, 369
qual_escalic, 370
qual_eutric, 370
qual_eutrosilic, 370
qual_evapocrustic, 371
qual_ferralic, 371
qual_ferric, 371
qual_ferritic, 372
qual_fibric, 372
qual_floatic, 373
qual_fluvic, 373
qual_folic, 374
qual_fractic, 374
qual_garbic, 375
qual_gelic, 375
qual_gelistagnic, 376
qual_geoabruptic, 376
qual_geric, 377
qual_gibbsic, 377
qual_gilgaic, 378
qual_glacic, 378
qual_gleyic, 379
qual_glossic, 379
qual_greyzemic, 380
qual_grumic, 380
qual_gypsic, 381
qual_gypsiric, 381
qual_haplic, 381
qual_hemic, 382
qual_histic, 382
qual_hortic, 382

- qual_humic, 383
- qual_hydragric, 383
- qual_hydric, 383
- qual_hydrophobic, 384
- qual_hyperalbic, 384
- qual_hyperallic, 385
- qual_hyperartefactic, 385
- qual_hypercalcic, 386
- qual_hyperdystric, 386
- qual_hypereutric, 387
- qual_hypergypsic, 387
- qual_hypernatric, 388
- qual_hyperorganic, 388
- qual_hypersalic, 389
- qual_hyperskeletal, 389
- qual_hypersodic, 390
- qual_hyperspodic, 390
- qual_hypocalcic, 391
- qual_hypogypsic, 391
- qual_hyposalic, 392
- qual_hyposodic, 392
- qual_immissic, 393
- qual_inclinic, 393
- qual_irragric, 394
- qual_isolatic, 394
- qual_isopteric, 394
- qual_kalaic, 395
- qual_lamellic, 395
- qual_lapiadic, 396
- qual_laxic, 396
- qual_leptic, 396
- qual_lignic, 397
- qual_limnic, 397
- qual_linic, 398
- qual_lithic, 398
- qual_litholinic, 399
- qual_lixic, 399
- qual_loamic, 399
- qual_luvic, 400
- qual_magnestic, 400
- qual_mahic, 400
- qual_mawic, 401
- qual_mazic, 401
- qual_melanic, 402
- qual_mineralic, 402
- qual_mochipic, 403
- qual_mollic, 403
- qual_mulmic, 403
- qual_murshic, 404
- qual_muusic, 404
- qual_naramic, 404
- qual_natric, 405
- qual_nechic, 405
- qual_neobrunic, 405
- qual_neocambic, 406
- qual_nitic, 406
- qual_nudiargic, 406
- qual_nudilithic, 407
- qual_nudinatric, 407
- qual_ochric, 407
- qual_ombric, 408
- qual_organotechnic, 408
- qual_ornithic, 409
- qual_orthofluvic, 409
- qual_ortsteinic, 410
- qual_oxyaquic, 410
- qual_oxygleyic, 411
- qual_pachic, 411
- qual_pantofluvic, 411
- qual_pellic, 412
- qual_pelocrustic, 412
- qual_petric, 413
- qual_petrocalcic, 413
- qual_petroduric, 413
- qual_petrogypsic, 414
- qual_petroplinthic, 414
- qual_petrosalic, 414
- qual_pisoplinthic, 415
- qual_placic, 415
- qual_plaggic, 416
- qual_plinthic, 416
- qual_posic, 417
- qual_pretic, 417
- qual_profondic, 418
- qual_profundihumic, 418
- qual_protic, 419
- qual_protoandic, 419
- qual_protoargic, 420
- qual_protocalcic, 420
- qual_protogypsic, 421
- qual_protospodic, 421
- qual_protovertic, 422
- qual_puffic, 422
- qual_pyric, 423
- qual_raptic, 423
- qual_reductaquic, 424

- qual_reductic, [424](#)
- qual_reductigleyic, [425](#)
- qual_relocatic, [425](#)
- qual_rendzic, [426](#)
- qual_retic, [426](#)
- qual_rheic, [427](#)
- qual_rhodic, [427](#)
- qual_rockic, [428](#)
- qual_rubic, [428](#)
- qual_rustic, [429](#)
- qual_salic, [429](#)
- qual_sapric, [430](#)
- qual_saprolithic, [430](#)
- qual_silandic, [431](#)
- qual_siltic, [431](#)
- qual_skeletal, [431](#)
- qual_sodic, [432](#)
- qual_solimovic, [432](#)
- qual_sombric, [432](#)
- qual_someric, [433](#)
- qual_spodic, [433](#)
- qual_spolic, [434](#)
- qual_stagnic, [434](#)
- qual_subaquatic, [435](#)
- qual_sulfatic, [435](#)
- qual_sulfidic, [436](#)
- qual_takyric, [436](#)
- qual_technic, [437](#)
- qual_tephric, [437](#)
- qual_terric, [437](#)
- qual_thionic, [438](#)
- qual_thixotropic, [438](#)
- qual_thyric, [438](#)
- qual_tidalic, [439](#)
- qual_tonguic, [439](#)
- qual_toxic, [440](#)
- qual_transportic, [425](#), [440](#)
- qual_turbic, [441](#)
- qual_umbric, [441](#)
- qual_urbic, [442](#)
- qual_uterquic, [442](#)
- qual_vermic, [442](#)
- qual_vertic, [443](#)
- qual_vetic, [443](#)
- qual_vitric, [443](#)
- qual_wapnic, [444](#)
- qual_xanthic, [444](#)
- qual_yermic, [445](#)
- quartzipsamment_qualifying_usda, [445](#)
- read_febr_pedons, [180](#), [446](#)
- reducing_conditions, [447](#)
- rendoll_qualifying_usda, [447](#)
- report, [121](#), [126](#), [127](#), [448](#), [449](#), [451](#)
- report_html, [121](#), [449](#), [449](#), [450](#)
- report_pdf, [121](#), [449](#)
- report_to_qgis, [450](#)
- resolve_wrb_qualifiers, [451](#)
- retic_properties, [277](#), [452](#)
- rhodic_subgroup_usda, [453](#)
- run_classify_app, [453](#)
- run_demo, [454](#)
- run_sibcs_grande_grupo, [128](#), [455](#)
- run_sibcs_key, [455](#)
- run_sibcs_subgrupo, [456](#)
- run_sibcs_subordem, [128](#), [456](#)
- run_taxa_list, [455](#), [456](#), [457](#), [458](#)
- run_taxonomic_key, [457](#), [458](#)
- run_usda_great_group, [458](#)
- run_usda_key, [459](#)
- run_usda_subgroup, [459](#)
- run_usda_suborder, [460](#)
- run_wrb_key, [460](#)
- runApp, [453](#)
- ruptic_histic_subgroup_usda, [461](#)
- ruptic_subgroup_usda, [461](#)
- salic, [263](#), [264](#), [269](#), [270](#), [276–278](#), [281](#), [462](#)
- salic_horizon_usda, [463](#)
- salic_subgroup_usda, [463](#)
- sapric_predominant_usda, [464](#)
- sapric_subgroup_usda, [464](#)
- saprico, [465](#)
- save_ossll_models, [465](#)
- shrink_swell_cracks, [466](#)
- sideralic_properties, [466](#)
- smr_aridic_usda, [467](#)
- smr_torric_usda, [467](#)
- smr_udic_usda, [468](#)
- smr_ustic_usda, [468](#)
- smr_xeric_usda, [469](#)
- sodic_subgroup_usda, [469](#)
- soil_classes_at_location, [470](#)
- soil_moisture_regime_usda, [471](#)
- soil_organic_carbon, [472](#)
- soil_temperature_regime_usda, [473](#)
- soilgrids_usda_lut, [473](#)

- soilgrids_wrb_lut, [474](#), [478](#), [479](#)
- solimovic_material, [474](#)
- sombric, [475](#)
- sombric_subgroup_usda, [475](#)
- spatial_prior, [134](#), [328](#), [338](#), [476](#), [479](#)
- spatial_prior_embrapa, [476](#), [477](#)
- spatial_prior_soilgrids, [471](#), [474](#), [476](#), [478](#)
- sphagnic_usda, [479](#)
- spodic, [61](#), [269](#), [276](#), [277](#), [281](#), [480](#), [515](#)
- spodic_andisol_usda, [481](#)
- spodic_horizon_usda, [482](#)
- spodic_subgroup_usda, [482](#)
- spodosol_usda, [483](#)
- st_features_canonical, [82](#), [483](#)
- stagnic_properties, [279](#), [484](#)
- str_crylic_usda, [484](#)
- str_gelic_usda, [485](#)
- subgrupo_planossolo_espessos, [485](#)
- subgrupo_planossolo_mesicos, [486](#)
- subgrupo_plintossolo_endico_concrecionario, [487](#)
- subgrupo_plintossolo_endico_litoplintico, [487](#)
- subgrupo_plintossolo_espessos, [488](#)
- sulfic_subgroup_usda, [489](#)
- sulfidic_materials_usda, [489](#)
- sulfuric_horizon_usda, [490](#)
- takyric_properties, [490](#)
- technic_features, [280](#), [491](#)
- technic_hard_material, [492](#)
- tephric_material, [492](#)
- terric, [493](#)
- terric_usda, [493](#)
- test_abrupt_textural_change, [494](#)
- test_al_saturation_above, [494](#)
- test_al_saturation_below, [495](#)
- test_andic_alfe, [495](#)
- test_artefacts_concentration, [496](#)
- test_bs_above, [496](#)
- test_bs_below, [497](#), [524](#)
- test_bulk_density_below, [497](#)
- test_caco3_concentration, [76](#), [498](#)
- test_carbonates_present, [498](#)
- test_caso4_concentration, [201](#), [499](#)
- test_cec_per_clay, [181](#), [499](#)
- test_cec_per_clay_above, [500](#)
- test_chernic_color, [501](#)
- test_claric_munsell, [26](#)
- test_clay_above, [501](#), [529](#)
- test_clay_increase_argic, [45](#), [46](#), [502](#)
- test_coarse_texture_throughout, [44](#), [45](#), [503](#)
- test_designation_pattern, [503](#)
- test_duripan_concentration, [504](#)
- test_ec_concentration, [462](#), [504](#), [513](#)
- test_ecec_per_clay, [505](#)
- test_esp_above, [505](#)
- test_fe_dcb_above, [506](#)
- test_ferralic_texture, [181](#), [506](#)
- test_ferralic_thickness, [181](#), [507](#)
- test_fluvic_stratification, [188](#), [507](#)
- test_gleyic_features, [198](#), [508](#)
- test_minimum_thickness, [46](#), [76](#), [78](#), [201](#), [325](#), [462](#), [480](#), [507](#), [509](#), [529](#)
- test_mollic_base_saturation, [284](#), [509](#)
- test_mollic_color, [284](#), [510](#)
- test_mollic_organic_carbon, [284](#), [510](#)
- test_mollic_structure, [284](#), [511](#)
- test_mollic_thickness, [284](#), [511](#)
- test_oc_above, [512](#)
- test_ph_below, [480](#), [512](#)
- test_plinthite_concentration, [325](#), [513](#)
- test_reducing_conditions, [447](#)
- test_salic_product, [462](#), [513](#)
- test_shrink_swell_cracks, [466](#)
- test_slickensides_present, [514](#), [529](#)
- test_spodic_aluminum_iron, [480](#), [515](#)
- test_stagnic_pattern, [515](#)
- test_takyric_surface, [490](#)
- test_texture_argic, [46](#), [78](#), [516](#)
- test_top_at_or_above, [516](#)
- test_yermic_surface, [540](#)
- texture_class_from_pct, [308](#), [517](#)
- thaptic_subgroup_usda, [518](#)
- thapto_humic_usda, [518](#)
- thionic, [218](#), [519](#)
- train_pls_from_oss1, [68](#), [328](#), [329](#), [465](#), [519](#)
- tsitelic, [521](#)
- turbic_subgroup_usda, [521](#)
- ultic_subgroup_usda, [522](#)
- ultisol_qualifying_usda, [522](#)
- ultisol_usda, [523](#)
- umbric_epipedon_usda, [523](#)
- umbric_horizon, [280](#), [524](#)

umbric_subgroup_usda, 525
usda_to_wrb_rsg, 36, 245, 248, 525

validate_pedon_json, 526
vermic_subgroup_usda, 527
vertic_aridisol_usda, 527
vertic_horizon, 219, 247, 339, 528
vertic_properties, 281, 529
vertic_subgroup_usda, 530
vertisol, 530
vertisol_qualifying_usda, 531
vertisol_usda, 531
vertissolo, 532
vertissolo_ebanico, 532
vertissolo_haplico, 532
vertissolo_hidromorfico, 533
vitrand_qualifying_usda, 533
vitrandic_subgroup_usda, 534
vitric_properties, 30, 534
vitric_subgroup_usda, 535
vlm_pick_provider, 297, 535
vlm_provider, 126, 127, 161–163, 536

wassent_qualifying_usda, 537
wassist_qualifying_usda, 537
with_seed, 70, 72, 119, 280
wrb06_code_to_rsg, 538
wrb2022_canonical, 82, 539

xanthic_subgroup_usda, 539

yermic_properties, 540